unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

2 Samuel

Version 27

Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 27
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 12
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 14
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 0.12
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 2.1.11
Published by: unfoldingWord

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

2 Samuel

Introduction to 2 Samuel

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of 2 Samuel

1. The first years of David's reign (1:1–7:29)
2. Saul is killed; David is kind to Ishbosheth (1:1–4:12)
3. David defeats the Philistines (5:1–25)
4. Victories, the ark, the house of God (6:1–7:29)
5. David extends his rule to all the Promised Land (8:1–10:19)
6. David's sin with Bathsheba (11:1–12:31)
7. Amnon and Tamar; Absalom kills Amnon (13:1–14:33)
8. The later years of David's reign (15:1–24:25)
9. Absalom rebels and is killed (15:1–18:33)
10. David's kingdom restored (19:1–20:26)
11. Famine and warfare (21:1–14)
12. David's song of praise (22:1–23:7)
13. David's mighty men (23:8–39)
14. Yahweh judges David's sin of numbering the people; the plague stopped (24:1–25)

What is the Book of 2 Samuel about?

This book is about David ruling as king over Israel. He first ruled over the tribe of Judah for seven years. Then the other eleven tribes agreed to have him become their king. He ruled over all Israel for thirty-three years.

Throughout this time, David led his army to fight foreign enemies who attacked Israel. However, he struggled the most against someone in his own family. Absalom, his son, rebelled and fought against him (2 Samuel 13-19).

The Book of 2 Samuel also tells about when David sinned greatly. He slept with Bathsheba, the wife of Uriah the Hittite. When she became pregnant, David arranged for Uriah to be killed in battle. David and all Israel suffered much because of David's sin. However, the writer also tells of Yahweh repeatedly showing David grace and love after David repented of his sin.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators can use the traditional title "2 Samuel," or "Second Samuel." Or translators may consider a clearer title such as "The Second Book about Samuel, Saul, and David." (See: How to Translate Names)

What was the purpose of the Book of 2 Samuel?

The Book of 2 Samuel begins where 1 Samuel ended. The writer continues to show how the tribes of Israel unite under the first kings of Israel. The Book of 2 Samuel centers around David as the king Yahweh chose to lead Israel.

Who wrote the Book of 2 Samuel?

It is uncertain who wrote 2 Samuel. It may have been someone alive soon after King Solomon died. When Solomon died, the kingdom of Israel split into two kingdoms. The author probably lived in the southern kingdom of Judah. A descendant of David continued to rule over the southern kingdom. The author may have written 2 Samuel to defend David's right to be king. This would prove that David's descendant was the rightful king of God's people.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What covenant had its beginning in the Book of 2 Samuel?

In 2 Samuel 7, Yahweh made a covenant with David. God promised to make a descendant of David rule forever over Israel. Christians believe that Jesus Christ fulfills this covenant. Jesus was a descendant of David. Jesus is the true "anointed one," the person God chose to be king forever. (See: covenant)

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Why does the book refer to someone being addressed indirectly?

David frequently refers to himself as "your servant" when he speaks to King Saul. He also calls Saul "my master." Indirectly addressing a person in this way can be difficult to translate. It is intended to show that the speaker submits to the one being addressed. English sometimes uses the address "sir" or "ma'am" in this way.

Can I translate this book before 1 Samuel?

The Book of 1 Samuel should be translated before 2 Samuel, since 2 Samuel continues from where 1 Samuel ends.

How is the name "Israel" used in the Bible?

The name "Israel" is used in many different ways in the Bible. Jacob was the son of Isaac. God changed his name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob became a nation also called Israel. Eventually, the nation of Israel split into two kingdoms. The northern kingdom was named Israel. The southern kingdom was named Judah. (See: Israel, Israelites)

2 Samuel speaks of both the northern kingdom of Israel and the whole nation of Israel as "Israel." However, these references appear in the narrative long before the two kingdoms split apart. It seems clear that the references to Israel and Judah indicate that the author wrote 2 Samuel at a time after the kingdoms split. (See: 2 Samuel 2:10; 2 Samuel 3:10; 2 Samuel 5:5; 2 Samuel 11:11; 2 Samuel 12:8; 2 Samuel 19:42-43; 2 Samuel 21:2; 2 Samuel 24:1).

2 Samuel 1

2 Samuel 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetic song in 1:19-27.

This chapter continues the material from 1 Samuel.

Special concepts in this chapter

David's funeral song

David praised Saul and Jonathan as great warriors and Jonathan as his dearest friend.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Synecdoche

David used two figures of speech to express that Jonathan and Saul were great warriors: "the bow of Jonathan did not turn back, and the sword of Saul did not return empty." (See: Synecdoche)

2 Samuel 1:1

Ziklag

This is the name of a city in the southern part of Judah. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- David

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- David

ULT

1 After the death of Saul, David returned from attacking the Amalekites and remained in Ziklag for two days.

UST

1 After Saul died, David and the men who were with him returned to the town of Ziklag after defeating the descendants of Amalek. They stayed in Ziklag for two days.

2 Samuel 1:2

On the third day

"After three days" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

with his clothes torn and with dirt on his head

In this culture, tearing one's own clothes and putting dirt on one's head was an act of mourning. (See: Symbolic Action)

he lay facedown on the ground and prostrated himself

This was an act of showing submission to David, who was now the king of Israel. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- prostrate, worship
- David
- head
- earth, earthen, earthly
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- prostrate, worship
- David
- head
- earth, earthen, earthly
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

2 On the third day, a man came from Saul's camp with his clothes torn and with dirt on his head. When he came to David he lay facedown on the ground and prostrated himself.

UST

2 On the third day, a man unexpectedly arrived there who had been in Saul's army. He had torn his clothes and put dust on his head to show that he was grieving. He came to David and prostrated himself on the ground in front of David to show respect for him.

2 Samuel 1:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- save, saved, safe, salvation
- Israel, Israelites
- David

Translation Words - UST

- save, saved, safe, salvation
- Israel, Israelites
- David

ULT

3 David said to him, "Where did you come from?" He answered, "I escaped from the camp of Israel."

UST

3 David asked him, "Where have you come from?" The man replied, "From the Israelite army."

2 Samuel 1:4

Many have fallen and many are dead

Possible meanings are 1) "Many were wounded and many were killed" or 2) "Many were wounded and killed."

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

4 David said to him, "Please tell me how things went." He answered, "The people fled from the battle. Many have fallen and many are dead. Saul and Jonathan his son are also dead."

UST

4 David asked him, "What happened? Tell me about the battle!" The man replied, "Our soldiers ran away. Many of them were killed. And Saul and his son Jonathan are dead."

2 Samuel 1:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

5 David said to the young man, "How do you know that Saul and Jonathan his son are dead?"

UST

5 David said to the young man, "How do you know that Saul and Jonathan are dead?"

2 Samuel 1:6

By chance I happened to be

This statement emphasizes that the man did not plan to meet Saul.

Saul was leaning on his spear

Possible meanings are 1) Saul was weak and using the spear to support himself or 2) Saul was attempting to kill himself by falling on his own spear. (See: Euphemism)

Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

6 The young man replied, "By chance I happened to be on Mount Gilboa, and there Saul was leaning on his spear, and chariots and riders were about to catch up with him.

UST

6 The young man replied, "I was on Mount Gilboa where the fighting was. I saw Saul; he was leaning on his spear. The enemy chariots and their drivers were coming very close to him.

2 Samuel 1:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

7 Saul turned around and saw me and called out to me. I answered, 'Here I am.'

UST

7 Saul turned around and saw me, and he called out to me. I answered him and said, 'What do you want me to do?'

2 Samuel 1:8

He said to me, 'Who are you?' I answered him, 'I am an Amalekite.'

These direct quotations could be stated as indirect speech. Alternate translation: "He asked me who I was, and I told him that I am an Amalekite" (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

I am an Amalekite

These are the same people David just finishing attacking in 2 Samuel 1:1.

Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer

ULT

[8] He said to me, 'Who are you?' I answered him, 'I am an Amalekite.'

UST

[8] He replied, 'Who are you?' I replied, 'I am a descendant of Amalek.'

2 Samuel 1:9

great suffering has taken hold of me

Saul's suffering is spoken of as something terrible that has grabbed hold of him. Alternate translation: "I am suffering terribly" (See: Personification)

life is still in me

This idiom means he is still alive. Alternate translation: "I am still alive" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- appoint, appointed
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- appoint, appointed
- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

9 He said to me, 'Please stand over me and kill me, for great suffering has taken hold of me, but life is still in me.'

UST

9 Then he said to me, 'Come over here and kill me. I am in very much pain.'

2 Samuel 1:10

he would not live after he had fallen

"he would die anyway"

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- head
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- head
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

10 So I stood over him and killed him, because I knew that he would not live after he had fallen. Then I took the crown that was on his head and the band that was on his arm, and brought them here to you, my master."

UST

10 So I went to him and killed him, because I saw that he was wounded very badly and would not continue to live. I took the crown from his head and his armband, which I have brought to you, my master."

2 Samuel 1:11

David tore his clothes...the men with him did the same

David and his men tore their clothes as a sign of mourning for the death of King Saul. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

  • David

Translation Words - UST

  • David

ULT
11 Then David tore his clothes, and all the men with him did the same.

UST
11 Then David took hold of his clothing and he tore it apart, and all the men who were with him tore their clothes apart as well.

2 Samuel 1:12

for the people of Yahweh, and for the house of Israel

Both statements mean basically same thing. The word "house" is a metonym that represents the descendants of Israel. But, both "people" and "house" probably are a synecdoche representing the soldiers of Israel. Alternate translation: "for the Israelite soldiers" (See: Parallelism and Metonymy and Synecdoche)

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

they had fallen by the sword

Here "fallen" is a polite way of referring to being killed. Also, "sword" represents a battle. This here means "had been killed." Alternate translation: "they had died in battle" or "enemies had killed them in battle" (See: Euphemism and Metonymy)

ULT

12 They mourned, wept, and fasted until evening for Saul, for Jonathan his son, for the people of Yahweh, and for the house of Israel because they had fallen by the sword.

UST

12 They tore their clothing because they were very sad and they refused to eat anything until evening because they remembered that Saul and his son Jonathan had died, and that so many of the people of Yahweh had died, and they were sad because of the great dangers the descendants of Israel had gone through, and because so many of them died in battle.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- sword, swordsmen
- fast, fasting
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- sword, swordsmen
- fast, fasting
- house

2 Samuel 1:13

Where are you from?

The man had already stated that he is an Amalekite in 2 Samuel 1:8. David apparently asks the man to confirm this because of the serious judgment that David was going to pronounce on the man.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- pray, prayer
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- pray, prayer
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

13 David said to the young man, "Where are you from?" He answered, "I am the son of a foreigner in the land, an Amalekite."

UST

13 But David asked the young man who had told him about the battle, "Where are you from?" He replied, "My father is a descendant of Amalek, but we live in Israel."

2 Samuel 1:14

Why were you not afraid to kill Yahweh's anointed… hand?

This rhetorical question is used to rebuke the man. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have feared Yahweh and not killed his anointed…hand!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Yahweh's anointed king

This refers to Saul.

with your own hand

This phrase refers to doing something yourself. Alternate translation: "yourself" or "personally" (See: Metonymy)

ULT

14 David said to him, "Why were you not afraid to kill Yahweh's anointed king with your own hand?"

UST

14 David asked him, "Why were you not afraid that you would be punished if you killed Saul, whom Yahweh made king?

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- David
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- David
- hand

2 Samuel 1:15

struck him down

This idiom means "killed him." (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- David
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

15 David called one of the young men and said, "Go and kill him." So that man went and struck him down, and the Amalekite died.

UST

15-16 You yourself said, 'I killed the man whom Yahweh appointed to be the king.' So you have made yourself guilty; you deserve to die!" Then David summoned one of his soldiers and said to him, "Kill him!" So the soldier killed him.

2 Samuel 1:16

Your blood is on your head

Here "blood" is a metonym that implies "shed blood" and is associated with death. Here "your head" is a synecdoche referring to the man and means that he is responsible. Alternate translation: "You are responsible for your own death" or "You have caused your own death" (See: Metonymy and Synecdoche)

your own mouth has testified against you

Here "your own mouth" refers to the man himself. Alternate translation: "you have testified against yourself" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- blood
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- David
- head

Translation Words - UST

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- blood
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- David
- head

ULT

16 Then David said to the dead Amalekite, "Your blood is on your head because your own mouth has testified against you and said, 'I have killed Yahweh's anointed king.'"

UST

15-16 You yourself said, 'I killed the man whom Yahweh appointed to be the king.' So you have made yourself guilty; you deserve to die!" Then David summoned one of his soldiers and said to him, "Kill him!" So the soldier killed him.

2 Samuel 1:17

General Information:

David sings a song of mourning for Saul and Jonathan.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David

ULT
17 Then David sung this funeral song about Saul and Jonathan his son.

UST
17 Then David composed this sad song about Saul and Jonathan,

2 Samuel 1:18

Song of the Bow

This was the title of the song.

which has been written in the Book of Jashar

This is background information added to tell the reader what happened to the song in the future. (See: Background Information)

the Book of Jashar

The word "Jashar" means "upright." Alternate translation: "the Book of the Upright" (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judea

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Judea

2 Samuel 1:19

Your glory, Israel, is dead

"Your glory" refers to Saul. (See: Metonymy)

the mighty

The phrase "the mighty" refers to both Saul and Jonathan. This nominal adjective is plural, and can be stated as "the mighty ones."(See: Metonymy and Nominal Adjectives)

have fallen

The word "fallen" here means "died." (See: Euphemism)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- might, mighty, mighty works

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- might, mighty, mighty works

ULT
19 "Your glory, Israel, is dead, killed on your high places! How the mighty have fallen!

UST
19 "You Israelite people, your glorious leaders have been killed on the mountains! It is very sad that these mighty men have died!

2 Samuel 1:20

Do not tell it in Gath...do not proclaim it in the streets of Ashkelon

These two phrases mean the same thing and are repeated as part of the poetry of the song. (See: Parallelism)

Gath...Ashkelon

Gath and Ashkelon are two of the Philistines' major cities. The Philistines killed Saul and Jonathan.

so that the daughters of the Philistines may not rejoice...so that the daughters of the uncircumcised may not celebrate

These two phrases mean the same thing and are repeated as part of the poetry of the song. (See: Parallelism)

the daughters of the uncircumcised

This phrase refers to people who do not follow Yahweh, such as the Philistines. (See: Metonymy)

ULT

20 Do not tell it in Gath, do not proclaim it in the streets of Ashkelon, so that the daughters of the Philistines may not rejoice, so that the daughters of the uncircumcised may not celebrate.

UST

20 Do not tell it to our enemies in the region of Philistia. Do not tell the people who live in the city of Gath. Do not proclaim it in the streets of the city of Ashkelon, or their women would celebrate. Do not allow those pagan women to rejoice.

Translation Words - ULT

- Philistines
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Translation Words - UST

- Philistines
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

2 Samuel 1:21

Mountains of Gilboa

David speaks directly to the "Mountains of Gilboa" as if they were listening to his song. (See: Apostrophe)

let there not be dew or rain on you

David curses the ground where King Saul died in the battle. This was out of reverence for Saul, who was God's anointed king.

the shield of the mighty was defiled

The "mighty" here refers to Saul. The shield was defiled because it fell on the ground, and because the king's blood was shed on it. (See: Metonymy)

The shield of Saul is no longer anointed with oil

ULT

21 Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you, nor fields giving grain for offerings, for there the shield of the mighty was defiled. The shield of Saul is no longer anointed with oil.

UST

21 I hope there will be no rain or dew ever again on the mountains of Gilboa and that no grain will grow in the fields there, because it was there that the shield of Saul, the mighty king, fell to the ground. Now there is no one to rub olive oil on Saul's shield.

Saul's shield was made of leather. To care for the shield, it was rubbed with oil. Alternate translation: "No one will care for Saul's shield anymore"

Translation Words - ULT

- might, mighty, mighty works
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Translation Words - UST

- might, mighty, mighty works
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

2 Samuel 1:22

From the blood of those who have been killed, from the bodies of the mighty, the bow of Jonathan did not turn back, and the sword of Saul did not return empty

Saul and Jonathan are shown here to have been fierce and valiant warriors. (See: Parallelism)

the sword of Saul did not return empty

Saul's sword is spoken of as if it were a living thing that could return on its own. Rather than return empty, it was carrying the blood of Saul's enemies that it killed. (See: Personification and Litotes)

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- might, mighty, mighty works
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- might, mighty, mighty works
- sword, swordsmen

ULT

22 From the blood of those who have been killed, from the bodies of the mighty, the bow of Jonathan did not turn back, and the sword of Saul did not return empty.

UST

22 Jonathan's arrows were his servants who always pierced his enemies and drew their blood. and Saul's sword was his servant who always struck his enemies.

2 Samuel 1:23

in their death they were not separated

The phrase "were not separated" is used to emphasize that they were always together. Alternate translation: "even in death they were together"

They were swifter than eagles, they were stronger than lions.

Saul and Jonathan were spoken of as if they were faster than eagles and stronger than lions. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

23 Saul and Jonathan were loved and gracious in life, and in their death they were not separated. They were swifter than eagles, they were stronger than lions.

UST

23 Saul and Jonathan were loved; they pleased many people. They were together while they lived and when they died. In battle they were swifter than eagles and stronger than lions.

2 Samuel 1:24

who clothed you in scarlet as well as jewels, and who put ornaments of gold on your clothing

"who provided you nice clothes and jewelry." These two phrases share similar meanings that describe providing the women with expensive, attractive clothing. (See: Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- robe, robed
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- robe, robed
- gold, golden

ULT

24 You daughters of Israel, weep over Saul, who clothed you in scarlet as well as jewels, and who put ornaments of gold on your clothing.

UST

24 You women in Israel, weep about Saul. He provided beautiful scarlet clothes for you and gave you gold ornaments to put on.

2 Samuel 1:25

How the mighty have fallen in the midst of the battle

This phrase is repeated in verse 27 to emphasize that Israel's best warriors are dead. Alternate translation: "The mighty men have died in battle"

the mighty

Here "mighty" is plural and may refer to only Saul and Jonathan, or to all of the soldiers of Israel. Alternate translation: "the mighty warriors" (See: Nominal Adjectives)

have fallen

This is a polite way to say "have died." (See: Euphemism)

Jonathan is killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jonathan has died in battle" or "The enemy has killed Jonathan" (See: Active or Passive)

on your high places

David continues to address this part of the song to the mountains of Gilboa as he started in 2 Samuel 1:21. (See: Apostrophe)

Translation Words - ULT

- might, mighty, mighty works

Translation Words - UST

- might, mighty, mighty works

ULT

25 How the mighty have fallen in the midst of the battle! Jonathan is killed on your high places.

UST

25 It is very sad that my brother Jonathan has died He was a mighty soldiers, and his enemies killed him on the mountain.

2 Samuel 1:26

my brother Jonathan

Here "brother" is used in the sense of a very close friend.

Your love to me was wonderful, exceeding the love of women

Here "love" is used in the sense of friendship and loyalty. Jonathan's loyalty to David was even greater than the loyalty a woman has for her husband and children.

Translation Words - ULT

- miracle, wonder, sign
- brother

Translation Words - UST

- miracle, wonder, sign
- brother

ULT

26 I am distressed for you, my brother Jonathan. You were very dear to me. Your love to me was wonderful, exceeding the love of women.

UST

26 Jonathan, my dear friend, I grieve for you. You were very dear to me. You loved me in a wonderful manner. It was even better than the way that a woman loves her husband and her children.

2 Samuel 1:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- might, mighty, mighty works
- destroy, destruction, annihilate

Translation Words - UST

- might, mighty, mighty works
- destroy, destruction, annihilate

ULT

27 How the mighty have fallen, and the weapons of war perished!"

UST

27 It is very sad that these mighty men have died, and that their weapons are now no more!

2 Samuel 2

2 Samuel 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the story of the civil war between Saul's son and David.

Special concepts in this chapter

Civil war

There was a civil war in Israel. David was made king of Judah and Saul's uncle (Abner) made Saul's son (Ishbosheth) king of the rest of Israel. When they fought each other, Abner killed Joab's brother, but David's army was victorious.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical question

Abner finally stopped the battle with a rhetorical question to David's army. "Must the sword devour forever?" (See: Rhetorical Question)

2 Samuel 2:1

After this

"After David mourned the deaths of Saul and Jonathan in battle"

go up to one of the cities of Judah

At this time David was in the city of Ziklag. David used the phrase "go up" because Ziklag was lower in elevation than Judah. Alternate translation: "travel to one of the cities of Judah"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Judea
- David
- David

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Judea
- David
- David

ULT
1 After this David asked Yahweh and said, "Should I go up to one of the cities of Judah?" Yahweh replied to him, "Go up." David said, "To which city should I go?" Yahweh replied, "To Hebron."

UST
1 Some time after that, David asked Yahweh, "Should I go up to one of the towns in Judah?" Yahweh replied, "Yes, go up there." Then David asked, "To which town should I go?" Yahweh replied, "To Hebron."

2 Samuel 2:2

David went up with his two wives

At this time David was in the city of Ziklag. The narrator uses the phrase "went up" because Ziklag was lower in elevation than Hebron. Alternate translation: "David traveled to Hebron with his two wives"

Translation Words - ULT

- David

Translation Words - UST

- David

ULT

2 So David went up with his two wives, Ahinoam from Jezreel, and Abigail from Carmel, the widow of Nabal.

UST

2 So David went up there, taking his two wives, Ahinoam who was from the city of Jezreel, and Abigail, the widow of Nabal, who was from the city of Carmel.

2 Samuel 2:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- house

Translation Words - UST

- David
- house

ULT

3 David brought the men who were with him, who each brought his family, to the cities of Hebron, where they began to live.

UST

3 He also took the men who had been with him, together with their families. They all started to live in the city of Hebron and its surrounding villages.

2 Samuel 2:4

anointed David king

In this symbolic act, they poured oil on David's head to show that he was selected to be the king. (See: Symbolic Action)

the house of Judah

Here "house" is used in the sense of "tribe." Alternate translation: "the tribe of Judah"

Jabesh Gilead

This is the name of a town in the region of Gilead. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Judea
- Judea
- David
- bury, buried, burial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Judea
- Judea
- David
- bury, buried, burial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT

4 Then men from Judah came and anointed David king over the house of Judah. They told David, "The men of Jabesh Gilead have buried Saul."

UST

4 Then the men of Judah came to Hebron, and one of them poured olive oil on David's head to show they were appointing him to be the king of the tribe of Judah. When David found out that the people of the city of Jabesh in the region of Gilead had buried Saul's body,

2 Samuel 2:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- David
- messenger

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- David
- messenger

ULT

5 So David sent messengers to the men of Jabesh Gilead and said to them, "You are blessed by Yahweh, since you have showed this loyalty to your master Saul and have buried him.

UST

5 he sent messengers to the men of Jabesh to tell them, "I desire that Yahweh will bless you for having buried Saul. By doing this, you have shown that you were loyal to him.

2 Samuel 2:6

General Information:

David speaks to the people of Jabesh Gilead.

this thing

They buried Saul.

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- true, truth
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer

Translation Words - UST

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- true, truth
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer

ULT

6 Now may Yahweh show you covenantal loyalty and faithfulness. I also will show you this goodness because you have done this thing.

UST

6 Now I also desire that Yahweh will faithfully love you and be loyal to you. And I will do good things for you because of what you have done for Saul.

2 Samuel 2:7

let your hands be strong

Here "hands" refers to the people of Jabesh Gilead. Alternate translation: "be strong" (See: Synecdoche)

anointed me king

In this symbolic act, they poured oil on David's head to show that he was selected to be the king. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Judea
- hand
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- strength, strengthen, strong
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Judea
- hand
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- strength, strengthen, strong
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT

7 Now then, let your hands be strong; be courageous for Saul your master is dead, and the house of Judah has anointed me king over them."

UST

7 Now, although Saul your king is dead, be strong and courageous, like the people of Judah, who have appointed me to be their king."

2 Samuel 2:8

Ner...Ishbosheth

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Mahanaim

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

8 But Abner son of Ner, commander of Saul's army, took Ishbosheth son of Saul and brought him to Mahanaim.

UST

8 However, Ner's son Abner, the commander of Saul's army, took Saul's son Ishbosheth and went across the Jordan River to the city of Mahanaim.

2 Samuel 2:9

Gilead...Jezreel

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Gilead, Gileadite
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Gilead, Gileadite
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- reign, rule

ULT

9 He made Ishbosheth king over Gilead, Asher, Jezreel, Ephraim, Benjamin, and over all Israel.

UST

9 There Abner proclaimed that Ishbosheth was now the king ruling the regions of Gilead and Jezreel, and the tribes of Asher, Ephraim, and Benjamin. That meant that he was the king of most of Israel.

2 Samuel 2:10

the house of Judah followed David

Obeying David's rule is spoken of as "following" him. Alternate translation: "the tribe of Judah obeyed David as their king" (See: Idiom)

house of Judah

Here "house" is used to mean "tribe."

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- David
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- David
- house

ULT

10 Ishbosheth son of Saul, was forty years old when he began to reign over Israel, and he reigned two years. But the house of Judah followed David.

UST

10 Ishbosheth was forty years old when he started to rule over the Israelite people. He ruled them for two years. But the tribe of Judah was loyal to David.

2 Samuel 2:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Judea
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Judea
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT
11 The time that David was king in Hebron over the house of Judah was seven years and six months.

UST
11 David ruled them for seven and a half years while he was living in Hebron.

2 Samuel 2:12

Abner...Ner...Ishbosheth...Saul

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- son (2)
- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- son
- son (2)
- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT
12 Abner son of Ner, and the servants of Ishbosheth son of Saul, went out from Mahanaim to Gibeon.

UST
12 One day Abner and the officials of Isbosheth went from Mahanaim across the Jordan River to the city of Gibeon.

2 Samuel 2:13

Zeruiah

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

13 Joab son of Zeruiah and the servants of David went out and met them by the pool of Gibeon. There they sat down, one group on one side of the pool and the other on the other side.

UST

13 Joab, whose mother was Zeruiah, and some of David's officials went from Hebron to Gibeon, and they met at the pool of water there. They all sat down, one group on one side of the pool and the other group on the other side.

2 Samuel 2:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

  • servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

  • servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

14 Abner said to Joab, "Let the young men arise and compete before us." Then Joab said, "Let them arise."

UST

14 Abner said to Joab, "Let us tell some of our young men to fight each other!" Joab replied, "Very well!"

2 Samuel 2:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

ULT

15 Then the young men got up and gathered together, twelve for Benjamin and Ishbosheth son of Saul, and twelve from servants of David.

UST

15 So twelve men from the tribe of Benjamin fought for Ishbosheth, against twelve of David's soldiers.

2 Samuel 2:16

they fell down together

This is a polite way of saying they died. Alternate translation: "they both died" (See: Euphemism)

Helkath Hazzurim

This is a name given to remind people what happened there. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- head
- sword, swordsmen
- declare, proclaim, announce
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- head
- sword, swordsmen
- declare, proclaim, announce
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

16 Each man seized his opponent by the head and thrust his sword into the side of his opponent, and they fell down together. Therefore that place was called "Helkath Hazzurim," or "Field of Swords," which is in Gibeon.

UST

16 Each of them grabbed the head of the man against whom he was fighting, and thrust his sword into that man's side. The result was that all twenty-four of them fell down dead. So that area in Gibeon is now called "Field of Swords."

2 Samuel 2:17

The battle was very severe that day

It may be helpful to explicitly state that this was the large battle that followed the contest of the young men. Alternate translation: "Then the others started to fight also. It was a very fierce battle that day" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

17 The battle was very severe that day and Abner and the men of Israel were defeated before the servants of David.

UST

17 Then the others started to fight also. It was a very fierce battle. Abner and the men of Israel were defeated by David's soldiers.

2 Samuel 2:18

Zeruiah...Joab...Abishai...Asahel

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Asahel was swift in his feet like a wild gazelle

Here Asahel is compared to a gazelle, an animal that runs very fast. Alternate translation: "Asahel could run very fast" (See: Simile)

wild gazelle

This small, four-legged animal, with two long horns on its head, runs very fast.

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

18 The three sons of Zeruiah were there: Joab, and Abishai, and Asahel. Asahel was swift in his feet like a wild gazelle.

UST

18 Zeruiah's three sons were there on that day: Joab, Abishai, and Asahel. Asahel was able to run very fast. He could run as fast as a wild gazelle.

2 Samuel 2:19

Abner

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

followed him without turning away in any direction

Here "without turning away" is stated in negative form to emphasize how closely he followed Abner's path. Alternate translation: "followed him wherever he went"

ULT

19 Asahel closely pursued Abner and followed him without turning away in any direction.

UST

19 Asahel started to pursue Abner. He ran straight toward Abner, without stopping.

2 Samuel 2:20

Asahel

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer

2 Samuel 2:21

Turn aside to your right or to your left...turn aside

"Stop chasing me...stop chasing Abner"

seize one of the young men and take his armor

Abner was asking Asahel to kill and plunder another younger soldier who would not be as dangerous as Abner. He did not want to kill Asahel. Alternate translation: "fight with another soldier and take his equipment as plunder" (See: Euphemism)

ULT

21 Abner said to him, "Turn aside to your right or to your left, and seize one of the young men and take his armor." But Asahel would not turn aside.

UST

21 Abner shouted, "Stop chasing me; go after someone else!" But Asahel would not stop pursuing Abner.

2 Samuel 2:22

Why should I strike you to the ground?

This rhetorical question is used to warn Asahel of the danger he faced. "Strike to the ground" is a polite way of saying "to kill." Alternate translation: "I do not wish to kill you" (See: Rhetorical Question and Euphemism)

How then could I hold up my face to Joab, your brother?

This rhetorical question emphasizes that Abner does not want to fight and kill Asahel because it would destroy Abner's relationship with Joab. Here "hold up my face to Joab" is an idiom that means that he would be too ashamed to look at Joab. Alternate translation: "I would be too ashamed to look at your brother, Joab" (See: Rhetorical Question and Idiom)

ULT

22 So Abner said again to Asahel, "Stop pursuing me. Why should I strike you to the ground? How then could I hold up my face to Joab, your brother?"

UST

22 So Abner yelled at him again, "Stop chasing me! Why should I kill you? How could I face your brother Joab and explain your death to him?"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

2 Samuel 2:23

turn aside

This means to "halt" or "stop chasing."

the blunt end of his spear

This refers to the handle, which is not sharp or designed to pierce anything. It can be implied that Abner was only trying to stop Asahel from following him, and did not intend to kill him. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

23 But Asahel refused to turn aside, and so Abner stabbed him in the body with the blunt end of his spear, so that the spear came out the other side. Asahel fell down and died there. So it came about that anyone who arrived at the place where Asahel fell down and died, he stopped and stood still.

UST

23 But Asahel refused to stop pursuing Abner. So Abner suddenly turned and thrust the butt end of his spear into Asahel's stomach. Because he thrust it very strongly, that end of the spear went though his body and came out at Asahel's back, and he fell to the ground, dead. All the other soldiers who came to the place where his body was lying stopped and stood there, stunned at Asahel's body.

2 Samuel 2:24

Abishai

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

hill of Ammah...Giah

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- face, facial

ULT

24 But Joab and Abishai pursued Abner. When the sun was going down, they came to the hill of Ammah, which is near Giah by the road to the wilderness of Gibeon.

UST

24 But Joab and Abishai continued to pursue Abner. At sunset they came to the hill of Ammah, which is east of Giah, along the road to the wilderness near Gibeon.

2 Samuel 2:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- head

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- head

ULT

25 The men of Benjamin gathered themselves together behind Abner and stood on the top of the hill.

UST

25 The men from the tribe of Benjamin gathered around Abner in a line of battle and stood at the top of a hill.

2 Samuel 2:26

Abner called

"Abner shouted" or "Abner yelled"

Must the sword devour forever?

This rhetorical question emphasizes that the battle had already continued too long. Here "sword" refers to the fighting. The killing in the battle is spoken of as if a wild animal was eating the soldiers. Alternate translation: "We do not need to keep using our swords to fight and kill each other." (See: Rhetorical Question and Metonymy and Metaphor)

Do you not know it will be bitter in the end?

This rhetorical question is used to force Joab to acknowledge that continued fighting could only result in more suffering. Here "bitter" is a euphemism for the terrible suffering that would occur. Alternate translation: "You know very well that there will be a terrible result if this continues!" (See: Rhetorical Question and Euphemism)

> **ULT**
>
> **26** Then Abner called to Joab and said, "Must the sword devour forever? Do you not know it will be bitter in the end? How long will it be before you tell your men to stop pursuing their brothers?"
>
> **UST**
>
> **26** Then Abner called out to Joab, saying, "Are we going to continue to fight forever? Do you not realize that if we continue fighting the result will be very bad? We are all descendants of Jacob, so we should stop fighting each other! How long will it be until you tell your soldiers to stop pursuing us?

How long will it be before you tell your men to stop pursuing their brothers?

This rhetorical question is intended to convince Joab to stop fighting their fellow Israelites. Here "brother" is used to represent the members of the nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "Stop this now so that Israelites will not have to kill each other!" (See: Rhetorical Question and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- restore, restoration
- people, people group,
- devour
- sword, swordsmen
- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- restore, restoration
- people, people group,
- devour
- sword, swordsmen
- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

2 Samuel 2:27

Just as God lives

This is a very strong vow. Alternate translation: "With God as my witness" or "God will affirm that I mean what I say"

if you had not said that…pursued their brothers until the morning

This hypothetical statement tells what might have happened if Abner had not spoken wisely to Joab. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- God
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- God
- people, people group,

ULT

27 Joab replied, "Just as God lives, if you had not said that, my soldiers would have pursued their brothers until the morning!"

UST

27 Joab replied, "Just as surely as God lives, if you had not said that, my soldiers would have continued pursuing your men until tomorrow morning!"

2 Samuel 2:28

blew the trumpet

Trumpets were used to signal orders to the armies across great distances. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

did not pursue Israel

Here "Israel" refers to the Israelite soldiers. Alternate translation: "did not continue to chase the Israelite soldiers" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- trumpet, trumpeters

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- trumpet, trumpeters

ULT

28 So Joab blew the trumpet, and all his men stopped and did not pursue Israel anymore, nor did they fight anymore.

UST

28 So Joab blew a trumpet to signal that they should stop fighting. So all his men stopped pursing the soldiers of Israel.

2 Samuel 2:29

Arabah...Mahanaim

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jordan River, Jordan
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- Jordan River, Jordan
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- walk, walked

ULT

29 Abner and his men traveled all that night through the Arabah. They crossed the Jordan, marched all the next morning, and then reached Mahanaim.

UST

29 That night Abner and his soldiers went through the plain along the Jordan River. They crossed the Jordan and marched all the next morning, and they finally arrived back at Mahanaim.

2 Samuel 2:30

Asahel

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- restore, restoration
- David
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- restore, restoration
- David
- people, people group,

2 Samuel 2:31

360 men of Benjamin with Abner

"360 men from Benjamin who followed Abner." Abner did not die.

360 men

"three hundred and sixty men" (See: Numbers)

of Benjamin

This phrase means "from the tribe of Benjamin." (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT
31 But the men of David had killed 360 men of Benjamin with Abner.

UST
31 But David's soldiers had killed 360 of Abner's men, all from the tribe of Benjamin.

2 Samuel 2:32

took up Asahel

"carried Asahel's body with them"

the day dawned on them at Hebron

"they arrived at Hebron by dawn the next morning"

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

32 Then they took up Asahel and buried him in the tomb of his father, which was in Bethlehem. Joab and his men traveled all night, and the day dawned on them at Hebron.

UST

32 Some of Joab's soldiers took Asahel's body and buried it in the tomb where his father had been buried, in Bethlehem. Then they marched all during the night, and at dawn they arrived back home at Hebron.

2 Samuel 3

2 Samuel 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the first attempt to end the civil war.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetic song in 3:33-34.

Special concepts in this chapter

David never wanted to hurt Saul's family. Isbosheth criticized Abner and Abner became angry. He decided to help David become king of all of Israel. Abner came and made a treaty with David. As he left, Joab arrived and told him he wanted to talk to him and he murdered Abner. David was very unhappy that Abner had been killed.

2 Samuel 3:1

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Samuel gives information about the war between David and the supporters of Saul. (See: Background Information)

house

Here "house" is used to mean "supporters."

grew stronger and stronger

This metaphor means the number of people supporting David increased. (See: Metaphor)

grew weaker and weaker

This metaphor means the number of people supporting Saul's family decreased. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- walk, walked
- walk, walked
- house
- house (2)
- house

Translation Words - UST

- David
- walk, walked
- walk, walked
- house
- house (2)
- house

ULT

1 Now there was a long war between the house of Saul and the house of David. David grew stronger and stronger, but the house of Saul grew weaker and weaker.

UST

1 After that, a long war developed between those who wanted Saul's son to be their king and those who wanted David to be their king. But more and more people began to want David, while fewer and fewer wanted Saul's son.

2 Samuel 3:2

Sons were born to David

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "David's wives gave birth to six sons" (See: Active or Passive)

Ahinoam

This is the name of a woman, a wife of David. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- firstborn

Translation Words - UST

- son
- firstborn

ULT

2 Sons were born to David in Hebron. His firstborn was Amnon, by Ahinoam from Jezreel.

UST

2 David's wives gave birth to six sons at Hebron. The oldest was Amnon, whose mother was Ahinoam from the city of Jezreel.

2 Samuel 3:3

second son...third

These two sons were born after the "firstborn" (verse 2). This is the numerical order of David's sons. (See: Numbers)

Abigail...Maacah

These are women's names. They are the wives of David. (See: How to Translate Names)

Kileab...Nabal...Talmai

These are men's names. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

3 His second son, Kileab, was born to Abigail, the widow of Nabal from Carmel. The third, Absalom, was son of Maacah, daughter of Talmai, king of Geshur.

UST

3 The next son was Kileab, whose mother was Abigail, the widow of Nabal, from the city of Carmel. The next son was Absalom, whose mother was Maacah, the daughter of Talmai, the king of the region of Geshur.

2 Samuel 3:4

fourth son...fifth son

This is the numerical order of David's sons. (See: Numbers)

Adonijah...Shephatiah

These are the names of David's sons. (See: How to Translate Names)

Haggith...Abital

These are names of David's wives. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)

ULT

4 David's fourth son, Adonijah, was the son of Haggith. His fifth son was Shephatiah son of Abital,

UST

4 The next son was Adionijah, whose mother was Haggith. The next son was Shephatiah, whose mother was Abital.

2 Samuel 3:5

the sixth

This is the numerical order of David's sons. (See: Numbers)

Ithream

This is the name of one of David's sons. (See: How to Translate Names)

Eglah

This is the name of one of David's wives. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- David

Translation Words - UST

- David

ULT

5 and the sixth, Ithream, was the son of David's wife Eglah. These sons were born to David in Hebron.

UST

5 The youngest son was Ithream, whose mother was Eglah, another one of David's wives. These sons of David were all born in Hebron.

2 Samuel 3:6

It came about

This introduces a new event in the story of the struggle between David's supporters and Saul's family. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

house of Saul

This refers to Saul's family and supporters who assumed control of his estate after he died.

house of David

This refers to the supporters of David.

Abner made himself strong in the house of Saul

Abner's increasing power over Saul's family is spoken of as if he became physically stronger. Alternate translation: "Abner gained more power over the family and supporters of Saul" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

6 It came about during the war between the house of Saul and the house of David that Abner made himself strong in the house of Saul.

UST

6 During the conflict between those who wanted Saul's son to rule over them and those who wanted David to rule over them, Abner was becoming more influential among those who wanted Saul's son to be the king.

Translation Words - ULT

- temple
- David
- strength, strengthen, strong
- house
- house (2)

Translation Words - UST

- temple
- David
- strength, strengthen, strong
- house
- house (2)

2 Samuel 3:7

Rizpah…Aiah

These are names of women. (See: How to Translate Names)

Ishbosheth

This is a male name, a son of Saul. (See: How to Translate Names)

Why have you gone in to my father's concubine?

Ishbosheth asked this question to rebuke Abner who was acting like he was the king. Alternate translation: "You did not have the right to go in to father's concubine!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

gone in to

This is a euphemism for sexual relations. Alternate translation: "had sexual relations with" (See: Euphemism)

Translation Words - ULT

  • ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

  • ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

2 Samuel 3:8

Am I a dog's head that belongs to Judah?

This question is used by Abner as an angry denial of Ishbosheth's accusation. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am not a traitor working for David!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Am I a dog's head that belongs to Judah?

Abner speaks of himself as the head of a dog, which the Israelites considered to be loyal to anyone who fed them. Here "belongs to Judah" implies that Abner's loyalty is to Judah, to which David belonged, and not to Saul's house. Alternate translation: "Am I a traitor for Judah?" or "I am not a traitor working for David!" (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

into the hand of David

Here "hand" represents the power to defeat. Alternate translation: "to be defeated by David" (See: Metonymy)

But now you accuse me of an offense concerning this woman?

Abner asks this question to rebuke Ishbosheth. It is unclear if Abner actually slept with Rizpah, or if he was falsely accused. Possible meanings are 1) Abner was guilty. Alternate translation: "You should not be upset that I slept with this woman!" or 2) Abner was not guilty. Alternate translation: "You should not think that I have slept with this woman!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

ULT

8 Then Abner was very angry at the words of Ishbosheth and said, "Am I a dog's head that belongs to Judah? Today I am showing faithfulness to the house of Saul, your father, to his brothers, and to his friends, by not delivering you into the hand of David. But now you accuse me of an offense concerning this woman?

UST

8 Abner became very angry about what Ishbosheth said to him. He said to Ishbosheth, "Do you think that I am a worthless dog from Judah? From the beginning I have been loyal to Saul your father, to his brothers, and to his friends. And I have kept David's army from defeating you. So now why are you criticizing me about what I have done with some woman?

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- iniquity
- appoint, appointed
- pray, prayer
- Judah
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- iniquity
- appoint, appointed
- pray, prayer
- Judah
- David

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- house

2 Samuel 3:9

May God do so to me...and more also, if I do not

This is the form of a solemn vow in that time. Abner is asking God to judge him severely if he does not keep his vow. Your language may have a way of expressing vows. Alternate translation: "I am asking God to punish me if I do not"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

9 May God do so to me, Abner, and more also, if I do not do for David as Yahweh has sworn to him,

UST

9-10 Yahweh solemnly promised that he would not allow Saul and his descendants to continue to rule. He promised that he would cause David to rule over all the tribes of Israel and Judah, from the city of Dan far in the north to the city of Beersheba far in the south. So I hope that God will kill me if I do not enable that to happen!"

2 Samuel 3:10

the house of Saul

Here "house" refers to Saul's family and supporters who survived Saul's death. Alternate translation: "the family and supporters of Saul"

throne of David

This phrase refers to the authority of David as king. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- David
- throne, enthroned
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- David
- throne, enthroned
- house

ULT

10 to transfer the kingdom from the house of Saul and set up the throne of David over Israel and over Judah, from Dan to Beersheba."

UST

9-10 Yahweh solemnly promised that he would not allow Saul and his descendants to continue to rule. He promised that he would cause David to rule over all the tribes of Israel and Judah, from the city of Dan far in the north to the city of Beersheba far in the south. So I hope that God will kill me if I do not enable that to happen!"

2 Samuel 3:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration

ULT

11 Ishbosheth could not answer Abner another word, because he feared him.

UST

11 Ishbosheth was very afraid of Abner, so he did not say anything to reply to Abner.

2 Samuel 3:12

to David

Some versions add "when he was at Hebron" and others do not. You may want to add the phrase if it is present in your national version. (See: Textual Variants)

Whose land is this?

The original text of this question is not clear. Possible meanings are 1) Abner had the power to give the land to David. Alternate translation: "This land is mine!" or 2) David is chosen by God to rule the land: Alternate translation: "This land rightfully belongs to you!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

my hand is with you

Here "hand" represents Abner's assistance that he is offering to David. Alternate translation: "I will assist you" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- hand
- cut off
- messenger
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- hand
- cut off
- messenger
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

12 Then Abner sent messengers to David to speak for him saying, "Whose land is this? Make a covenant with me, and you will see that my hand is with you, to bring all Israel to you."

UST

12 Then Abner sent messengers to David when he was at Hebron to say to him, "Either you or I should be the ruler of this entire nation, but not Isbosheth. However, if you make an agreement with me, I will help you by encouraging all the people of Israel to ask for you to be their king."

2 Samuel 3:13

you cannot see my face unless you first bring Michal

David is stating the condition under which he will meet Abner. Here "face" refers to David himself. Alternate translation: "you cannot see me unless you bring Michal to me first" (See: Synecdoche)

Michal

This is the name of a daughter of Saul. She was David's first wife. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- pray, prayer
- cut off
- face, facial
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- pray, prayer
- cut off
- face, facial
- face, facial

ULT

13 David answered, "Good, I will make a covenant with you. But one thing I require from you is that you cannot see my face unless you first bring Michal, Saul's daughter, when you come to see me."

UST

13 David sent back this reply, "Good! I am willing to make an agreement with you. But before that happens, there is one thing that you must do. When you come to see me, you must bring my wife Michal, Saul's daughter."

2 Samuel 3:14

one hundred Philistine foreskins

This represents the number of men David killed so that Saul would allow him to marry Michal. These men are represented here by their "foreskins." The "foreskin" is the fold of skin that covers the male reproductive organ. (See: Numbers and Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Philistines
- David
- messenger

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Philistines
- David
- messenger

ULT

14 Then David sent messengers to Ishbosheth, Saul's son, saying, "Give me my wife Michal, for whom I paid a price of one hundred Philistine foreskins."

UST

14 Then David sent messengers to Ishbosheth to say to him, "I killed one hundred men from Philistia and cut off their foreskins to give to Saul to pay for Michal to be my wife. So now give her back to me!"

2 Samuel 3:15

took her from her husband

Paltiel was Michal's second husband. Saul gave her to him after David fled from Saul. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Paltiel...Laish

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

15 So Ishbosheth sent for Michal and took her from her husband, Paltiel son of Laish.

UST

15 So Ishbosheth sent some men to take Michal from her husband Paltiel. But when they took her, her husband followed them all the way to the city of Bahurim, crying as he went.

2 Samuel 3:16

Bahurim

This is the name of a village. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- walk, walked
- walk, walked
- return

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- walk, walked
- walk, walked
- return

ULT

16 Her husband went with her, weeping as he went, and followed her to Bahurim. Then Abner said to him, "Return home now." So he returned.

UST

16 Then Abner turned and said to him, "Go back home!" so he did.

2 Samuel 3:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- David
- elder, older, old
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- David
- elder, older, old
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for

ULT

17 Abner spoke with the elders of Israel saying, "In the past you were trying to have David be king over you.

UST

17 Abner went to the Israelite leaders and talked with them. He said, "You have wanted David to be your king for a long time.

2 Samuel 3:18

Now do it

"So now make David your king"

By the hand of my servant David

Here "hand" refers to David's power to defeat the Philistines. Alternate translation: "I will empower my servant David and" (See: Metonymy)

the hand of the Philistines

Here "hand" refers to power over Israel. Alternate translation: "the power of the Philistines" (See: Metonymy)

the hand of all their enemies

Here "hand" refers to power over Israel. Alternate translation: "the power of all of their enemies" (See: Metonymy)

> **ULT**
>
> **18** Now do it. For Yahweh has spoken of David saying, 'By the hand of my servant David I will save my people Israel from the hand of the Philistines and from the hand of all their enemies.'"
>
> **UST**
>
> **18** So now you have an opportunity for this to happen. Keep in mind that Yahweh promised this, 'With the help of David, who serves me well, I will rescue my people from the power of all their other enemies'."

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- David
- David
- hand
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- people, people group,
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- David
- David
- hand
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- people, people group,
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

2 Samuel 3:19

the people of Benjamin...the whole house of Benjamin

Both of these statements refer to the descendants of Benjamin, who were one of the tribes of Israel. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- David
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- David
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- house

ULT

19 Abner also spoke personally to the people of Benjamin. Then Abner went also to speak with David in Hebron to explain everything that Israel and the whole house of Benjamin desired to accomplish.

UST

19 Abner also spoke to the people of the tribe of Benjamin. Then he went to Hebron to tell David what all the people of Israel and the people of the tribe of Benjamin had agreed to do.

2 Samuel 3:20

twenty of his men

The number of men who came with Abner. (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- feast, feasting

Translation Words - UST

- David
- David
- feast, feasting

ULT

20 When Abner and twenty of his men arrived in Hebron to see David, David had a feast prepared for them.

UST

20 When Abner came with twenty of his soldiers to see David at Hebron, David made a feast for all of them.

2 Samuel 3:21

all Israel

This phrase means "all of the nation of Israel." (See: Metonymy)

So David sent Abner away

They parted as friends. David was not angry with Abner.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- covenant
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- David
- cut off
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- covenant
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- David
- cut off
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

21 Abner explained to David, "I will arise and gather all Israel to you, my master the king, so that they may make a covenant with you, so that you may reign over all that you desire." So David sent Abner away, and Abner left in peace.

UST

21 Afterwards, Abner said to David, "Sir, I will now go and encourage all the people of Israel to accept you to be their king, as you have desired." Then Abner left, peacefully.

2 Samuel 3:22

plunder

These are items taken from the enemy.

Abner was not with David in Hebron

Abner had already left to return home.

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- David
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

2 Samuel 3:23

they told Joab

"someone told Joab"

Ner

This is a man's name. He is the grandfather of Saul. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

23 When Joab and all the army with him arrived, they told Joab, "Abner son of Ner came to the king, and the king has sent him away, and Abner left in peace."

UST

23 When Joab and the soldiers who were with him arrived, someone told him that Abner had come there and talked with the king, and that the king allowed Abner to go away safely.

2 Samuel 3:24

What have you done?

Joab asks this question to rebuke David for letting Abner go in peace. Alternate translation: "You should not have done this!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Why have you sent him away, and he is gone?

Joab asks this question to rebuke David for letting Abner escape. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Abner was here and you let him leave!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

ULT

24 Then Joab came to the king and said, "What have you done? Look, Abner came to you! Why have you sent him away, and he is gone?

UST

24 So Joab went to the king and said, "Why have you done that? Listen to me! Abner is your enemy, but when he came to you, you allowed him to leave!

2 Samuel 3:25

Do you not know…everything you are doing?

Joab asks this question to convince David that Abner is plotting against David. Alternate translation: "Surely you know…everything you are doing." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

2 Samuel 3:26

well of Sirah

"Sirah" is the name of a place where the well was located. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- David
- messenger
- return
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- David
- messenger
- return
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

26 When Joab left David, he sent messengers after Abner, and they brought him back from the well of Sirah, but David did not know this.

UST

26 After Joab left David, he sent some messengers to get Abner. They found him at the well of Sirah and brought him back to Hebron, but David did not know that they had done this.

2 Samuel 3:27

the middle of the gate

This refers to one of the gates in the city wall at Hebron. As the UST implies, city gates were constructed as part of buildings set into the city walls. Inside the passageway were doors leading to side rooms, where guests could be received and business and judicial proceedings could be conducted. It was probably in one of these rooms that Joab murdered Abner.

the blood of Asahel

Here "blood" is associated with the death of Asahel. Alternate translation: "the death of Asahel" (See: Metonymy)

Asahel

This is the name of a male person. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- return

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- return

ULT

27 When Abner returned to Hebron, Joab took him aside in the middle of the gate to speak with him quietly. There Joab stabbed him in the stomach and killed him. In this way, Joab avenged the blood of Asahel his brother.

UST

27 So when Abner returned to Hebron, Joab met him at the city gate, and took him into a side room as though he wanted to speak with him privately. Then he stabbed Abner in the stomach with his knife. In that way he murdered Abner because Abner had killed Joab's brother Asahel.

2 Samuel 3:28

the blood of Abner

Here "blood" refers to violent death. See how you translated a similar phrase in 2 Samuel 3:27. Alternate translation: "the death of Abner" or "the murder of Abner" (See: Metonymy)

Ner

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- innocent
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- David

Translation Words - UST

- son
- innocent
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- David

ULT

28 When David heard about this he said, "I and my kingdom are innocent before Yahweh forever regarding the blood of Abner son of Ner.

UST

28 Later, after David heard what had happened, he said, "Yahweh knows that I and the people of my kingdom are not at all responsible for Abner.

2 Samuel 3:29

fall on the head of Joab and on all his father's house

This phrase means the results of the guilt will happen to Joab and his family as if something heavy had collapsed on them. Alternate translation: "always cause suffering for Joab and for all his father's house" (See: Metaphor)

all his father's house

Here "house" refers to descendants. Alternate translation: "all the descendants of Joab's father" (See: Metonymy)

May there never fail to be

This double negative emphasizes that there will always be someone with the problems listed. Alternate translation: "May there always be" (See: Metonymy)

is killed by the sword

Here "sword" refers to violent death. Alternate translation: "dies violently" (See: Metonymy)

goes without food

"is hungry"

ULT

29 Let the guilt of Abner's death fall on the head of Joab and on all his father's house. May there never fail to be in the family of Joab someone who has a flowing sore or skin disease or who is lame and must walk with a staff or who is killed by the sword or who goes without food."

UST

29 I hope that there will always be someone in his family who has sores, or someone who is a leper, or some man who is forced to do women's work, or someone who is killed in a battle, or someone who does not have enough food to eat!"

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- bread
- cut off
- head
- sword, swordsmen
- house
- house
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- bread
- cut off
- head
- sword, swordsmen
- house
- house
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

2 Samuel 3:30

Abishai...Asahel

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

30 So Joab and Abishai his brother killed Abner, because he had killed their brother Asahel at Gibeon in battle.

UST

30 That is how Joab and his brother Abishai murdered Abner, because he had killed their brother Asahel in the battle at Gibeon.

2 Samuel 3:31

Tear your clothes, put on sackcloth

These were symbolic actions to demonstrate their grief and sadness. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- sackcloth
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- David
- David
- sackcloth
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

ULT
31 David said to Joab and to all the people who were with him, "Tear your clothes, put on sackcloth, and mourn before Abner's body." Now King David walked behind the body in the funeral procession.

UST
31 Then David said to Joab and to all Joab's soldiers, "Tear your clothes and put on coarse cloth to show that you are sad, and mourn for Abner!" And at the funeral, King David walked behind the men who were carrying the coffin.

2 Samuel 3:32

The king wept and cried loudly

The words "wept" and "cried loudly" mean basically the same thing and emphasize how much David mourned for Abner. (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

32 They buried Abner in Hebron. The king wept and cried loudly at the tomb of Abner, and all the people also wept.

UST

32 They buried Abner's body at Hebron. And at the grave, the king cried loudly, and all the other people also cried.

2 Samuel 3:33

Should Abner die as a fool dies?

This rhetorical question is used to emphasize that his death was not fair. Alternate translation: "Abner should not have died in disgrace!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

33 The king lamented for Abner and sang, "Should Abner die as a fool dies?

UST

33 David sang this sad song to lament for Abner: "It is not right that Abner should have died in disgrace!

2 Samuel 3:34

Your hands were not bound. Your feet were not shackled

These two sentences express similar ideas. They can be combined into one sentence. Alternate translation: "You were in no way a criminal in prison" or "You were completely innocent of doing wrong" (See: Parallelism)

Your hands were not bound

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "No one had tied your hands" (See: Active or Passive)

Your feet were not shackled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "No one had attached your feet to chains" (See: Active or Passive)

the sons of injustice

This refers to people who are unjust or wicked. Alternate translation: "wicked men" (See: Metonymy)

ULT

34 Your hands were not bound. Your feet were not shackled. As a man falls before the sons of injustice, so you have fallen." Once more all the people wept over him.

UST

34 No one tied his hands or put chains on his feet, as they do to criminals. No, he was murdered by wicked men!"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- hand
- people, people group,
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Translation Words - UST

- son
- hand
- people, people group,
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

2 Samuel 3:35

All the people came

This deliberate exaggeration is used to show that the nation of Israel wanted to take care of David in his grief. Alternate translation: "Many people came" (See: Hyperbole)

May God do so to me, and more also, if

This is the form of a solemn vow in that time. David is asking God to judge him severely if he eats anything before sunset. Your language many have a way of expressing vows. Alternate translation: "I am asking God to punish me if"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- David
- David
- bread
- bread (2)
- people, people group,
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- God
- David
- David
- bread
- bread (2)
- people, people group,
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

35 All the people came to make David eat while it was still day, but David swore, "May God do so to me, and more also, if I taste bread or anything else before the sun goes down."

UST

35 Then many people came to David to tell him to eat some food before sunset, but David refused. He said, "I hope that God will kill me if I eat any food before the sun goes down!"

2 Samuel 3:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

36 All the people took notice of David's grief, and it pleased them, as whatever the king did pleased them.

UST

36 All the people saw what David did, and they were pleased. Truly, everything that the king did pleased the people.

2 Samuel 3:37

Ner

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

37 So all the people and all Israel understood that day that it was not the king's desire to kill Abner son of Ner.

UST

37 So all the people realized that the king had not wanted Abner to be killed.

2 Samuel 3:38

Do you not know that a prince and a great man has fallen this day in Israel?

This rhetorical question is used to show how much David respected Abner. Here "fallen" is a euphemism that means "died." It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is certainly true that a great prince has died today in Israel!" (See: Rhetorical Question and Euphemism)

a prince and a great man

These two phrases both refer to Abner. Alternate translation: "a great prince" (See: Hendiadys)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

2 Samuel 3:39

Zeruiah

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

are too brutal

"are too much like animals" or "are too violent"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

39 Now I am weak today, though I am an anointed king. These men, the sons of Zeruiah, are too brutal for me. May Yahweh repay the evildoer by punishing him for his wickedness, as he deserves."

UST

39 Even though Yahweh appointed me to be the king, today I feel weak. These two sons of Zeruiah, Joab and Abishai, are very violent. I cannot control them. So I hope that Yahweh will punish them severely in return for this wicked deed that they have done!"

2 Samuel 4

2 Samuel 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

While the end of the civil war occurs in this chapter, David still only reigned over Judah (1-4).

Special concepts in this chapter

David and Ishbosheth

David never sought revenge against Saul's family. When two men snuck into Ishbosheth's room, cut off his head and brought it to David, David had them killed for killing an innocent man. (See: avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical questions

When two men brought Ishbosheth's head to David and expected to get a reward for it, David condemned them with the rhetorical question: "should I not now require his blood from your hand, and remove you from the earth?" (See: Rhetorical Question and condemn, condemned, condemnation and reward, prize, deserve,)

2 Samuel 4:1

Ishbosheth

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

his hands became weak

In this phrase "his hands" represents Ishbosheth himself. Alternate translation: "Ishbosheth became weak" or "Ishbosheth lost all strength" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- hand

ULT

1 When Ishbosheth, Saul's son, heard that Abner was dead in Hebron, his hands became weak, and all Israel was troubled.

UST

1 When Saul's son Ishbosheth heard that Abner had been killed at Hebron, he became very discouraged, and all the Israelite people with him.

2 Samuel 4:2

Baanah...Recab...Rimmon

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Now Saul's son had two men

This introduces the men Baanah and Rechab into the story. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

for Beeroth is also considered part of Benjamin

Here the author begins to provide background information about Beeroth for the reader. The area of Beeroth was part of the land that belonged to the tribe of Benjamin. (See: Background Information)

Beeroth

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- name
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- name
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

2 Now Saul's son had two men who were captains of groups of soldiers. The name of one was Baanah and the other Recab, sons of Rimmon the Beerothite of the people of Benjamin (for Beeroth is also considered part of Benjamin,

UST

2 Ishbosheth had two officers who were leaders of groups of soldiers. They were brothers with the names of Baanah and Recab; they were sons of Rimmon from the town of Beeroth in the tribe of Benjamin. Now Beeroth is in the area that had been assigned to the tribe of Benjamin.

2 Samuel 4:3

and the Beerothites fled to Gittaim and have been living there until this very time

Here the author finishes providing background information about Beeroth for the reader. The area of Beeroth was part of the land that belonged to the tribe of Benjamin. (See: Background Information)

Gittaim

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT

3 and the Beerothites fled to Gittaim and have been living there until this very time).

UST

3 But the original inhabitants of Beeroth had fled to the town of Gittaim, where they still live.

2 Samuel 4:4

General Information:

This verse pauses the main story to provide background information about Mephibosheth, a descendent of Saul through Jonathan instead of through Ishbosheth. Mephibosheth will become an important character later in the book. (See: Background Information and Introduction of New and Old Participants)

crippled in his feet

This phrase means "unable to walk."

five years old

This was the age of Jonathan's son at the time of his father's death. (See: Numbers)

the news about Saul and Jonathan

This refers to the news about their death.

nurse

This is a woman or girl who is hired to care for young children.

became lame

This explains how Mephibosheth was injured so he was unable to walk.

Mephibosheth

This is the name of Jonathan's young son, the grandson of Saul. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT

4 Now Jonathan, Saul's son, had a son who was crippled in his feet. He was five years old when the news about Saul and Jonathan came from Jezreel. His nurse picked him up to flee. But as she was running, Jonathan's son fell and became lame. His name was Mephibosheth.

UST

4 Saul's son Jonathan had a son named Mephibosheth. Mephibosheth was five years old when Saul and Jonathan died in the battle. When people brought that news from Jezreel, Mephibosheth's nursemaid picked him up and ran away, but she ran very fast and she dropped him, and he became crippled in his legs.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son (2)
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son (2)
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

2 Samuel 4:5

General Information:

The story returns to the actions of Rechab and Baanah who were introduced in 2 Samuel 4:2.

the heat of the day

the middle of the day, the part of the day when it is the hottest

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- house

ULT

5 So the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, Recab and Baanah, traveled during the heat of the day to the house of Ishbosheth, as he was resting at noon.

UST

5 One day, Recab and Baanah left their home to go to Ishbosheth's house. They arrived there about noontime, when Ishbosheth was taking his midday nap.

2 Samuel 4:6

sifting wheat

"cleaning chaff from wheat"

Translation Words - ULT

- save, saved, safe, salvation
- brother
- wheat
- house

Translation Words - UST

- save, saved, safe, salvation
- brother
- wheat
- house

ULT

6 The woman guarding the door had fallen asleep while sifting wheat, and Recab and Baanah walked in quietly and passed her.

UST

6 The woman who was serving as the doorkeeper was sifting wheat; but she became sleepy and then fell asleep. So Recab and his brother Baanah were able to creep in quietly.

2 Samuel 4:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Arabah
- head
- head
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Arabah
- head
- head
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- house

ULT

7 So after they entered the house, they attacked him and killed him as he was lying on his bed in his room. Then they cut off his head and carried it away, traveling on the road all night to the Arabah.

UST

7 They entered Ishbosheth's bedroom, where he was sleeping. They killed him with their swords and cut off his head. They carried his head and walked all night through the plain along the Jordan.

2 Samuel 4:8

sought your life

This idiom means "was trying to kill you." (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Yahweh
- David
- adversary, enemy
- head
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Yahweh
- David
- adversary, enemy
- head
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for

ULT

8 They brought the head of Ishbosheth to David at Hebron, and they said to the king, "Look, this is the head of Ishbosheth son of Saul, your enemy, who sought your life. Today Yahweh has avenged our master the king against Saul and his descendants."

UST

8 They took the head of Ishbosheth to David at Hebron. They said to him, "Here is the head of Ishbosheth, the son of your enemy Saul, who tried to kill you. Your Majesty, today Yahweh has allowed you to get revenge on Saul and his descendants!"

2 Samuel 4:9

As Yahweh lives

This is one of the strongest oaths David could swear, as Yahweh is the witness. Alternate translation: "I swear on the life of Yahweh" (See: Idiom)

who delivered my life

Here "life" refers to David himself. This means that Yahweh has kept David alive. Alternate translation: "who rescued me" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- son
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- David
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- son
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- David
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

ULT

9 David answered Recab and Baanah his brother, the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite; he said to them, "As Yahweh lives, who delivered my life from every trouble,

UST

9 But David replied to them, "Just as surely as Yahweh lives—and he is the one who has rescued me from all trouble, I will tell you this:

2 Samuel 4:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

10 when someone told me, 'Look, Saul is dead,' thinking he was bringing good news, I seized him and killed him at Ziklag. That was the reward I gave him for his news.

UST

10 When a messenger came to Ziklag and told me 'Saul is dead!' (and he thought that the news that he was bringing to me was good news), I told one of my soldiers to kill him. That was the reward I gave to him for his news!

2 Samuel 4:11

How much more...should I not now require his blood from your hand, and remove you from the earth?

This question is used to show that the men had committed an especially serious crime. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are even more guilty! It is my duty to require his blood from your hand and to remove you from the earth." (See: Rhetorical Question)

require his blood from your hand

The phrase "his blood" represents the life of Ishbosheth. Here "from your hand" represents Rechab and Baanah, the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, introduced in 2 Samuel 4:5. Alternate translation: "hold you responsible for the death of Ishbosheth" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- blood
- temple
- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- seek, search, look for
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- blood
- temple
- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- seek, search, look for
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

[11] How much more, when wicked men have killed an innocent person in his own house on his bed, should I not now require his blood from your hand, and remove you from the earth?"

UST

[11] So because you two evil men have murdered a man who did nothing wrong—and you killed him when he was sleeping on his bed in his own house, I will do something worse to you. I will surely get revenge on you two for murdering him, and wipe you off from the earth!"

2 Samuel 4:12

cut off their hands and feet and hung them up

These were symbolic actions to show contempt for the men. (See: Symbolic Action)

they took the head of Ishbosheth and buried it in the grave

This was a symbolic act to honor Ishbosheth. This could be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "they honored Ishbosheth by burying his head in the grave" (See: Symbolic Action and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- David
- hand
- head
- hang, hung
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- David
- hand
- head
- hang, hung
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

12 Then David gave orders to the young men, and they killed them and cut off their hands and feet and hung them up beside the pool at Hebron. But they took the head of Ishbosheth and buried it in the grave of Abner in Hebron.

UST

12 Then David gave a command to his soldiers, and they killed the two men, and cut off their hands and their feet, and hung their bodies on a pole near the pool at Hebron. But they took the head of Ishbosheth and buried it respectfully in the tomb of Abner, there at Hebron.

2 Samuel 5

2 Samuel 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This records the beginning of the kingdom's expansion.

Special concepts in this chapter

David conquers Jerusalem

David brought the combined army to Jerusalem and conquered it by going in through the water shaft. He enlarged the city and strengthened the defenses, and made it his capital. Jerusalem is an important place in the plans of God.

David consulting God

David always consulted God before fighting a battle. The Philistines invaded Israel trying to capture David. David asked God if he should attack the Philistines, and God said yes; so he defeated them. They invaded again and God told him to attack them from the rear and he defeated them again.

2 Samuel 5:1

we are your flesh and bone

This phrase means "a relative." Alternate translation: "we are related to you" or "we are of the same family" - (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- David
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- David
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

1 Then all the tribes of Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone.

UST

1 Then the leaders of all the tribes of Israel came to David at Hebron and said to him, "Listen, we have the same ancestors that you do.

2 Samuel 5:2

In the recent past

This is historical information. Saul had been their king before David. (See: Background Information)

You will shepherd my people Israel, and you will become ruler over Israel

These two clauses mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh had chosen David to be king. (See: Parallelism)

You will shepherd my people Israel

Here ruling over the people is spoken of as shepherding them. Alternate translation: "You will care for my people Israel" or "You will rule over my people Israel" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

2 In the recent past, when Saul was king over us, it was you who led the Israelite army. Yahweh said to you, 'You will shepherd my people Israel, and you will become ruler over Israel.'"

UST

2 In the past, when Saul was our king, it was you who led our soldiers into battle. You are the one to whom Yahweh promised, 'You will be the leader of my people. You will be their king.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

2 Samuel 5:3

They anointed David king over Israel

To "anoint" is a symbolic act to show that they recognized that God had chosen David as king. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- David
- cut off
- elder, older, old
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- David
- cut off
- elder, older, old
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

3 So all the elders of Israel came to the king at Hebron, and King David made a covenant with them before Yahweh. They anointed David king over Israel.

UST

3 So while Yahweh was listening, all those leaders of the people of Israel declared there at Hebron that David would be their king. And David made an with them. They anointed him with olive oil to set him apart to be the king of the Israelites.

2 Samuel 5:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David

ULT

4 David was thirty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned forty years.

UST

4 David was thirty years old when he became their king. He ruled them for forty years.

2 Samuel 5:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Judah
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Judah
- Jerusalem

ULT

5 In Hebron he reigned over Judah seven years and six months, and in Jerusalem he reigned thirty-three years over all Israel and Judah.

UST

5 In Hebron he had ruled over the tribe of Judah for seven and a half years, and in Jerusalem he would rule over all the people of Judah and Israel for thirty-three years.

2 Samuel 5:6

General Information:

David and the army of Israel attack Jerusalem.

You will not come here except to be turned away by the blind and the lame

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "If you come here, even the blind and the lame will be able to turn you away"

the blind and the lame

Here "the blind" and "the lame" are nominal adjectives. Alternate translation: "those people who cannot see and those who cannot walk" (See: Nominal Adjectives)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Jerusalem
- Jebus, Jebusite
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- David
- Jerusalem
- Jebus, Jebusite
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

6 The king and his men went to Jerusalem against the Jebusites, the inhabitants of the land. They said to David, "You will not come here except to be turned away by the blind and the lame. David cannot come here."

UST

6 One day King David and his soldiers went to Jerusalem to fight against the Jebus people group who lived there. The people there thought that David's army would not be able to capture the city, so they said to David, "Your army will never be able to get inside our city! Even the blind and crippled people can stop you!"

2 Samuel 5:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Zion, Mount Zion
- David
- David

Translation Words - UST

- Zion, Mount Zion
- David
- David

ULT

7 Nevertheless, David captured the stronghold of Zion, which now is the city of David.

UST

7 But David's army did indeed capture the fortress on Mount Zion; later it was known as the city of David.

2 Samuel 5:8

David said, "Those who attack the Jebusites

David was speaking to his soldiers. Alternate translation: "David said to his soldiers, 'Those who want to get rid of the Jebus people'"

The 'blind and the lame'

Possible meanings are 1) this refers to people who are truly lame and blind or 2) this is a metonym that speaks about the Jebusites inside the city of Jerusalem as if they were all weak and handicapped. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- David
- David
- house

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- David
- David
- house

ULT

8 At that time David said, "Those who attack the Jebusites will have to go through the water shaft to reach the 'lame and the blind' who are David's enemies." That is why people say, "The 'blind and the lame' must not enter the palace."

UST

8 On that day, David said to his soldiers, "Those who want to get rid of the Jebus people should go through the water tunnel to enter the city. That is where my enemies are, even my enemies who are 'crippled people and blind people'." That is why people say, "Those who are 'blind and crippled' are not allowed to go into David's palace."

2 Samuel 5:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- David (2)
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

Translation Words - UST

- David
- David
- David (2)
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

ULT

9 So David lived in the stronghold and called it the city of David. He fortified around it, from the terrace toward the inside.

UST

9 After David and his soldiers captured the city with its strong walls around it, he lived there, and they named it the city of David. David and his soldiers built the city around the fortress, starting where the land was filled in on the east side of the hill.

2 Samuel 5:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- David
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- David
- walk, walked

ULT

10 David became very powerful because Yahweh, the God of hosts, was with him.

UST

10 David continued to become more and more powerful because Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, was helping him.

2 Samuel 5:11

Hiram

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

carpenters

those who work with wood

masons

those who work with stone or brick

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Tyre, Tyrians
- cedar, cedarwood
- messenger
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- David
- Tyre, Tyrians
- cedar, cedarwood
- messenger
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT

11 Then Hiram king of Tyre sent messengers to David, and cedar trees, carpenters, and masons. They built a house for David.

UST

11 One day Hiram, the king of the city of Tyre, sent ambassadors to David to talk about making an agreement between their countries. Hiram agreed to provide cedar trees to make lumber, and he also agreed that he would send carpenters and masons to build a palace for David.

2 Samuel 5:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- kingdom
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- kingdom
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

12 David knew that Yahweh had established him as king over Israel, and that he had exalted his kingdom for the sake of his people Israel.

UST

12 Because Hiram did these things, David realized that Yahweh had truly appointed him to be the king of Israel. He also realized that because Yahweh loved the Israelites and chosen them to belong to himself, he had increased David's own power as king.

2 Samuel 5:13

more sons and daughters were born to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he had more sons and daughters" or "they bore him more sons and daughters" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- Jerusalem

ULT

13 After David left Hebron and came to Jerusalem, he took more concubines and wives in Jerusalem, and more sons and daughters were born to him.

UST

13 After David moved from Hebron to Jerusalem, he took more slave women to be his wives, and he also married other women. All of those women gave birth to more sons and daughters.

2 Samuel 5:14

Shammua...Shobab...Nathan...Solomon

These are the names of David's sons. (See: How to Translate Names)

who were born to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that his wives bore for him" or "he had" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- name
- Jerusalem

ULT

14 These were the names of the children who were born to him in Jerusalem: Shammua, Shobab, Nathan, Solomon,

UST

14 The names of his sons who were born in Jerusalem were Shammua, Shobab, Nathan, Solomon,

2 Samuel 5:15

Ibhar...Elishua...Nepheg...Japhia

These are the names of David's sons. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT
15 Ibhar, Elishua, Nepheg, Japhia,

UST
15 Ibhar, Elishua, Nepheg, Japhia,

2 Samuel 5:16

Elishama...Eliada...Eliphelet

These are the names of David's sons. (See: How to Translate Names)

2 Samuel 5:17

David had been anointed as king over Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Israel had anointed David as king" (See: Active or Passive)

they all went out looking for him

Here "all" is a generalization that means the Philistine army. Alternate translation: "the Philistine army went looking for him" (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- Philistines
- David
- David
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- Philistines
- David
- David
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for

ULT

17 Now when the Philistines heard that David had been anointed as king over Israel, they all went out looking for him. But David heard about it and went down to the stronghold.

UST

17 When the Philistine people heard that David had been made king of Israel, their army went up toward Jerusalem to try to capture David. But David heard that they were coming, so he went down to another fortified place.

2 Samuel 5:18

Valley of Rephaim

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT

18 Now the Philistines had come and spread out in the Valley of Rephaim.

UST

18 The army of Philistia arrived at the Valley of Rephaim southwest of Jerusalem and spread themselves out inside it.

2 Samuel 5:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Philistines
- David
- David
- hand
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Philistines
- David
- David
- hand
- hand

ULT

19 Then David asked for help from Yahweh. He said, "Should I attack the Philistines? Will you give victory over them?" Yahweh said to David, "Attack, for I will certainly give you victory over the Philistines."

UST

19 David asked Yahweh, "Should my men and I attack the Philistine army? Will you enable us to defeat them?" Yahweh replied, "Yes, attack them, because I will certainly enable your army to defeat them."

2 Samuel 5:20

Baal Perazim

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Yahweh has burst through my enemies before me like a bursting flood of water

Here David speaks of the victory that Yahweh brought as if it were a flood of water that overflowed its banks and covered the land, causing destruction. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has overwhelmed my enemies like a flood overwhelms the land" (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Yahweh
- name
- David
- David
- adversary, enemy

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- Yahweh
- name
- David
- David
- adversary, enemy

ULT

[20] So David attacked at Baal Perazim, and there he defeated them. He commented, "Yahweh has burst through my enemies before me like a bursting flood of water." So the name of that place became Baal Perazim.

UST

[20] So David and his army went to where the Philistine army was, and there they defeated them. Then David said, "Yahweh has burst through my enemies like a flood." So that place is called Baal Perazim.

2 Samuel 5:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• David

Translation Words - UST

• David

ULT

21 The Philistines left their idols there, and David and his men carried them away.

UST

21 The Philistine men left their idols there, and David and his soldiers took them away.

2 Samuel 5:22

the Philistines came up again

They "came up" because the Philistines lived at a lower elevation than David's stronghold.

Valley of Rephaim

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Philistines

Translation Words - UST

- Philistines

2 Samuel 5:23

balsam woods

"Balsam" here is a type of tree, and the "woods" describe many balsam trees growing together. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- David

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- David

2 Samuel 5:24

When you hear…Yahweh will have gone out before you to attack the army of the Philistines

This is the continuation of Yahweh's instruction to David that began in 2 Samuel 5:23. Yahweh here speaks of himself in the third person. (See: First, Second or Third Person)

When you hear the sound of marching in the wind blowing through the balsam treetops

This speaks of the sound of the leaves rustling as wind blows through them as if it were the sound of marching. Alternate translation: "When the wind blowing through the tops of the balsam trees sounds like men marching" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Philistines
- head
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Philistines
- head
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

24 When you hear the sound of marching in the wind blowing through the balsam treetops, then attack with force. Do this because Yahweh will have gone out before you to attack the army of the Philistines."

UST

24 When you hear something in the tops of the balsam trees that sounds like an army marching, attack them. Then you will know that I will have gone ahead of you to enable your army to defeat their army."

2 Samuel 5:25

Geba...Gezer

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Philistines
- David

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Philistines
- David

ULT

25 So David did as Yahweh had commanded him. He killed Philistines from Geba all the way to Gezer.

UST

25 So David did what Yahweh told him to do, and his army defeated the Philistine army and chased it from the city of Geba all the way west to the city of Gezer.

2 Samuel 6

2 Samuel 6 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Bringing the Ark of the Covenant to Jerusalem

David organized a procession with many musical instruments to bring the ark to Jerusalem. They put it on a cart; but when the oxen stumbled, Uzzah reached out to steady it so it would not fall. God killed him for touching the ark. David was angry at God for killing Uzzah and was afraid to bring the ark any further. Uzzah died because the ark was perfectly holy. (See: holy, holiness, unholy, sacred)

Dancing

David danced for joy in front of the ark. His wife, Michal, criticized David for uncovering himself as he danced, but David did not care. (See: joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Irony

Michal criticized David by using irony: "How honored the king of Israel was today, who undressed himself today before the eyes of the slave girls among his servants, like one of the crude fellows who shamelessly undresses himself!" (See: Irony)

2 Samuel 6:1

Now

This word marks a new part of the story.

all the chosen men of Israel

This metonym represents the army of the nation of Israel. (See: Metonymy)

thirty thousand

"30,000" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- David

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- David

ULT
1 Now David again gathered together all the chosen men of Israel, thirty thousand.

UST
1 Then David chose thirty thousand Israelite men and gathered them together.

2 Samuel 6:2

from Baalah in Judah to bring up from there the ark of God

It is implied that they are taking the ark to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "from Baalah in Judah to take to Jerusalem the ark of God" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

to bring up from there the ark of God

Jerusalem was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem and going down from it.

to bring up

The word "bring" can be translated as "take." (See: Go and Come)

Baalah

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

which is called by the name of Yahweh of hosts

Yahweh's name was written on the ark.

who sits enthroned over the cherubim

You may need to make explicit that the cherubim are those on the lid of the ark of the covenant. The biblical writers often spoke of the ark of the covenant as if it were Yahweh's footstool upon which he rested his feet as he sat on his throne in heaven above. Alternate translation: "who sits on his throne above the cherubim on the ark of the covenant" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

enthroned

to sit on a throne

ULT

2 David arose and went with all his men who were with him from Baalah in Judah to bring up from there the ark of God, which is called by the name of Yahweh of hosts, who sits enthroned over the cherubim.

UST

2 He led them to the place in Judah formerly called Baalah, now called Kiriath Jearim. They went in order to bring the sacred chest to Jerusalem, the chest that had the name of Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, written on it, and that had the figures of the winged creatures on top of it. Between those statues was where Yahweh himself was present, though he remained unseen.

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- God
- Yahweh
- name
- name
- David
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- God
- Yahweh
- name

- name
- David
- people, people group,

2 Samuel 6:3

General Information:

David and the army of the nation of Israel move the ark of the covenant.

Abinadab...Uzzah...Ahio

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- house

ULT

3 They set the ark of God on a new cart. They brought it out of Abinadab's house, which was on a hill. Uzzah and Ahio, his sons, were guiding the new cart.

UST

3 The sacred chest was in the house of Abinadab, on top of a hill. They went there, and put the chest on a new cart. Uzzah and Ahio, Abinadab's two sons, were guiding the oxen that were pulling the cart.

2 Samuel 6:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- walk, walked
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- walk, walked
- house

ULT

4 They brought the cart out of Abinadab's house on the hill with the ark of God on it. Ahio was walking in front of the ark.

UST

4 Uzzah walked alongside the cart, and Ahio walked in front of it.

2 Samuel 6:5

all the house of Israel

This metonym represents the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "all the other Israelites with him" (See: Metonymy)

tambourines

A tambourine is a musical instrument like the head of a drum with pieces of metal around the side that sound when the instrument is shaken or hit. (See: Translate Unknowns)

rattles

musical instruments with many small, hard objects inside a hard shell, making rhythmic noise when shaken (See: Translate Unknowns)

cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound (See: Translate Unknowns)

ULT
5 Then David and all the house of Israel began to play before Yahweh, celebrating with wooden instruments, harps, lyres, tambourines, rattles, and cymbals.

UST
5 David and all the Israelite men were celebrating in God's presence, singing with all their strength and playing wooden lyres and harps, and beating tambourines, and clashing castanets and cymbals.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- harp, harpist
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- harp, harpist
- house

2 Samuel 6:6

Nakon

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- thresh

Translation Words - UST

- God
- thresh

ULT

6 When they came to the threshing floor of Nakon, the oxen stumbled, and Uzzah reached out with his hand to grab the ark of God, and he took hold of it.

UST

6 But when they came to the place where Nakon threshed grain, the oxen stumbled. So Uzzah put his hand on the sacred chest to steady it.

2 Samuel 6:7

anger of Yahweh burned

Here the "anger of Yahweh" is spoken of as if it were fire. (See: Metaphor)

for his sin

It was a sin for Uzzah to touch the ark because Yahweh had commanded that no one should touch the ark. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

7 Then the anger of Yahweh burned against Uzzah. God attacked him there for his sin. Uzzah died there by the ark of God.

UST

7 Yahweh immediately became very angry with Uzzah, and killed him right there alongside the sacred chest, because he had touched the chest.

2 Samuel 6:8

Perez Uzzah

This is the name of a place. Translator may add a footnote that says, "The name 'Perez Uzzah' means 'the punishment of Uzzah.'" (See: How to Translate Names)

to this day

This means to the time when this was being written, not to the present time in the twenty-first century.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

8 David was angry because Yahweh had attacked Uzzah, and he called the name of that place Perez Uzzah. That place is called Perez Uzza to this day.

UST

8 But David was angry because Yahweh had punished Uzzah. So ever since that time, that place has been called Perez Uzzah.

2 Samuel 6:9

How can the ark of Yahweh come to me?

David uses this question to emphasize that he is afraid to take the ark to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "I am too afraid to bring the ark of Yahweh with me to Jerusalem." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David

ULT

9 David was afraid of Yahweh that day. He said, "How can the ark of Yahweh come to me?"

UST

9 Then David was afraid of what else Yahweh would do to punish them, so he said, "How can I take the sacred chest with me to Jerusalem?"

2 Samuel 6:10

Obed Edom the Gittite

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- David
- David
- David
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- David
- David
- David
- house

ULT

10 So David was not willing to take the ark of Yahweh with him into the city of David. Instead, he put it aside in the house of Obed Edom the Gittite.

UST

10 So he decided not to take the sacred chest to Jerusalem. Instead, they took it to another place, the house of Obed Edom the Gittite.

2 Samuel 6:11

blessed him

Here "him" refers to Obed Edom the Gittite.

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- house
- house

ULT

11 The ark of Yahweh remained in the house of Obed Edom the Gittite for three months. So Yahweh blessed him and all his household.

UST

11 They left the sacred chest in the house of Obed Edom for three months, and during that time Yahweh blessed him and his family.

2 Samuel 6:12

Now

This word starts a new part of the story.

King David was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people told King David" (See: Active or Passive)

Obed Edom's house

Here "house" represents a family. Alternate translation: "Obed Edom and his family" (See: Metonymy)

brought up the ark of God

Jerusalem was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem and going down from it. Alternate translation: "moved the ark of God" or "took the ark of God"

brought up

The word "brought" can be translated as "took." (See: Go and Come)

ULT

12 Now King David was told, "Yahweh has blessed Obed Edom's house and everything that belongs to him because of the ark of God." So David went and brought up the ark of God from Obed Edom's house to the city of David with joy.

UST

12 Some time later, people told David, "Yahweh has blessed Obed Edom and his family because he is taking care of the sacred chest!" When David heard that, he and some other men went to Obed Edom's house, and very joyfully brought the sacred chest from there to Jerusalem.

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- David
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- David
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house

2 Samuel 6:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh

ULT

13 When those who were carrying the ark of Yahweh had gone six steps, he sacrificed an ox and a fattened calf.

UST

13 When the men who were carrying the sacred chest had walked six steps, they stopped, and there David killed a bull and a fat calf, and offered them to Yahweh as a sacrifice.

2 Samuel 6:14

David danced before Yahweh with all his might

Dancing here is a form of joyfully worshiping Yahweh.

linen

a cloth made from fibers of the flax plant

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

ULT

14 David danced before Yahweh with all his might; he was wearing only a linen ephod.

UST

14 David was wearing only a linen cloth wrapped around his waist, and was dancing very energetically to honor Yahweh.

2 Samuel 6:15

all the house of Israel

Here "house" represents the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "all the other Israelites with him" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- trumpet, trumpeters
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- trumpet, trumpeters
- house

ULT

15 So David and all the house of Israel brought up the ark of Yahweh with shouting and the sound of trumpets.

UST

15 David and the Israelite men took the sacred chest up to Jerusalem, shouting loudly and blowing trumpets.

2 Samuel 6:16

Now...in her heart

The word "Now" marks a break in the story line. Here the narrator gives information about Michal.

Michal

Michal was the daughter of King Saul and also David's first wife. See how you translated this name in 2 Samuel 3:13.

she despised him in her heart

Here "heart" represents thoughts or emotions. Alternate translation: "she looked at him with disdain" or "she sneered at him" (See: Metonymy)

before Yahweh

"to Yahweh"

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- David
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- David
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

16 Now as the ark of Yahweh came into the city of David, Michal, daughter of Saul, looked out the window. She saw King David leaping and dancing before Yahweh. Then she despised him in her heart.

UST

16 While they were carrying the sacred chest into the city, his wife Michal, Saul's daughter, looked out the window of her house. She saw King David leaping and dancing to honor Yahweh. But she was disgusted with him.

2 Samuel 6:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- burnt offering, offering by fire

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- burnt offering, offering by fire

ULT

17 They brought in the ark of Yahweh and put it in its place, in the middle of the tent that David had set up for it. Then David offered burnt offerings and fellowship offerings before Yahweh.

UST

17 They brought the sacred chest into the tent that David had erected for it. Then David gave to Yahweh offerings to be completely burned on an altar, and other offerings to promise friendship with Yahweh.

2 Samuel 6:18

he blessed the people in the name of Yahweh of hosts

To bless "in the name of Yahweh of hosts" means to bless with
Yahweh's power and authority or as his representative. (See:
Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Yahweh
- name
- David
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Yahweh
- name
- David
- people, people group,

ULT

18 When David had finished sacrificing
the burnt offerings and the fellowship
offerings, he blessed the people in the
name of Yahweh of hosts.

UST

18 When David had finished offering
those sacrifices, he asked Yahweh,
commander of the angel armies, to
bless the people.

2 Samuel 6:19

cake of raisins

a baked sweet bread made with dried grapes

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- bread
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- bread
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- house

ULT

19 Then he distributed among all the people, the whole multitude of Israel, both to men and women, a loaf of bread, a portion of meat, and a cake of raisins. Then all the people left; each one returned to his own house.

UST

19 He also distributed food to all the people. To each man and woman he gave a loaf of bread, some meat, and a raisin cake. Then they all returned to their homes.

2 Samuel 6:20

came out

Here "came" can be translated as "went." (See: Go and Come)

How honored the king of Israel was today

This is an ironic statement. Michal means the opposite of what she said, and she does not believe David acted honorably. Michal speaks disrespectfully to King David about his dancing attire and behavior. (See: Irony)

before the eyes of the slave girls

Here "eyes of the slave girls" represents the slave girls. Alternate translation: "in front of the slave girls" (See: Synecdoche)

crude fellows

Michal is comparing David to vulgar and foolish men.

ULT

20 Then David returned to bless his family. Michal, the daughter of Saul, came out to meet David and said, "How honored the king of Israel was today, who undressed himself today before the eyes of the slave girls among his servants, like one of the crude fellows who shamelessly undresses himself!"

UST

20 When David went home to ask Yahweh to bless his family, his wife Michal came out to meet him. She said to him, "Maybe you, the king of Israel, think that you were acting in an honorable way today, but really, you acted like a fool. You were nearly naked in front of the female servants of your officials!"

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- David
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- exile, exiled
- exile, exiled
- house

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- David
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- exile, exiled
- exile, exiled
- house

2 Samuel 6:21

who chose me above your father

Here "your" refers to Michal. (See: Forms of You)

over the people of Yahweh, over Israel

Here "the people of Yahweh" and "Israel" mean the same thing. (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- people, people group,
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- people, people group,
- house

ULT

21 David responded to Michal, "I did that before Yahweh, who chose me above your father and above all his family, who appointed me leader over the people of Yahweh, over Israel. Before Yahweh I will be joyful!

UST

21 David replied to Michal, "I was doing that to honor Yahweh, who chose me instead of your father and other members of his family, to be the king of the Israelite people, the people who belong to Yahweh. And I will continue to dance to honor Yahweh!

2 Samuel 6:22

I will be even more undignified than this

David is being ironic and means the opposite of what he said. He does not believe what he did was actually undignified or that his actions in the future will be undignified. (See: Irony)

I will be humiliated in my own eyes

Here "in my own eyes" represents what a person considers or thinks about something. Alternate translation: "I will consider myself humiliated" or "I will consider myself a fool" (See: Metonymy)

But by these slave girls you have spoken about, I will be honored

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But the slave girls of whom you have spoken will honor me" (See: Active or Passive)

ULT

22 I will be even more undignified than this, and I will be humiliated in my own eyes. But by these slave girls you have spoken about, I will be honored."

UST

22 Even though you think that what I did was disgraceful, I will continue to act in this way because I am willing to be made a fool in my own eyes. But the female servants whom you were talking about, they will give me honor!"

Translation Words - ULT

- curse, cursed, cursing
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Translation Words - UST

- curse, cursed, cursing
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

2 Samuel 6:23

had no children to the day of her death

"was never able to bear any children"

2 Samuel 7

2 Samuel 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the finishing of a small interruption about the house of God. (See: house of God, Yahweh's house)

Special concepts in this chapter

David wanted to honor God by building him a temple. God told David that he would not build it, but his son would build it. (See: temple)

Covenant of David

God made a covenant with David that was not conditioned upon anything David or his descendants did. God promised that one of David's descendants would rule Israel forever. Because Israel would not have a king in the future, this promise did not begin at this time. The descendant, who would rule forever, is Jesus. (See: covenant and promise, promised and eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever)

2 Samuel 7:1

It happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

given him rest from all his surrounding enemies

"given him safety from all his surrounding enemies." Here "rest" is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: "caused the enemy people groups to stop attacking Israel" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- temple
- adversary, enemy
- king, kingdom, kingship
- rest, rested, restless

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- temple
- adversary, enemy
- king, kingdom, kingship
- rest, rested, restless

ULT

1 It happened that after the king had settled in his house, and after Yahweh had given him rest from all his surrounding enemies,

UST

1 The king began to live in his palace. By now Yahweh had caused the enemy people groups to stop attacking Israel.

2 Samuel 7:2

I am living in a house of cedar

Cedar is a kind of tree that is known for its strength. If you have an equivalent type of tree in your culture, you can use that name, otherwise you can reword this. Alternate translation: "I am living in a strong, permanent house" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the ark of God is staying in the middle of a tent

Tents are temporary dwellings. If you do not have tents in your culture, you can word this differently. Alternate translation: "the ark of God is staying in a temporary place" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- pray, prayer
- temple
- cedar, cedarwood
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- pray, prayer
- temple
- cedar, cedarwood
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

2 the king said to Nathan the prophet, "Look, I am living in a house of cedar, but the ark of God is staying in the middle of a tent."

UST

2 One day David said to the prophet Nathan, "It is not right that I am here, living in a beautiful house made of cedar wood, but the chest that contains God's Ten Commandments is kept in a tent!"

2 Samuel 7:3

do what is in your heart

Here "heart" represents the mind. Alternate translation: "do what you think you should" (See: Metonymy)

for Yahweh is with you

Here "with you" means God is helping and blessing David. (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

ULT

3 Then Nathan said to the king, "Go, do what is in your heart, for Yahweh is with you."

UST

3 Then Nathan said to the king, "Yahweh is helping you, so do about the sacred chest whatever you think is right."

2 Samuel 7:4

the word of Yahweh came to Nathan, saying:

The idiom "the word of Yahweh came to" is used to introduce a special message from God. Alternate translation: "Yahweh gave a message to Nathan. He said," or "Yahweh spoke this message to Nathan:" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh

ULT
4 But that same night the word of Yahweh came to Nathan, saying:

UST
4 But that night, Yahweh spoke to Nathan:

2 Samuel 7:5

Go and tell David my servant, 'This is what Yahweh says: Will you build me a house in which to live?

This is the beginning of a quotation that contains quotations within it.

Will you build me a house in which to live?

Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that David is not the one to build a house for Yahweh. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You will not build a house for me" (See: Rhetorical Question)

build me a house

Here "house" means a temple. In 7:11 Yahweh will say that he will build a house for David. There "house" means a family. If your language has a word that can express both ideas, use it here and in 7:11.

ULT

5 "Go and tell David my servant, 'This is what Yahweh says: Will you build me a house in which to live?

UST

5 "Go and tell my servant, David, that this is what Yahweh says to him: He is not the one who will build a temple for me to live in.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- David
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- David
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

2 Samuel 7:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- temple
- Egypt, Egyptian
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- temple
- Egypt, Egyptian
- walk, walked

ULT

6 For I have not lived in a house from the day that I brought up the people of Israel out of Egypt until this present day; instead, I have been moving about in a tent, a tabernacle.

UST

6 I have not lived in any building from the day that I brought the Israelites up from Egypt until now. Instead, I have been living in my sacred tent, moving from one place to another with the people.

2 Samuel 7:7

did I ever say anything to any of Israel's leaders whom I appointed to shepherd my people Israel, saying, "Why have you not built me a house of cedar?"

This has a quotation within a quotation. The direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "did I ever ask any of Israel's leaders, whom I appointed to shepherd my people Israel, why they had not built me a house of cedar?" (See: Quotes within Quotes and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

did I ever say anything to any of Israel's leaders

Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that he never asked any of Israel's leaders to build him a house. Alternate translation: "I never said anything to any of Israel's leaders" (See: Rhetorical Question)

whom I appointed to shepherd my people Israel

Those who are leaders of the people of Israel are spoken of as if they were shepherds and the people were sheep. (See: Metaphor)

Why have you not built me a house of cedar?

If Yahweh had asked the leaders this question, he would have been using a question to scold them for not building him a house of cedar. But, Yahweh said previously that he did not ask them this question. Alternate translation: "You should have built me a house of cedar." (See: Rhetorical Question)

ULT

7 In all places where I have moved among all the people of Israel, did I ever say anything to any of Israel's leaders whom I appointed to shepherd my people Israel, saying, "Why have you not built me a house of cedar?'"

UST

7 Wherever I went with the Israelites as they traveled, I never said to any of the leaders whom I appointed to lead them, 'Why have you not built me a temple made of cedar wood?'

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- cedar, cedarwood
- walk, walked
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
- house

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- cedar, cedarwood
- walk, walked
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

- house

2 Samuel 7:8

General Information:

Yahweh describes his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

Now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

tell my servant David, 'This is what Yahweh of hosts says: I took you…so that you would be ruler over my people Israel.

This has quotations within quotations. It may be necessary to translate the direct quotations as indirect quotations as in the UST. Alternate translation: "tell my servant David that I took him…so that he would be ruler over my people Israel" (See: Quotes within Quotes and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

tell my servant David

Yahweh is still telling the prophet Nathan what he should tell David.

I took you from the pasture

David's job as a shepherd is referred to by the place he watched his sheep. Alternate translation: "I took you from your job as a shepherd" (See: Metonymy)

> **ULT**
>
> **8** Now then, tell my servant David, 'This is what Yahweh of hosts says: I took you from the pasture, from following the sheep, so that you would be ruler over my people Israel.
>
> **UST**
>
> **8** So tell my servant David that Yahweh, the commander of the angel armies, says that he took him from a pasture and from taking care of sheep, and appointed him to become the ruler of my Israelite people.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

2 Samuel 7:9

I have been with you wherever you went. I have cut off all your enemies from before you. Now I will make your name great, like the names of the great ones of the earth

This continues the quotations within quotations. It may be necessary to translate the direct quotations as indirect quotations as in the UST. Alternate translation: "I have been with him wherever he went. I have cut off all his enemies from before him. Now I will make his name great, like the name of the great ones of the earth" (See: Quotes within Quotes and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

I have been with you

Here "with you" means that Yahweh has helped and blessed David. (See: Idiom)

I have cut off all your enemies

Yahweh destroying David's enemies is spoken of as if Yahweh cut them off, as one would cut a piece of cloth or cut a branch from a tree. (See: Metaphor)

make your name great

Here "name" represents a person's reputation. (See: Metonymy)

the great ones

The phrase "great ones" means famous persons.

ULT

9 I have been with you wherever you went. I have cut off all your enemies from before you. Now I will make your name great, like the names of the great ones of the earth.

UST

9 Remind him I have been with him wherever he has gone. I have gotten rid of all his enemies who attacked him. I will make him very famous, as well known as the names of all the greatest men who have ever lived on the earth.

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- adversary, enemy
- cut off
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- name
- adversary, enemy
- cut off
- walk, walked

2 Samuel 7:10

General Information:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

I will appoint a place

"I will choose a place"

will plant them there

Yahweh causing the people to live in the land permanently and securely is spoken of as if he would plant them in the land. (See: Metaphor)

be troubled no more

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "no one will ever trouble them" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- humble, humbled, humility
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- tremble, stagger

Translation Words - UST

- son
- humble, humbled, humility
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- tremble, stagger

ULT

10 I will appoint a place for my people Israel and will plant them there, so that they may live in their own place and be troubled no more. No longer will wicked people oppress them, as they did before,

UST

10-11 Formerly, during the time that I appointed leaders for my Israelite people, many violent groups oppressed them. But this will not happen anymore. I have chosen a place where my people can live peacefully and where no one will disturb them anymore. I will make all their enemies stop attacking them. And I will defeat all their enemies. Tell David that I declare to him that I, Yahweh, will enable his descendants to rule after him.

2 Samuel 7:11

from the days

"from the time"

I commanded judges

After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called "judges" to lead them in times of trouble.

to be over my people Israel

To be in authority is referred to as being over someone. Alternate translation: "to rule my people Israel" (See: Idiom)

Now I will give you rest from all your enemies...declare to you that I will make you a house

If in 2 Samuel 7:8 and 2 Samuel 7:9 you translated the direct quotations as indirect quotation, then here you may need to translate "you" as "him" or "his." Alternate translation: "Now I will give him rest from all his enemies...declare to him that I will make him a house" (See: Quotes within Quotes and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

ULT

11 as they were doing from the days that I commanded judges to be over my people Israel. Now I will give you rest from all your enemies. Moreover, I, Yahweh declare to you that I will make you a house.

UST

10-11 Formerly, during the time that I appointed leaders for my Israelite people, many violent groups oppressed them. But this will not happen anymore. I have chosen a place where my people can live peacefully and where no one will disturb them anymore. I will make all their enemies stop attacking them. And I will defeat all their enemies. Tell David that I declare to him that I, Yahweh, will enable his descendants to rule after him.

I will give you rest from all your enemies

"I will give you safety from all your enemies." Here "rest" is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: "I will make all your enemies stop attacking you" (See: Abstract Nouns)

I will make you a house

Here the metonym "house" refers to David's ancestors continuing on as the rulers of Israel. In 2 Samuel 7:4 Yahweh asked David if he would be the one to build a house for Yahweh. There "house" represented a temple. If your language has a word that can express both ideas, use it here and in 7:4. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- adversary, enemy
- people, people group,
- rest, rested, restless
- house

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

- Israel, Israelites
- adversary, enemy
- people, people group,
- rest, rested, restless
- house

2 Samuel 7:12

General Information:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

When your days are fulfilled and you lie down with your fathers

These two phrases have similar meanings and are combined for emphasis. They both are polite ways to refer to death and dying. (See: Parallelism and Euphemism)

I will raise up a descendant after you

Yahweh appointing David's descendant is spoken of as if Yahweh would raise or lift him up. (See: Metaphor)

one who will come out from your body

This is an idiom that means the person will be David's descendant. (See: Idiom)

I will establish his kingdom

Here "his kingdom" represents his power to rule. Alternate translation: "I will make him to be a very powerful king" (See: Metonymy)

> **ULT**
> **12** When your days are fulfilled and you lie down with your fathers, I will raise up a descendant after you, one who will come out from your body, and I will establish his kingdom.
>
> **UST**
> **12** When he dies and is buried, I will appoint one of his own sons to be king, and I will make him to be a very powerful king.

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- seed, semen
- kingdom
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- seed, semen
- kingdom
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

2 Samuel 7:13

a house for my name

Here "name" refers to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "a permanent dwelling for me" (See: Metonymy)

I will establish the throne of his kingdom forever

Here "throne" represents the person's power to rule as king. Alternate translation: "I will make his rule over Israel to last forever" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- throne, enthroned
- kingdom
- house

Translation Words - UST

- throne, enthroned
- kingdom
- house

ULT

13 He will build a house for my name, and I will establish the throne of his kingdom forever.

UST

13 He is the one who will arrange for a temple to be built for me. I will make his rule over Israel to last forever.

2 Samuel 7:14

I will be a father to him, and he will be my son

The prophecy in 7:12-14 refers to Solomon, David's son. But, aspects of the prophecy will be fulfilled by Jesus. So, here it is best to translate the words "father" and "son" with your normal words for a biological father and son.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

14 I will be a father to him, and he will be my son. When he sins, I will discipline him with the rod of men and with the whipping of the sons of men.

UST

14 I will be like a father to him, and it will be as though he is a son to me. When he does something that is wrong, I will punish him as fathers punish their sons.

2 Samuel 7:15

General Information:

Yahweh finishes describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

But my covenant faithfulness will not leave him, as I took it from Saul

The word "faithfulness" is an abstract noun that can be stated as "faithfully loving." Alternate translation: "I will never stop faithfully loving him as I stopped loving Saul" (See: Abstract Nouns)

from before you

If in 2 Samuel 7:8 and 2 Samuel 7:9 you translated the direct quotations as indirect quotation, then here you may need to translate "you" as "David" or "him" or "his" as in the UST. Alternate translation: "from before David. David's house...before him." (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

Translation Words - ULT

  • covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Translation Words - UST

  • covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

> **ULT**
>
> **15** But my covenant faithfulness will not leave him, as I took it from Saul, whom I removed from before you.
>
> **UST**
>
> **15** But I will never stop faithfully loving him as I stopped loving Saul, whom I removed from being king before David became king.

2 Samuel 7:16

Your house…before you. Your throne

If in 2 Samuel 7:8 and 2 Samuel 7:9 you translated the direct
quotations as indirect quotation, then here you may need to
translate "you" as "David" or "him" or "his" as in the UST. Alternate
translation: "David's house…before him. His throne" (See: Direct and
Indirect Quotations)

Your house and kingdom will be confirmed forever before you. Your throne will be established forever.

These two sentences have similar meanings and emphasize that
David's dynasty will last forever. (See: Parallelism)

ULT

16 Your house and kingdom will be
confirmed forever before you. Your
throne will be established forever."'

UST

16 David's descendants will rule the
kingdom of Israel forever. Their rule will
never end."

Your house and kingdom will be confirmed forever before you

Here the word "house" represents David's descendants, who will rule as kings. Here "kingdom" means about the
same thing as "house." This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You will live to see me
establish your family and their rule over the people of Israel forever" (See: Doublet and Active or Passive)

Your throne will be established forever

Here "throne" represents the power to rule as king. Alternate translation: "I will cause your descendants to rule
over Israel forever" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- throne, enthroned
- house

Translation Words - UST

- throne, enthroned
- house

2 Samuel 7:17

all these words

"all these things." This refers to what Yahweh had said.

he told him about the entire vision

"he told him about everything Yahweh revealed to him"

Translation Words - ULT

- David

Translation Words - UST

- David

ULT

17 Nathan spoke to David and reported to him all these words, and he told him about the entire vision.

UST

17 So Nathan told David everything that Yahweh had told him.

2 Samuel 7:18

Who am I, Yahweh God, and what is my family that you have brought me to this point?

David asks this question to express the deep emotion he felt from hearing Yahweh's proclamation. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "My family and I are not worthy of this honor, Yahweh God." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT

18 Then David the king went in and sat before Yahweh and said, "Who am I, Yahweh God, and what is my family that you have brought me to this point?

UST

18 When David heard Nathan's message, he went into the sacred tent and sat in Yahweh's presence, and prayed this: "Yahweh, my God, I am not worthy of all the things that you have done for me, and my family is not worthy either.

2 Samuel 7:19

in your sight

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "in your judgment" (See: Metaphor)

your servant's family

Here David refers to himself as "your servant." This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "my family" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

for a great while to come

This speaks about time as if it were something that travels and arrives somewhere. Alternate translation: "and what will happen to them in the future" (See: Metaphor)

your servant

Here David refers to himself as "your servant." This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "me" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

19 Now this was a small thing in your sight, Lord Yahweh. You have even spoken about your servant's family for a great while to come, and have shown me future generations, Lord Yahweh!

UST

19 And now, O Yahweh my God, in addition to everything else, you have spoken about what will happen to my descendants in the future for many generations.

2 Samuel 7:20

What more can I, David, say to you?

David uses this question to emphasize that he has nothing left to say to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "There is nothing more I can say to you." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

[20] What more can I, David, say to you? You have known your servant, Lord Yahweh.

UST

[20] O Yahweh God, what more can I, David, say to you for honoring me? Although you know very well what I am like, Yahweh my God, you have acted toward me as though I were the most important man on the earth!

2 Samuel 7:21

For your word's sake

"Because of what you promised to do"

to fulfill your own purpose

"to accomplish what you planned to do"

to your servant

David refers to himself as "your servant." It can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "to me" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

21 For your word's sake, and to fulfill your own purpose, you have done this great thing and revealed it to your servant.

UST

21 You have done all these great things to teach me, and you have done them just because you wanted to do them and because you decided to do them.

2 Samuel 7:22

as we have heard with our own ears

The phrase "with our own ears" is used for emphasis. Alternate translation: "as we ourselves have heard" (See: Idiom)

as we have heard

Here "we" refers to David and the nation of Israel. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- proud, pride, prideful

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- proud, pride, prideful

ULT

22 Therefore you are great, Lord Yahweh, for there is no one like you, and there is no God besides you, as we have heard with our own ears.

UST

22 O Yahweh my God, you are great. There is no one like you. Only you are God, just as we have always heard.

2 Samuel 7:23

What nation is like your people Israel, the one nation on earth whom you, God, went and rescued for yourself?

David uses a question emphasize that there is no other nation like Israel. Alternate translation: "There is no nation like your people Israel, the one nation on earth whom you, God, went and rescued for yourself." (See: Rhetorical Question)

to make a name for yourself

Here "name" represents Yahweh's reputation. Alternate translation: "to make all people know who you are" (See: Metonymy)

for your land

Here "land" represents the people. Alternate translation: "for your people" (See: Metonymy)

You drove out nations

Here "nations" represents the people groups that were living in Canaan. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- God
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- name
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- nation
- nation
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- God
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- name
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- nation

ULT

23 What nation is like your people Israel, the one nation on earth whom you, God, went and rescued for yourself? You did this so that they would become a people for yourself, to make a name for yourself, and to do great and fearful deeds for your land. You drove out nations and their gods from before your people, whom you rescued from Egypt.

UST

23 And there is no other nation in the world like Israel. Israel is the only nation on the earth whose people you went out to rescue, as you rescued them from Egypt. Then you made them belong to you yourself. And for doing all these things, you are now well known throughout the world. As your people advanced through this land, you drove out other people groups who were in Canaan, along with their gods.

- nation
- walk, walked

2 Samuel 7:24

General Information:

David continues to talk to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

ULT

24 You established Israel as your own people forever, and you, Yahweh, became their God.

UST

24 You caused us Israelites to be your people forever, and you, Yahweh, have become our God!

2 Samuel 7:25

So now

Here "now" does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

may the promise that you made concerning your servant and his family be established forever

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "may you do what you promised to me and my family, and may your promise never change" (See: Active or Passive)

your servant and his family

David is speaking about himself in the third person. This can be stated in the first person. Alternate translation: "me and my family" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

25 So now, Yahweh God, may the promise that you made concerning your servant and his family be established forever. Do as you have spoken.

UST

25 And now, Yahweh my God, I pray that you will cause the things that you promised to me about my descendants to come true and be true forever, and that you will do the things that you said that you would do.

2 Samuel 7:26

May your name be forever great

Here "name" represents Yahweh's reputation. (See: Metonymy)

the house of me, David, your servant

Here "house" represents family. Alternate translation: "my family" (See: Metonymy)

is established before you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "is secure because of you" or "continues because of you" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

26 May your name be forever great, so the people will say, 'Yahweh of hosts is the God of Israel,' while the house of me, David, your servant is established before you.

UST

26 When that happens, you will become famous forever, and people will exclaim, 'Yahweh, the commander of angel armies, is the God who rules Israel.' And you will cause that there will forever be descendants of mine who will rule.

2 Samuel 7:27

to your servant that you will build him a house

David refers to himself as "your servant." Alternate translation: "to me that you will build me a house" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

that you will build him a house

Here the metonym "house" refers to David's ancestors continuing on as the rulers of Israel. In 2 Samuel 7:4 Yahweh asked David if he would be the one to build a house for Yahweh. There "house" represented a temple. If your language has a word that can express both ideas, use it here and in 7:4. (See: Metonymy)

house

Here "house" represents David's family. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- heart
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women (2)
- exile, exiled
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- heart
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women (2)
- exile, exiled
- house

ULT

27 For you, Yahweh of hosts, the God of Israel, have revealed to your servant that you will build him a house. That is why I, your servant, have found courage to pray to you.

UST

27 Yahweh, the God whom we Israelite people worship, you have revealed to me that you will make some of my descendants kings. For that reason, I have been brave enough to pray like this to you.

2 Samuel 7:28

Now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

your words are trustworthy

"I trust what you say"

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

28 Now, Lord Yahweh, you are God, and your words are trustworthy, and you have made this good promise to your servant.

UST

28 So now, O Yahweh, because you are God, we can trust that you will do what you promise. You have promised these good things to me.

2 Samuel 7:29

with your blessing your servant's house will be blessed forever

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you will continue to bless my family forever" (See: Active or Passive)

your servant's house

Here David refers to himself as "your servant." Alternate translation: "my house" or "my family" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house

ULT

29 Now then, let it please you to bless the house of your servant, so that it may continue forever before you. For you, Lord Yahweh, have said these things, and with your blessing your servant's house will be blessed forever."

UST

29 So now I ask you that if it pleases you, you will bless my descendants, in order that they may continue to rule forever. Yahweh God, you have promised these things, so I know that if you do these things, you will keep blessing my descendants forever."

2 Samuel 8

2 Samuel 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter returns to the theme of the expansion of David's kingdom.

Special concepts in this chapter

God enabled victory

God enabled David to conquer all the surrounding nations. Much of the loot and tribute David received, he saved for the temple that his son would build.

2 Samuel 8:1

David attacked

Here David represents his soldiers. Alternate translation: "David and his soldiers attacked" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- Philistines
- Philistines
- David
- David (2)
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- Philistines
- Philistines
- David
- David (2)
- hand

ULT

1 After this it came about that David attacked the Philistines and defeated them. So David took Metheg Ammah from the control of the Philistines.

UST

1 Some time later, David's army attacked the Philistine army and defeated them. They took control over the Philistine city of Gath and its surrounding villages.

2 Samuel 8:2

Then he defeated

Here "he" refers to David who represents his soldiers. Alternate translation: "Then they defeated" (See: Synecdoche)

measured their men with a line…He measured off two lines to put to death, and one full line to keep alive

Here the "line" is a "rope." David had the soldiers lie down on the ground to be measured and sorted into three groups. The men in two groups were killed, and in the third, they were allowed to live.

Translation Words - ULT

- Moab, Moabite
- Moab, Moabite
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- earth, earthen, earthly
- grain offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Moab, Moabite
- Moab, Moabite
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- earth, earthen, earthly
- grain offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

2 Then he defeated Moab and measured their men with a line by making them lie down on the ground. He measured off two lines to put to death, and one full line to keep alive. So the Moabites became servants to David and began to pay him tribute.

UST

2 David's army also defeated the army of the Moab people group. David forced their soldiers to lie down on the ground close to each other. His men killed two out of every three of them. The others of the Moab people were forced to accept David as their ruler, and they were forced to give to him every year the payment that he demanded.

2 Samuel 8:3

David then defeated Hadadezer

Here both "David" and "Hadadezer" represent their armies. Alternate translation: "David and his army then defeated the army of Hadadezer" (See: Synecdoche)

Hadadezer...Rehob

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Zobah

This is the name of a region in Aram. (See: How to Translate Names)

to recover his rule

"to regain control over a region" or "to recapture a region"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- restore, restoration
- David
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- restore, restoration
- David
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

3 David then defeated Hadadezer son of Rehob, the king of Zobah, as Hadadezer was traveling to recover his rule by the Euphrates River.

UST

3 David's army also defeated the army of Hadadezer son of Rehob, who ruled the region of Zobah in Aram. That happened when he went try to regain power over the area at the upper part of the Euphrates River.

2 Samuel 8:4

1,700 chariots

"one thousand seven hundred chariots" (See: Numbers)

twenty thousand footmen

"20,000 footmen" (See: Numbers)

David hamstrung

This is a practice where the tendons in the backs of the legs are cut so that the horses cannot run.

reserved enough

"set aside enough" or "saved enough"

a hundred chariots

"100 chariots" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David

Translation Words - UST

- David
- David

ULT

4 David captured from him 1,700 chariots and twenty thousand footmen. David hamstrung all the chariot horses, but reserved enough of them for a hundred chariots.

UST

4 David's army captured 1,700 of Hadadezer's soldiers who used chariots, and twenty thousand soldiers on foot. They also crippled all but one hundred of the horses, and they would be used to pull chariots.

2 Samuel 8:5

David killed

Here David represents his soldiers. Alternate translation: "David and his soldiers killed" (See: Synecdoche)

twenty-two thousand Aramean men

"22,000 Aramean men" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT
5 When the Arameans of Damascus came to help Hadadezer king of Zobah, David killed twenty-two thousand Aramean men.

UST
5 When the army of Aram came from the city of Damascus to help King Hadadezer's army, David's soldiers killed twenty-two thousand of them.

2 Samuel 8:6

put garrisons in Aram

"ordered large groups of his soldiers to remain in Aram"

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- walk, walked
- grain offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- walk, walked
- grain offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

6 Then David put garrisons in Aram of Damascus, and the Arameans became servants to him and brought him tribute. Yahweh gave victory to David wherever he went.

UST

6 Then David stationed groups of his soldiers in their area, and the people of Aram were forced to accept David to be their ruler, and to give to David's government every year the payment of tribute money that he demanded. And Yahweh enabled David's army to win victories wherever they went.

2 Samuel 8:7

David took

Here "David" is probably a metonym for his soldiers. Alternate translation: "David's soldiers took" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Jerusalem
- gold, golden
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- David
- Jerusalem
- gold, golden
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

7 David took the golden shields that were on Hadadezer's servants and brought them to Jerusalem.

UST

7 King David's soldiers took the gold shields that were carried by Hadadezer's officials, and brought them to Jerusalem.

2 Samuel 8:8

King David took

Here "David" is probably a metonym for his soldiers. Alternate translation: "King David's soldiers took" (See: Metonymy)

Tebah and Berothai

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- bronze

Translation Words - UST

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- bronze

ULT

8 From Tebah and Berothai, cities of Hadadezer, King David took very much bronze.

UST

8 They also brought to Jerusalem much bronze that they found in Tebah and Berothai, two cities that King Hadadezer had previously ruled.

2 Samuel 8:9

Tou

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hamath

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

David had defeated

Here "David" is a metonym for his army. Alternate translation: "David's army had defeated" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

9 When Tou, king of Hamath, heard that David had defeated all the army of Hadadezer,

UST

9 When Tou, the king of the city of Hamath in Aram, heard that David's army had defeated the entire army of King Hadadezer,

2 Samuel 8:10

Tou...Hadoram

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- hand
- silver
- king, kingdom, kingship
- bronze
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- hand
- silver
- king, kingdom, kingship
- bronze
- gold, golden

ULT

10 Tou sent Hadoram his son to King David to greet him and to bless him, because David had fought against Hadadezer and defeated him, and because Hadadezer had waged war against Tou. Hadoram brought with himself objects of silver, gold, and bronze.

UST

10 he sent his son Joram to greet King David and to congratulate him about his army defeating Hadadezer's army, which Tou's army had fought many times. Joram brought to David many gifts made from gold, silver, and bronze.

2 Samuel 8:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Yahweh
- David
- silver
- nation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Yahweh
- David
- silver
- nation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

11 King David set aside these objects to Yahweh, together with the silver and gold from all the nations that he conquered—

UST

11 King David dedicated all those items to Yahweh. He also dedicated the silver and gold that his army had taken from the nations that they had conquered.

2 Samuel 8:12

and Amalek

"and the Amalekites"

the plundered goods

These are the valuable items that soldiers take from the people they defeated.

Hadadezer son of Rehob, the king of Zobah

See how you translated these names in 2 Samuel 8:3.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

12 from Aram, Moab, the people of Ammon, the Philistines, and Amalek, along with all of the plundered goods of Hadadezer son of Rehob, the king of Zobah.

UST

12 They had taken items from the people groups of Edom and Moab, from Ammon, from the Philistine, from the those who descended from Amalek, and from the people whom Hadadezer previously ruled.

2 Samuel 8:13

David's name was well known

Here "name" refers to David's reputation. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "David was very famous" (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

Valley of Salt

This is the name of a place. Its exact location is unknown. (See: How to Translate Names)

eighteen thousand men

"18,000 men" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- David

Translation Words - UST

- name
- David

ULT

13 David's name was well known when he returned from conquering the Arameans in the Valley of Salt, with their eighteen thousand men.

UST

13 When David returned after defeating the armies of Aram, he became more famous because his army killed eighteen thousand soldiers from the Edom people group in the Valley of Salt near the Dead Sea.

2 Samuel 8:14

He placed garrisons throughout all of Edom

"He ordered groups of his soldiers to remain in areas throughout all of Edom"

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- David
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- David
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

14 He placed garrisons throughout all of Edom, and all the Edomites became servants to him. Yahweh gave victory to David wherever he went.

UST

14 David stationed groups of his soldiers throughout the region of Edom, and forced the people there to accept him to be their king. Yahweh enabled David's army to win battles wherever they went.

2 Samuel 8:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- judge, judgment
- David
- David
- people, people group,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- judge, judgment
- David
- David
- people, people group,
- reign, rule

ULT

15 David reigned over all Israel, and he administered justice and righteousness to all his people.

UST

15 David ruled over all the Israelite people, and he always did for them what was fair and just.

2 Samuel 8:16

Joab...Zeruiah

See how you translated these names in 2 Samuel 2:13.

Ahilud was recorder

A recorder was a person who spoke to the people and told them the king's announcements. Alternate translation: "Ahilud was the herald" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Ahilud

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)

ULT
16 Joab son of Zeruiah was the commander of the army, and Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud was recorder.

UST
16 Joab was the army commander. Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud, was the man who reported to the people everything that David decided that they should do.

2 Samuel 8:17

Ahitub…Ahimelech…Seraiah

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- son
- son (2)
- priest, priesthood

Translation Words - UST

- scribe
- son
- son (2)
- priest, priesthood

ULT

17 Zadok son of Ahitub and Ahimelech son of Abiathar were priests, and Seraiah was scribe.

UST

17 Zadok son of Ahitub and Ahimelech son of Abiathar were the priests. Seraiah was the official secretary;

2 Samuel 8:18

Benaiah...Jehoiada

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Kerethites...Pelethites

These are names of people-groups. These people were David's bodyguards. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- priest, priesthood
- David

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- priest, priesthood
- David

ULT

18 Benaiah son of Jehoiada was in charge of the Kerethites and Pelethites, and David's sons were the chief officials at the king's hand. [1]

8:18 [1] Compare this verse with 1 Chronicles 18:17: *were the chief officials at the king's hand* ; but the MT has, *were priests* .

UST

18 Benaiah son of Jehoiada was the commander of David's bodyguards, and David's sons were his advisors.

2 Samuel 9

2 Samuel 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is another interruption to the story of David expanding his kingdom. David is concerned with fulfilling his oath to Jonathan's descendants.

Special concepts in this chapter

David's vow

David determined to fulfill his vow to Jonathan to care for Jonathan's descendants. He found Jonathan's son and told him he would treat him as if he was one of his sons. He restored all of Saul's property to him and had him eat every day at the king's table. (See: fulfill, fulfilled, carried out and vow and restore, restoration)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical question and metaphor

Jonathan's son expressed his surprise and feeling of unworthiness with a rhetorical question: "What is your servant, that you should look with favor on such a dead dog as I am?" and by a metaphor comparing himself to "a dead dog." (See: Rhetorical Question and Metaphor)

2 Samuel 9:1

for Jonathan's sake

"because of my love for Jonathan"

Jonathan's sake

Jonathan was Saul's son and David's best friend.

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- David
- house

Translation Words - UST

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- David
- house

ULT

1 David said, "Is there anyone left in Saul's family to whom I may show kindness for Jonathan's sake?"

UST

1 One day David asked some of his servants, "Is there anyone who is a descendant of Saul to whom I can act kindly?" He asked this because he had loved Jonathan.

2 Samuel 9:2

Ziba

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

I am your servant

Ziba calls himself "your servant" to show great respect to David.

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

2 There was in Saul's family a servant whose name was Ziba, and they called him to David. The king said to him, "Are you Ziba?" He replied, "Yes. I am your servant."

UST

2 They told him that there was in Jerusalem a man named Ziba who had been a servant of Saul's family. So David sent messengers to summon Ziba. When he arrived, the king asked him, "Are you Ziba?" He replied, "Yes, your Majesty, I am."

2 Samuel 9:3

I may show the kindness of God

The abstract noun "kindness" can be stated as "kind." Alternate translation: "I may be kind as I promised God I would be"

who is lame in his feet

"whose feet are damaged." The word "feet" here refers to the ability to walk. Alternate translation: "who is unable to walk" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT

3 So the king said, "Is there not anyone left of Saul's family to whom I may show the kindness of God?" Ziba replied to the king, "Jonathan still has a son, who is lame in his feet."

UST

3 The king asked him, "Is there anyone in Saul's family to whom I can act kindly, as I promised God that I would do?" Ziba replied, "Yes, there is one son of Jonathan who is still alive. His feet are crippled."

2 Samuel 9:4

Machir…Ammiel

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Lo Debar

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT

4 The king said to him, "Where is he?" Ziba replied to the king, "Look, he is in the house of Machir son of Ammiel in Lo Debar."

UST

4 The king asked him, "Where is he?" Ziba replied, "He is living in the house of Machir son of Ammiel, in the city of Lo Debar east of the Jordan River."

2 Samuel 9:5

King David sent

It is understood that David sent messengers. (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT

5 Then King David sent and had him brought out of the house of Machir son of Ammiel from Lo Debar.

UST

5 So King David sent messengers to bring Mephibosheth to Jerusalem.

2 Samuel 9:6

Mephibosheth

See how you translated this in 2 Samuel 4:4.

came to David

The word "came" can be translated as "went." (See: Go and Come)

I am your servant

Mephibosheth refers to himself as "your servant" to show great honor to David.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- prostrate, worship
- David
- David
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)
- prostrate, worship
- David
- David
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

6 So Mephibosheth son of Jonathan son of Saul, came to David and bowed down his face to the floor in honor of David. David said, "Mephibosheth." He answered, "See, I am your servant!"

UST

6 When Mephibosheth came to David, he knelt down with his face on the ground, to show respect. Then David said, "Mephibosheth!" He replied, "Yes, your Majesty, how may I serve you?"

2 Samuel 9:7

for Jonathan your father's sake

"because I loved your father, Jonathan"

you will always eat at my table

Here "my table" represents being together with David or in his presence. Eating with the king at his table was a great honor. Alternate translation: "you will always eat with me" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- bread
- devour
- return

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- bread
- devour
- return

ULT

7 David said to him, "Do not be afraid, for I will surely show you kindness for Jonathan your father's sake, and I will restore to you all the land of Saul your grandfather, and you will always eat at my table."

UST

7 David said to him, "Do not be afraid. I will be kind to you because Jonathan your father was my friend. I will give back to you all the land that belonged to your grandfather Saul. And I want you to always eat with me in my house."

2 Samuel 9:8

What is your servant, that you should look with favor on such a dead dog as I am?

This rhetorical question shows that Mephibosheth understands that he is not important enough for the king to take care of him. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am like a dead dog. I do not deserve for you to be kind to me." (See: Rhetorical Question)

such a dead dog

Here Mephibosheth represents the line of Saul, and he compares himself to a "dead dog." Dogs were feral animals, not cared for, and of little importance. A dead dog would be considered even less important. Alternate translation: "such a person like me who is worthless as a dead dog" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

8 Mephibosheth bowed and said, "What is your servant, that you should look with favor on such a dead dog as I am?"

UST

8 Mephibosheth bowed in front of David again and said, "Sir, I am as worthless as a dead dog. I do not deserve that you act kindly toward me!"

Translation Words - ULT

- prostrate, worship
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- prostrate, worship
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

2 Samuel 9:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

ULT

9 Then the king called to Ziba, Saul's servant, and said to him, "All that belonged to Saul and his family I have given to your master's grandson.

UST

9 Then the king summoned Saul's servant Ziba and said to him, "Saul was your master, and now I am giving to Mephibosheth everything that belonged to Saul and his family.

2 Samuel 9:10

must always eat at my table

Here "my table" represents being together with David or in his presence. Eating with the king at his table was a great honor. Alternate translation: "must always eat with me" (See: Metonymy)

Now Ziba...servants

Here "now" makes a break in the main story line. The narrator gives background information about Ziba. (See: Background Information)

fifteen sons and twenty servants

"15 sons and 20 servants" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- son
- son
- son
- bread
- bread
- devour
- devour
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- son
- son
- son
- bread
- bread
- devour
- devour
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

10 You, your sons, and your servants must till the land for him and you must harvest the crops so that your master's grandson will have food to eat. For Mephibosheth, your master's grandson, must always eat at my table." Now Ziba had fifteen sons and twenty servants.

UST

10 You and your fifteen sons and your twenty servants must plow the land for Mephibosheth's family and plant crops and harvest them, in order that they will have food to eat. But Mephibosheth will eat with me at my house."

2 Samuel 9:11

Your servant will do all that my master the king commands his servant

Ziba refers to himself as "your servant" and refers to David as "my master." Alternate translation: "I, your servant will do all that you, my king, command me to do" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- son
- devour
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- son
- devour
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

11 Then Ziba said to the king, "Your servant will do all that my master the king commands his servant." The king added, "As for Mephibosheth he will eat at my table, as one of the king's sons."

UST

11 Ziba replied to the king, "Your Majesty, I will do everything that you have commanded me to do." So after that, Mephibosheth always ate at the king's table, as though he were one of the king's sons.

2 Samuel 9:12

Mika

This is the name of the son of Mephibosheth. (See: How to Translate Names)

All who lived in the house of Ziba

Here "house" represents Ziba's family. Alternate translation: "All of Ziba's family" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT
12 Mephibosheth had a young son whose name was Mika. All who lived in the house of Ziba were servants of Mephibosheth.

UST
12 Mephibosheth had a young son named Mika. All of Ziba's family became servants of Mephibosheth.

2 Samuel 9:13

he always ate at the king's table

Here "table" represents being together with David or in his presence. Eating with the king at his table was a great honor. Alternate translation: "he always ate with the king at his table" (See: Metonymy)

though he was lame in both his feet

"thouge both of his feet were damaged." Here "feet" represents the ability to walk. Alternate translation: "though he was unable to walk" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- devour
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- devour
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

13 So Mephibosheth lived in Jerusalem, and he always ate at the king's table, though he was lame in both his feet.

UST

13 So Mephibosheth, who was still crippled in both of his feet, started to live in Jerusalem, and he always ate at the king's table.

2 Samuel 10

2 Samuel 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The chapter records the last expansion of David's kingdom. This chapter is also the beginning of a section dealing with the war between Israel and Ammon.

Special concepts in this chapter

Shame

It was apparently the cause of shame or embarrassment in ancient Ammon to have their beards shaved off or to have their garments cut off. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The Ammon people used a metaphor comparing themselves to a bad smell: "they had become a stench to David" when they realized they had made David very angry. (See: Metaphor)

2 Samuel 10:1

Hanun

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

1 It came about later that the king of the people of Ammon died, and that Hanun his son became king in his place.

UST

1 Some time later, Nahash, the king of the Ammon people group, died; then his son Hanun became their king.

2 Samuel 10:2

Hanun...Nahash

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- David
- David
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- David
- David
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

2 David said, "I will show kindness to Hanun son of Nahash, as his father showed kindness to me." So David sent his servants to comfort Hanun concerning his father. His servants entered the land of the people of Ammon.

UST

2 David thought to himself, "Nahash was kind to me, so I will be kind to his son." So David sent some officials there, to tell Hanun that David was sorry that Hanun's father had died. When those messengers arrived in the land of Ammon,

2 Samuel 10:3

Do you really think that...you?

The leaders use a question to suggest to the king that he should not trust David. Alternate translation: "You are wrong to think that...you!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

to spy

to secretly learn information about someone else

Has not David...overthrow it?

The leaders use a question to suggest to the king that he should not trust David. Alternate translation: "You need to know that David...overthrow it." (See: Rhetorical Question)

in order to overthrow it

Here "it" refers to the city which represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: "in order to conquer us" (See: Metonymy)

the city

Here "the city" refers to Rabbah, the capital city of the Ammonites.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- David
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- David
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

[3] But the leaders of the people of Ammon said to Hanun their master, "Do you really think that David is honoring your father because he has sent men to comfort you? Has not David sent his servants to you to look at the city, to spy it out, in order to overthrow it?"

UST

[3] the Ammonite leaders said to Hanun, "Do you think that it is to honor your father that David has sent these men to say that he is sorry that you father died? We think that he has sent them here to look around the city to determine how his army can conquer us!"

2 Samuel 10:4

shaved off half their beards

This act was meant as an insult to humiliate the men. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- cut off
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- David
- cut off
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

4 So Hanun took David's servants, shaved off half their beards, cut off their garments up to their buttocks, and sent them away.

UST

4 Hanun believed what they said. So he commanded some soldiers to seize David's officials and insult them by shaving off one side of their beards, and by cutting off the lower part of their robes, with the result that their buttocks could be seen, and then they sent them away.

2 Samuel 10:5

were deeply ashamed

Here "deeply" is an idiom that means "very." (See: Idiom)

then return

It is understood that they should return to Jerusalem. (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jericho
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return

Translation Words - UST

- Jericho
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return

ULT

5 When they explained this to David, he sent to meet with them, for the men were deeply ashamed. The king said, "Stay at Jericho until your beards have grown back, and then return."

UST

5 The men were very humiliated, so they did not want to return home. When David found out about what had happened to his officials, he sent someone to tell them, "Stay at Jericho until your beards have grown again, and then return home."

2 Samuel 10:6

they had become a stench to David

The phrase "become a stench" is a metaphor for "they had become offensive." Alternate translation: "they had become offensive like a bad smell to David" (See: Metaphor)

Beth Rehob...Zobah...Maacah...Tob

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

twenty thousand...a thousand...twelve thousand

"20,000...1,000...12,000" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

6 When the people of Ammon saw that they had become a stench to David, the people of Ammon sent messengers and hired the Arameans of Beth Rehob and Zobah, twenty thousand foot soldiers, and the king of Maacah with a thousand men, and the men of Tob with twelve thousand men.

UST

6 Then the Ammonite leaders realized that they had greatly insulted David. So they sent some men to hire some soldiers from other nearby areas to help defend them. They hired twenty thousand soldiers from the regions of Beth Rehob and Zobah northeast of Israel, and twelve thousand soldiers from the region of Tob, and one thousand soldiers from the army of the king of the region of Maacah.

2 Samuel 10:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- might, mighty, mighty works

Translation Words - UST

- David
- might, mighty, mighty works

2 Samuel 10:8

to their city gate

Here "the city" refers to Rabbah, the capital city of the Ammonites.

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- son
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT

8 The Ammonites came out and formed a line of battle at the entrance to their city gate, while the Arameans of Zobah and of Rehob, and the men of Tob and Maacah, stood by themselves in the open fields.

UST

8 The Ammonite soldiers came outside their city gate and stood in a line ready for battle. At the same time, the foreign soldiers whom their king had hired grouped themselves in the open fields nearby.

2 Samuel 10:9

General Information:

The battle with the Arameans and Ammon continues.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial

ULT

9 When Joab saw the battle lines facing him both in front and behind, he chose some of Israel's best fighters and arranged them against the Arameans.

UST

9 Joab saw that there were enemy soldiers in front of his troops and behind his troops. So he chose some of the best Israelite soldiers, and put them in positions to fight against the soldiers in the fields.

2 Samuel 10:10

The rest of his people he put into the hand of Abishai his brother

"He put Abishai his brother in charge of the rest of the army"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- hand
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- hand
- people, people group,

ULT

10 The rest of his people he put into the hand of Abishai his brother, and he set them out in position to fight against the army of Ammon.

UST

10 He told his brother Abishai to command the other soldiers, those who were facing the Ammonite soldiers in front of their city gate.

2 Samuel 10:11

General Information:

Joab gets the army ready for battle.

for me, then you, Abishai, must rescue me

Here "me" refers to Joab. Joab and Abishai represents themselves and their armies. Alternate translation: "for us, then you, Abishai, and your army must rescue us" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- strength, strengthen, strong
- strength, strengthen, strong

Translation Words - UST

- son
- strength, strengthen, strong
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

11 Joab said, "If the Arameans are too strong for me, then you, Abishai, must rescue me. But if the army of Ammon is too strong for you, then I will come and rescue you.

UST

11 Then Joab said, "If the soldiers from Aram are too strong for us to defeat them, your men must come and help us. But if the Ammonite soldiers are too strong for you, we will come and help your men.

2 Samuel 10:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

12 Be strong, and let us show ourselves to be strong for our people and for the cities of our God, for Yahweh will do what is good for his purpose."

UST

12 We must be strong and fight hard to defend our people and the cities that belong to our God. I will pray that Yahweh do what he considers to be good."

2 Samuel 10:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

• people, people group,

ULT

13 So Joab and the soldiers of his army advanced to the battle against the Arameans, who were forced to flee before the army of Israel.

UST

13 So Joab and his army advanced to attack the army of Aram, and the Aramites ran away from them.

2 Samuel 10:14

from Abishai

Here Abishai represents himself and his soldiers. Alternate translation: "from Abishai and his soldiers" (See: Synecdoche)

into the city

Here "the city" refers to Rabbah, the capital city of the Ammonites.

went back to Jerusalem

"returned to Jerusalem"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Jerusalem
- return

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Jerusalem
- return

ULT
14 When the army of Ammon saw that the Arameans had fled, they also fled from Abishai and went back into the city. Then Joab returned from the people of Ammon and went back to Jerusalem.

UST
14 When the Ammonites saw that the Aramites were running away, they also started to run away from Abishai and his men; they retreated back inside the city. Then Joab and his army left that place and went back to Jerusalem.

2 Samuel 10:15

When the Arameans saw that they were being defeated by Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when the Arameans realized that the Israelites were defeating them" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites

ULT

15 When the Arameans saw that they were being defeated by Israel, they gathered themselves together again.

UST

15 After the leaders of the army of Aram saw that the Israelite army had defeated them, they gathered all their troops together.

2 Samuel 10:16

Hadarezer...Shobak

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

from beyond the Euphrates River

This means the east side of the Euphrates River.

They came to Helam

Here "came to" can be translated as "went to" or "gathered at" (See: Go and Come)

Helam

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

2 Samuel 10:17

When David was told this

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When David heard about this" (See: Active or Passive)

gathered all Israel together

Here "Israel" represents the army of Israel. Alternate translation: "assembled all the army of Israel together" (See: Metonymy)

Helam

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 10:16.

against David and fought him

Here David represents himself and his soldiers. Alternate translation: "against David and his soldiers and fought them" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Jordan River, Jordan
- David
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Jordan River, Jordan
- David
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

ULT

17 When David was told this, he gathered all Israel together, crossed the Jordan, and arrived at Helam. The Arameans arranged themselves in battle lines against David and fought him.

UST

17 When David heard about that, he gathered all the Israelite soldiers, and they crossed the Jordan River and marched to Helam. There the army of Aram took their positions, and the battle started.

2 Samuel 10:18

David killed

Here "David" is a synecdoche for himself and his soldiers. Alternate translation: "David and his soldiers killed" (See: Synecdoche)

seven hundred...forty thousand

"700...40,000" (See: Numbers)

Shobak the commander of their army was wounded and died there

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Israelites wounded Shobak the commander of the Aramean army, and he died there" (See: Active or Passive)

Shobak

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 10:16.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- David
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- David
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

18 The Arameans fled from Israel, and David killed seven hundred of their men in chariots and forty thousand horsemen. Shobak the commander of their army was wounded and died there.

UST

18 But the Aramites ran away from the Israelite soldiers. David and his army killed seven hundred of their chariot soldiers and forty thousand other soldiers. They also wounded Shobak, their commander, and he died there.

2 Samuel 10:19

Hadarezer

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 10:16.

saw that they were defeated by Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "realized that the Israelites had defeated them" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

19 When all the kings who were servants of Hadarezer saw that they were defeated by Israel, they made peace with Israel and became their subjects. So the Arameans were afraid to help the people of Ammon anymore.

UST

19 When all the kings whom Hadadezer ruled realized that Israel had defeated them, they made peace with the Israelites and agreed to accept David as their king. So the Arameans were unwilling to help the Ammonites any longer, because they were afraid of Israel.

2 Samuel 11

2 Samuel 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a new section of David's life. God punished David by allowing his family to have many problems.

Special concepts in this chapter

David's adultery and the murder of Uriah

The army of Israel defeated the army of Ammon and then they besieged Ammon's capital while David stayed in Jerusalem. One day, David saw a beautiful woman, named Bathsheba, bathing. He committed adultery with her. When she became pregnant, David tried to cover up his sin. When this did not work, he had her husband killed in battle. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

2 Samuel 11:1

It came about in the springtime

"It happened in the springtime." This introduces a new event in the story line. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

at the time

"at the time of year"

David sent out Joab, his servants, and all the army of Israel

David sent them out to war. This can be stated clearly. Also, the word "his" refers to David. Alternate translation: "David sent Joab, his servants, and all the army of Israel to war" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the army of Ammon

"the Ammonite army"

Rabbah

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

1 It came about in the springtime, at the time when kings normally go to war, that David sent out Joab, his servants, and all the army of Israel. They destroyed the army of Ammon and besieged Rabbah. But David stayed in Jerusalem.

UST

1 In that region, kings usually went with their armies to fight their enemies in the springtime. But the following year, in the springtime, David did not do that. Instead, he stayed in Jerusalem, and he sent his commander Joab to lead the army. So Joab went with the other officers and the rest of the Israelite army. They crossed the Jordan River and defeated the army of the Ammon people group. Then they surrounded their capital city, Rabbah.

2 Samuel 11:2

So it came about

"So it happened" or "So it came to pass." The author uses this phrase to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

a woman who was bathing

The woman was not on the roof, she would have been bathing outside in the courtyard of her house. Alternate translation: "a woman who was bathing in the courtyard of her house" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT

2 So it came about one evening that David got up from his bed and walked on the roof of his palace. From there he happened to see a woman who was bathing, and the woman was very beautiful to look at.

UST

2 Late one afternoon, after David woke up from a short sleep, he walked around the flat roof of his palace. He saw a woman who was bathing in the courtyard of her house. The woman was very beautiful.

2 Samuel 11:3

So David sent

Here the word "sent" means that David sent a messenger. Alternate translation: "So David sent a messenger" (See: Idiom)

he asked people who would know about the woman

David was trying to find out who the woman was. The word "he" refers to David, but is a metonym for the messenger that David sent. The messenger was to ask the people for information about her. Alternate translation: "the messenger asked the people who knew her about who she was" (See: Metonymy and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Is not this Bathsheba...and is she not the wife of Uriah the Hittite?

This question gives information and can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is Bathsheba...and she is the wife of Uriah the Hittite." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- Hittite
- David

Translation Words - UST

- Hittite
- David

ULT

3 So David sent and he asked people who would know about the woman. Someone said, "Is not this Bathsheba, the daughter of Eliam, and is she not the wife of Uriah the Hittite?"

UST

3 David sent a messenger to find out who she was. The messenger returned and said, "She is Bathsheba. She is the daughter of Eliam, and her husband is Uriah, from the Heth people group."

2 Samuel 11:4

took her

David actually sent messengers, and they took her and brought her to him. Alternate translation: "they brought her to him" (See: Metonymy)

she came in to him

She came into his palace and into his bedroom. Alternate translation: "she came into the place where he was" (See: Metonymy)

he lay with her

This is a polite way of saying that he had sexual relations with her. You may need to use a different euphemism in your language. (See: Euphemism)

menstruation

the time when a woman bleeds from her womb

ULT
4 David sent messengers and took her; she came in to him, and he lay with her (for she had just purified herself from menstruation). Then she returned to her house.

UST
4 Then David sent more messengers to get her. They brought her to David, and he slept with her. (She had just finished performing the rituals to make herself pure after her menstrual period.) Then Bathsheba went back home.

Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- David
- messenger
- return
- house

Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- David
- messenger
- return
- house

2 Samuel 11:5

she sent and told David; she said, "I am pregnant."

Here the word "sent" means that she sent a messenger to tell David that she was pregnant. Alternate translation: "she sent a messenger to David, and the messenger told David that she was pregnant" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer

ULT

[5] The woman conceived, and she sent and told David; she said, "I am pregnant."

UST

[5] After some time, she realized that she was pregnant. So she sent a messenger to tell David this news.

2 Samuel 11:6

Then David sent

Here the word "sent" means that David sent a messenger. Alternate translation: "Then David sent a messenger" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Hittite
- David
- David

Translation Words - UST

- Hittite
- David
- David

2 Samuel 11:7

how Joab was, how the army was doing, and how the war was going

David was asking if Joab and the army were well and about the progress of the war. Alternate translation: "if Joab was well, if other soldiers were well, and how the war was progressing" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- David
- people, people group,

ULT

7 When Uriah arrived, David asked him how Joab was, how the army was doing, and how the war was going.

UST

7 When he arrived, David asked if Joab was well, if other soldiers were well, and how the war was progressing.

2 Samuel 11:8

Go down to your house

Possible meanings for the phrase "go down" are 1) Uriah's house was located at a lower elevation than the king's palace or 2) Uriah's house was of lesser importance than the king's palace. Alternate translation: "Go to your house" (See: Idiom)

wash your feet

This phrase is a metonym for returning home to rest for the night after working all day. Alternate translation: "rest for the night" (See: Metonymy)

the king sent a gift for Uriah

David sent someone to bring the gift to Uriah. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "the king sent someone to take a gift to Uriah" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- clean, wash
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- clean, wash
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house

2 Samuel 11:9

his master

The word "his" refers to Uriah and the word "master" refers to David.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house

ULT
9 But Uriah slept at the door of the king's palace with all the servants of his master, and he did not go down to his house.

UST
9 But Uriah did not go home. Instead, he slept at the palace entrance with the palace guards.

2 Samuel 11:10

Have you not come from a journey? Why did you not go down to your house?

This rhetorical question is used to show David's surprise that Uriah did not visit his wife. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "After coming from such a long journey, you should have gone down to your house." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- David
- house
- house

ULT

10 When they told David, "Uriah did not go down to his house," David said to Uriah, "Have you not come from a journey? Why did you not go down to your house?"

UST

10 When someone told David that Uriah did not go to his house that night, David summoned him again and said to him, "Why did you not go home to be with your wife last night, after having been away for a long time?"

2 Samuel 11:11

Israel and Judah

This refers to their armies. Alternate translation: "the armies of Israel and Judah" (See: Synecdoche)

How then can I go into my house...with my wife?

This rhetorical question is used to emphasize Uriah's refusal to visit his wife and can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "It would be wrong for me to go into my house...with my wife while the other soldiers in my army are in danger." (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

to lie with my wife

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "to have sexual relations with my wife" (See: Euphemism)

As sure as you are alive, I will not do this

Uriah swears a strong promise that he will not go home to his wife as long as the rest of the soldiers are at war. He makes this promise by comparing the truth of his promise to the certainty that the king was alive. Alternate translation: "I solemnly promise that I will not do this" (See: Simile)

> **ULT**
>
> **11** Uriah answered David, "The ark, and Israel and Judah are staying in tents, and my master Joab and my master's servants are camped in an open field. How then can I go into my house to eat and to drink and to lie with my wife? As sure as you are alive, I will not do this."
>
> **UST**
>
> **11** Uriah replied, "The soldiers of Judah and Israel are camping in the open fields, and even our commander Joab is sleeping in a tent, and the sacred chest is with them. I could not possibly go home, eat and drink, and sleep with my wife. I solemnly declare that I will never do such a thing!"

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Judah
- David
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Judah
- David
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

2 Samuel 11:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- David
- Jerusalem

ULT

12 So David said to Uriah, "Stay here today also, and tomorrow I will let you leave." So Uriah stayed in Jerusalem that day and the next day.

UST

12 Then David said to Uriah, "Stay here today. I will let you return to the battle tomorrow." So Uriah stayed in Jerusalem that day and that night.

2 Samuel 11:13

he ate and drank before him

"Uriah ate and drank with David"

down to his house

Possible meanings of the word "down" are 1) Uriah's house was located at a lower elevation than the king's palace or 2) Uriah's house was of lesser importance than the king's palace. See how you translated the similar phrase "down to your house" in 2 Samuel 11:8. Alternate translation: "to his house" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- David
- devour
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- David
- devour
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

ULT

13 When David called him, he ate and drank before him, and David made him drunk. At evening Uriah went out to sleep on his bed with the servants of his master; he did not go down to his house.

UST

13 The next day, David invited him to a meal. So Uriah had a meal with David, and David made him drink a lot of wine so that he would get drunk, hoping that if he was drunk, he would sleep with his wife. But that night, Uriah again did not go home. Instead, he slept on a cot with the king's servants.

2 Samuel 11:14

sent it by the hand of Uriah

The phrase "the hand of Uriah" refers to Uriah himself. Alternate translation: "sent Uriah himself to deliver it to him" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- David
- hand

ULT

14 So in the morning David wrote a letter to Joab, and sent it by the hand of Uriah.

UST

14 Someone reported that to David, so the next morning he wrote a letter to Joab, and gave it to Uriah to take to Joab.

2 Samuel 11:15

very front of the most intense battle

"very front of the battle line where the fighting is the worst"

withdraw from him

"command the soldiers to back away from him"

he may be hit and killed

"he may be wounded and killed"

Translation Words - ULT

- might, mighty, mighty works
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- face, facial
- return

Translation Words - UST

- might, mighty, mighty works
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- face, facial
- return

ULT

15 David wrote in the letter saying, "Set Uriah at the very front of the most intense battle, and then withdraw from him, that he may be hit and killed."

UST

15 In the letter, he wrote, "Put Uriah in the front line, where the fighting is the worst. Then command the soldiers to pull back from him, in order that our enemies will kill him."

2 Samuel 11:16

the siege upon the city

The word "siege" can be expressed with the verbs "surround" and "attack." Alternate translation: "his army surround and attack the city" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

16 So as Joab watched the siege upon the city, he assigned Uriah to the place where he knew the strongest enemy soldiers would be fighting.

UST

16 So after Joab got the letter, as his army was surrounding the city, he sent Uriah to a place where he knew that their enemies' strongest and best soldiers would be fighting.

2 Samuel 11:17

some of the soldiers of David fell

The word "fell" is a polite way to refer to the soldiers being killed. Alternate translation: "David's soldiers were killed" or "they killed some of David's soldiers" (See: Euphemism)

and Uriah the Hittite was also killed there

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "including Uriah the Hittite" or "and the men of the city also killed Uriah the Hittite" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Hittite
- David
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Hittite
- David
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

17 When the men of the city went out and fought against Joab's army, some of the soldiers of David fell, and Uriah the Hittite was also killed there.

UST

17 The men from the city came out and fought with Joab's soldiers. They killed some of David's officers, including Uriah.

2 Samuel 11:18

Joab sent word to David

The phrase "sent word" means that he sent a messenger to give a report. Alternate translation: "Joab sent a messenger to David to give a report" (See: Metonymy)

ULT

18 When Joab sent word to David about everything concerning the war,

UST

18 Then Joab sent a messenger to David to tell him about the fighting.

2 Samuel 11:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

19 he commanded the messenger, saying, "When you have finished telling all the things concerning the war to the king,

UST

19 He said to the messenger, "Tell David the news about the battle. After you finish telling that to him,

2 Samuel 11:20

Why did you go so near...from the wall?

Joab says that David may rebuke him by asking these rhetorical questions. These questions may be written as statements. Alternate translation: "You should not have gone so near to the city to fight. You should have known that they would shoot from the wall." (See: Rhetorical Question)

shoot from the wall

This refers to men of the city shooting arrows down at their enemy from the top of the city wall. Alternate translation: "shoot arrows at you from the top of the city wall" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- wrath, fury
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- wrath, fury
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

20 it may happen that the king will become angry, and he will say to you, 'Why did you go so near to the city to fight? Did you not know that they would shoot from the wall?

UST

20 if David is angry because so many officers were killed, he may ask you, 'Why did your soldiers go so close to the city to fight? Did you not know that they would shoot arrows at you from the top of the city wall?

2 Samuel 11:21

Who killed Abimelech son of Jerub-Besheth?

Joab says that David may rebuke him by asking these rhetorical questions. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Remember how Abimelech son of Jerub-Besheth was killed!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Abimelech son of Jerub-Besheth

This is the name of a man. His father is also know by the name Gideon. (See: How to Translate Names)

Did not a woman cast an upper millstone on him from the wall, so that he died at Thebez?

Joab says that David may rebuke him by asking these rhetorical questions. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Remember he died at Thebez when a woman cast an upper millstone on him from the top of the wall." (See: Rhetorical Question)

millstone

a heavy stone that would roll, used to crush grain for making bread

from the wall

"from the top of the city wall"

Thebez

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Why did you go so near the wall?

Joab says that David may rebuke him by asking these rhetorical questions. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not have gone so near the wall!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Hittite
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Hittite
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

21 Who killed Abimelech son of Jerub-Besheth? Did not a woman cast an upper millstone on him from the wall, so that he died at Thebez? Why did you go so near the wall?' Then you must answer, 'Your servant Uriah the Hittite is dead also.'"

UST

21 Do you not remember how Abimelech son of Gideon was killed? A woman who lived in Thebez threw a huge millstone on him from the top of a tower, and he died. So why did our troops go near to the city wall?' If the king asks this, then tell him, 'Your officer Uriah also was killed.'"

2 Samuel 11:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

22 So the messenger left and went to David and told him everything that Joab had sent him to say.

UST

22 So the messenger went and told David everything that Joab told him to say.

2 Samuel 11:23

the gate

"the city gate"

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- David
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- David
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT

23 Then the messenger said to David, "The enemy were stronger than we were at first; they came out to us into the field, but we drove them back to the entrance of the gate.

UST

23 The messenger said to David, "Our enemies were very brave, and came out of the city to fight us in the fields. They were driving us back at first, but then we forced them back to the city gate.

2 Samuel 11:24

their shooters shot

"their shooters shot arrows"

some of the king's servants were killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they killed some of the king's servants" (See: Active or Passive)

king's servants

Here "servants" refers to soldiers, not slaves, because soldiers were servants of the king.

> **ULT**
>
> **24** Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed too."
>
> **UST**
>
> **24** Then their archers shot arrows at us from the top of the city wall. They killed some of your officers. They killed your officer Uriah, too."

your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they killed your servant Uriah the Hittite" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Hittite
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Hittite
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

2 Samuel 11:25

for the sword devours one as well as another

Here "the sword" refers to a person who kills someone with sword. Also, killing someone with a sword is spoken of as if the sword were "eating" the people. Alternate translation: "for one man can be killed by a sword the same as another man" or "for any man can die in battle" (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

Make your battle even stronger

"Fight even stronger"

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- devour
- afflict, affliction, distress
- strength, strengthen, strong

Translation Words - UST

- David
- devour
- afflict, affliction, distress
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

25 Then David said to the messenger, "Say this to Joab, 'Do not let this displease you, for the sword devours one as well as another. Make your battle even stronger against the city, and overthrow it,' and encourage him."

UST

25 David said to the messenger, "Go back to Joab and say to him, 'Do not worry about what happened, because no one ever knows who will die in battle.' Tell him that the next time, his troops should attack the city more strongly and capture it. Encourage Joab in this way."

2 Samuel 11:26

she lamented deeply

Here the author speaks of her lamenting very much as if it were deep inside her. Alternate translation: "she lamented very much" or "she lamented greatly" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- bind, bond, bound

Translation Words - UST

- bind, bond, bound

ULT

26 So when the wife of Uriah heard that Uriah her husband was dead, she lamented deeply for her husband.

UST

26 When Uriah's wife Bathsheba heard that her husband had died, she mourned for him.

2 Samuel 11:27

sorrow

a deep feeling of sadness caused by suffering, disappointment or misfortune

David sent and took her home

Here the word "sent" means that he sent a messenger to get her and bring her to him. Alternate translation: "David sent a messenger to her to bring her home" (See: Idiom and Metonymy)

displeased Yahweh

"saddened Yahweh" or "angered Yahweh"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- house

ULT

27 When her sorrow passed, David sent and took her home to his palace, and she became his wife and bore him a son. But what David had done displeased Yahweh.

UST

27 When her time of mourning was over, David sent messengers to bring her to the palace. In this way she became David's wife. She later gave birth to a son. But Yahweh was very displeased with what David had done.

2 Samuel 12

2 Samuel 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the final expansion of David's kingdom and records the end of the war with Ammon.

Special concepts in this chapter

David's punishment

God sent a prophet to confront David. He said that because David had Uriah killed, there would always be killing in his family and that the baby conceived with Bathsheba would die. David prayed that the baby be allowed to live, but the infant died. Bathsheba then had another son, who was named Solomon. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

2 Samuel 12:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- David

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- David

ULT

1 Then Yahweh sent Nathan to David. He came to him and said, "There were once two men in a city. One man was rich and the other poor.

UST

1 Yahweh told the prophet Nathan what David had done, and he sent Nathan to tell this story to David, "Once there were two men in a certain city. One man was rich and the other was poor.

2 Samuel 12:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• flock, herd

Translation Words - UST

• flock, herd

ULT

2 The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds,

UST

2 The rich man owned a lot of cattle and sheep.

2 Samuel 12:3

ewe lamb

a female lamb

was like a daughter to him

This refers to the closeness of this man and his little lamb. Alternate translation: "he loved it as much as if it were one of his daughters" (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- devour

ULT

3 but the poor man had nothing except one little ewe lamb, which he had bought and fed and raised. It grew up together with him and with his children. The lamb even ate with him and drank from his own cup, and it slept in his arms and was like a daughter to him.

UST

3 But the poor man had only one little female lamb, which he had bought. He raised the lamb, and it grew up with his own children. He would give the lamb some of his own food and let it drink from his cup. He let the lamb sleep as he held it next to himself. The lamb was like a daughter to him.

2 Samuel 12:4

ewe lamb

a young, female sheep

for his visitor

It was for his visitor to eat. Alternate translation: "for his visitor to eat" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

4 One day a visitor came to the rich man, but the rich man was unwilling to take an animal from his own flocks and herds to provide food for him. Instead he took the poor man's ewe lamb and cooked it for his visitor."

UST

4 One day a visitor came to see the rich man. The rich man did not want to take one of his own animals and kill it to prepare a meal for his guest. So instead, he sent men to take the poor man's lamb; then he had someone kill it and prepare a meal with it for his guest."

2 Samuel 12:5

David was hot with anger against

Here the author describes how David was very angry as if his body were physically hot because of his anger. Alternate translation: "David became furious with" or "David became very angry with" (See: Metaphor)

he raged to Nathan

This means that David spoke angrily to Nathan.

As Yahweh lives

This expresses that David was swearing an oath or serious promise. Alternate translation: "I declare, as surely as Yahweh lives" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

to be put to death

This means to be killed. Also, that can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to be killed" or "to die" (See: Idiom and Active or Passive)

ULT

5 David was hot with anger against the rich man, and he raged to Nathan, "As Yahweh lives, the man who has done this deserves to be put to death.

UST

5 When David heard that, he was very angry. He said to Nathan, "I solemnly declare that the man who did that should be executed!

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Yahweh
- David

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Yahweh
- David

2 Samuel 12:6

He must pay back the lamb four times over

The amount the rich man was required to pay back to the poor man was to be four times what the little lamb cost. "He must pay the poor man four times the price of the lamb" (See: Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

pity

to feel sadness and love for someone who is suffering or hurt or not loved

2 Samuel 12:7

out of the hand of Saul

Here the word "hand" refers to control. Alternate translation: "out of Saul's control" or "from Saul's control" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- David
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- David
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

7 Then Nathan said to David, "You are that man! Yahweh, the God of Israel, says, 'I anointed you king over Israel, and I rescued you out of the hand of Saul.

UST

7 Nathan said to David, "You are the man I have been talking about! And this is what Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, says to you: 'I rescued you from Saul, and I made you king of Israel.

2 Samuel 12:8

your master's wives into your arms

Here Yahweh describes David having his master's wives as his own wives, by saying that they are "in his arms." Alternate translation: "your master's wives as your own" (See: Metaphor)

I also gave you the house of Israel and Judah

Here Yahweh speaks of how he gave David his authority as king over Israel and Judah as if he gave him the houses of Israel and Judah as a gift. The phrase "the house of" means "the people of." Alternate translation: "I also gave you authority as king over the people of Israel and Judah" (See: Metaphor)

if that had been too little

"if I had not given you enough"

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- Judah
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- Judah
- house
- house

ULT

8 I gave you your master's house, and your master's wives into your arms. I also gave you the house of Israel and Judah. But if that had been too little, I would have given you many other things in addition.

UST

8 I gave you his palace; I let you hold his wives next to you. I made you king over Israel and Judah. If you had told me that you were not content with what I gave you, I would have given you much more!

2 Samuel 12:9

So why have you despised...Yahweh, so as to do what is evil in his sight?

This rhetorical question is used to rebuke David. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not have despised...Yahweh and should not have done what is evil in his sight!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

what is evil in his sight

Here "sight" refers to Yahweh's thoughts or opinion. Alternate translation: "what he considers to be evil" or "what is evil in Yahweh's judgement" (See: Metaphor)

You have struck down Uriah the Hittite with the sword

David did not kill Uriah himself, rather he arranged for him to be killed in battle. The phrase "with the sword" represents how Uriah died in battle. Alternate translation: "You have arranged for Uriah the Hittite to die in battle" (See: Metonymy)

ULT

9 So why have you despised the commands of Yahweh, so as to do what is evil in his sight? You have struck down Uriah the Hittite with the sword and have taken his wife to be your own wife. You killed him with the sword of the army of Ammon.

UST

9 So why have you rejected what I have commanded, when I said that my people must not commit adultery? You have done what I consider to be very evil! You have arranged for Uriah to die in battle with the Ammonites, and you have taken his wife to be your wife!

You killed him with the sword of the army of Ammon

David did not kill Uriah himself, rather he arranged for him to be killed in battle when Israel was fighting against Ammon. The phrase "with the sword" refers to how he died in battle. Alternate translation: "You arranged for him to die in battle against the army of Ammon" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Hittite
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Hittite
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen

2 Samuel 12:10

the sword will never leave your house

Here the word "sword" refers to people dying in war. Also, David's "house" refers to his descendants. Alternate translation: "some of your descendants will always die in battle" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Hittite
- sword, swordsmen
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Hittite
- sword, swordsmen
- house

ULT

10 So now the sword will never leave your house, because you have despised me and have taken the wife of Uriah the Hittite as your wife.'

UST

10 You have rejected me, because you took Uriah's wife to be your wife. So some of your descendants will always die in battle.

2 Samuel 12:11

out of your own house

Here David's "house" refers to his family. Alternate translation: "from among your own family" (See: Metonymy)

Before your own eyes

Here David is referred to by his eyes to emphasize what he would see. Alternate translation: "While you are watching" (See: Synecdoche)

he will lie with your wives

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "he will have sexual relations with your wives" (See: Euphemism)

in broad daylight

"in full daylight." The idea of doing something "openly" or in a way that people are fully aware of what is happening is often spoken about as being done in the "daylight." Alternate translation: "openly" or "and everyone will see what is happening" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

11 Yahweh says, 'Look, I will raise up disaster against you out of your own house. Before your own eyes, I will take your wives and give them to your neighbor, and he will lie with your wives in broad daylight.

UST

11 I solemnly declare to you that I will cause someone from your own family to bring disaster to you. I will take your wives and give them to that person, and he will sleep with them in the daytime, where everyone can see it, and you will know all about it.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- house

2 Samuel 12:12

committed your sin

"sinned"

before all Israel

This phrase speaks of the people of Israel knowing about what has happened to his wives as if they all actually witnessed it happening. Alternate translation: "before all the people of Israel" or "and all the people of Israel will know about it" (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites

ULT

12 For you committed your sin secretly, but I will do this thing before all Israel, in the sunlight.'"

UST

12 What you did, you did secretly, but what I cause to happen, everyone in Israel will be able to see it or know about it.'"

2 Samuel 12:13

passed over

Yahweh has forgiven David of his sin. This is spoken of here as Yahweh passing over his sin as if it were something that he walked by and disregarded. Alternate translation: "forgiven" (See: Metaphor)

You will not be killed

This can be stated in active form. Sometimes men died because of their sins, but he will not die because of his sin with the woman. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "You will not die" or "you will not die because of this sin" (See: Active or Passive and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- David

Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- David

ULT

13 Then David said to Nathan, "I have sinned against Yahweh." Nathan replied to David, "Yahweh also has passed over your sin. You will not be killed.

UST

13 David replied, "I have sinned against Yahweh." Nathan said to David, "Yahweh has overlooked your sin. You will not die because of this sin.

2 Samuel 12:14

despised

to strongly dislike or hate someone or something

the child who is born to you

The phrase "born to you" means that it is David's baby. Alternate translation: "your child who will be born" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- adversary, enemy

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- adversary, enemy

2 Samuel 12:15

Yahweh attacked the child that…and he was very sick

Here the author speaks of Yahweh causing the baby to become sick as Yahweh attacking the child. Alternate translation: "Yahweh afflicted the child that…and he was very sick" or "Yahweh caused the baby that…to become very sick" (See: Metaphor)

the child that Uriah's wife bore to David

This means that she gave birth to a child and that David was his father. Alternate translation: "David's child, who Uriah's wife gave birth to" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- children, child, offspring
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- children, child, offspring
- house

ULT

15 Then Nathan left and went home. Yahweh attacked the child that Uriah's wife bore to David, and he was very sick.

UST

15 Then Nathan went home. Then Yahweh caused the baby, the one that Uriah's wife had given birth to, to become very sick.

2 Samuel 12:16

implored

to beg or pray with strong desire

went inside

David went into his room when he was alone. Alternate translation: "went inside his room" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- David
- David
- seek, search, look for
- earth, earthen, earthly
- fast, fasting
- fast, fasting
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- God
- David
- David
- seek, search, look for
- earth, earthen, earthly
- fast, fasting
- fast, fasting
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

16 David then implored God for the boy. David fasted and went inside and lay all night on the floor.

UST

16 So David prayed to God that the child would not die. He fasted, and he went into his room and lay all night on the floor.

2 Samuel 12:17

to raise him up from the floor

"and urged him to get up from the floor"

Translation Words - ULT

- bread
- confirm, confirmation, legal
- elder, older, old
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

Translation Words - UST

- bread
- confirm, confirmation, legal
- elder, older, old
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

ULT
17 The elders of his house arose and stood beside him, to raise him up from the floor, but he would not get up, and he would not eat with them.

UST
17 The next morning his most important servants stood around him and tried to urge him to get up. But he would not get up, and he would not eat with them.

2 Samuel 12:18

It came about

"It happened"

he did not listen to our voice

The servants are referred to here by their voices to emphasize that they were speaking. Alternate translation: "he did not listen to us" (See: Synecdoche)

the seventh day

"day 7." This refers to the seventh day after the baby was born. Alternate translation: "the seventh day after he was born" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Numbers)

Look

This is used to get people's attention. Alternate translation: "Listen"

What might he do to himself if we tell him that the boy is dead?!

The servants ask this rhetorical question to express their fear. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "We are afraid that he may harm himself if we tell him that the boy is dead!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

> **ULT**
>
> **18** It came about on the seventh day that the child died. David's servants were afraid to tell him that the child was dead, for they said, "Look, while the child was still alive we spoke to him, and he did not listen to our voice. What might he do to himself if we tell him that the boy is dead?!"
>
> **UST**
>
> **18** One week later the baby died. David's servants were afraid to tell that to David. They said to each other, "While the baby was still alive, we talked to him, but he would not answer us. Now, if we tell him that the baby is dead, he may do something to harm himself!"

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- fear, afraid, dread
- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- David
- voice
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- fear, afraid, dread
- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- David
- voice

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

2 Samuel 12:19

were whispering together

"were speaking very quietly to each other"

David perceived

"David understood"

Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- David
- David
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- David
- David
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

19 But when David saw that his servants were whispering together, David perceived that the child was dead. He said to his servants, "Is the child dead?" They answered, "He is dead."

UST

19 But when David saw that his servants were whispering something to each other, he realized that the baby must be dead. So he asked them, "Is the baby dead?" They replied, "Yes, he is dead."

2 Samuel 12:20

David arose

"David got up"

Translation Words - ULT

- clean, wash
- anoint, anointed, anointing
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- David
- bread
- devour
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- clean, wash
- anoint, anointed, anointing
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- David
- bread
- devour
- house
- house

ULT

20 Then David arose from the floor and washed himself, anointed himself, and changed his clothes. He went to the tabernacle of Yahweh and worshiped there, and then he came back to his own palace. When he asked for it, they set food before him, and he ate.

UST

20 Then David got up from the floor. He bathed himself, put lotions on his body, and put on other clothes. Then he went into Yahweh's sacred tent and worshiped him. Then he went home. He requested his servants bring some food. They gave him some, and he ate it.

2 Samuel 12:21

General Information:

These verses contain rhetorical questions that emphasize that David realizes that Yahweh has allowed this to happen.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- bread
- devour
- fast, fasting
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- bread
- devour
- fast, fasting
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

21 Then his servants said to him, "Why have you done this? You fasted and wept for the child while he was alive, but when the child died, you got up and ate."

UST

21 Then his servants said to him, "We do not understand why you have done this! While the baby was still alive, you cried for him and refused to eat anything. But now that the baby has died, you are not crying anymore. You got up and ate some food!"

2 Samuel 12:22

Who knows whether or not Yahweh will be gracious to me, that the child may live?

David asked this rhetorical question to empathize that no one knew if Yahweh would let the child live. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one knows whether or not Yahweh will be gracious to me so that the child may live." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- fast, fasting
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- fast, fasting
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

22 David answered, "While the child was still alive I fasted and wept. I said, 'Who knows whether or not Yahweh will be gracious to me, that the child may live?'

UST

22 He replied, "While the baby was still alive I fasted and cried. I thought, 'Perhaps Yahweh will act mercifully toward me and not allow the baby to die.'

2 Samuel 12:23

But now he is dead, so why should I fast?

David asks this rhetorical question to empathize that he no longer has a reason to fast. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Now that he is dead it would be of no use to fast any longer." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Can I bring him back again?

David asks this rhetorical question to empathize that the boy cannot come back to life. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I cannot bring him back to life." (See: Rhetorical Question)

I will go to him

David implies that he will go to where his child is when he dies. Alternate translation: "When I die I will go to where he is" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

23 But now he is dead, so why should I fast? Can I bring him back again? I will go to him, but he will not return to me."

UST

23 But now the baby is dead. So there is no reason for me to fast anymore. I cannot bring him back to myself. Some day I will go to where he is, but he will not return to me."

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- restore, restoration
- walk, walked
- fast, fasting

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- restore, restoration
- walk, walked
- fast, fasting

2 Samuel 12:24

went in to her and lay with her

Both the phrase "went in to her" and the phrase "lay with her" refer to David having sexual relations with Bathsheba and emphasize what they did. Alternate translation: "had sexual relations with her" (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

- love, beloved
- son
- Yahweh
- name
- David
- Solomon
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- love, beloved
- son
- Yahweh
- name
- David
- Solomon
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

24 David comforted Bathsheba his wife, and went in to her and lay with her. Later she gave birth to a son, and the child was named Solomon. Yahweh loved him

UST

24 Then David comforted his wife, Bathsheba. Then he slept with her, and she became pregnant again and gave birth to another son. David named that boy Solomon. Yahweh loved this little boy.

2 Samuel 12:25

he sent word through Nathan the prophet

Here "word" refers to a message that Yahweh told Nathan to tell David. Alternate translation: "he sent Nathan to tell him" (See: Metonymy)

Jedidiah

This is another name for David's son Solomon, which Yahweh chose for him. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- name
- hand
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- name
- hand
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

25 and he sent word through Nathan the prophet to name him Jedidiah, because Yahweh loved him.

UST

25 He told the prophet Nathan to tell David to name the baby boy Jedidiah, because Yahweh loved him.

2 Samuel 12:26

Joab fought...he captured

Here the author says "Joab" but he is referring to Joab and his soldiers who fought with him. Alternate translation: "Joab and his soldiers fought...they captured" (See: Synecdoche)

Rabbah

Fighting against this city literally means to fight against the people of Rabbah. Translate the name the same as you did in 2 Samuel 11:1. Alternate translation: "the people of Rabbah" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

26 Now Joab fought against Rabbah of the Ammonites, and he captured the royal city.

UST

26 Meanwhile, Joab's soldiers attacked Rabbah, the capital city of the Ammon people group. They captured the king's fortress, which protected the water supply.

2 Samuel 12:27

So Joab sent messengers to David and said

"So Joab sent messengers to David to say to him"

have taken the city's water supply

"Taking" a place or landmark means to take control of it. Alternate translation: "have taken control of the city's water supply" (See: Metaphor)

I have fought...I have taken

Here Joab speaks of himself when he is actually referring to himself and his soldiers. Alternate translation: "My soldiers and I have fought...my soldier and I have taken" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- messenger

Translation Words - UST

- David
- messenger

ULT

27 So Joab sent messengers to David and said, "I have fought against Rabbah, and I have taken the city's water supply.

UST

27 Then Joab sent messengers to David to tell him this, "My troops are attacking Rabbah, and we have captured the city's water supply.

---

2 Samuel 12:28

if I take

Here Joab speaks of himself when he is actually referring to himself and his soldiers. Alternate translation: "if my soldiers and I take" (See: Synecdoche)

camp against

This means to surround and attack. Alternate translation: "besiege" or "surround" (See: Idiom)

take it...take the city

"Taking" a place or landmark means to take control of it. Alternate translation: "take control of it...take control of the city" (See: Metaphor)

it will be named

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people will name it" (See: Active or Passive)

ULT

28 Now therefore gather the rest of the army together and camp against the city and take it, because if I take the city, it will be named after me."

UST

28 Now gather your troops and come and surround the city and capture it. If you do not do that, my troops will capture the city and it will then be named for me instead: The City of Joab."

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- people, people group,
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- name
- people, people group,
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- declare, proclaim, announce

2 Samuel 12:29

he fought

Here the author speaks of David when he is actually referring to David and his soldiers. Alternate translation: "David and his soldiers fought" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- David
- people, people group,

2 Samuel 12:30

a talent

This may be written in modern weights. Alternate translation: "about 33 kilograms" (See: Biblical Weight)

a precious stone

a rare gemstone such as a diamond, ruby, sapphire, emerald, or opal

The crown was placed on David's own head

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They placed the crown on David's own head" (See: Active or Passive)

he brought out

Here the author speaks of David when he is actually referring to David's soldiers. Alternate translation: "they brought out" (See: Metonymy)

plunder

valuable things taken from a defeated enemy

large quantities

"large amounts"

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- head
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- David
- head
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

30 David took the crown from their king's head—it weighed a talent of gold, and there was a precious stone in it. The crown was placed on David's own head. Then he brought out the plunder of the city in large quantities.

UST

30 Then David took the crown from the head of their king and put it on his own head. It was very heavy; it weighed about thirty-three kilograms, and it had a very valuable stone in it. His soldiers also took many other valuable things from the city.

2 Samuel 12:31

He brought out the people

David did not bring out the people himself; he commanded his soldiers to bring them out. Alternate translation: "David commanded his soldiers to bring out the people" (See: Metonymy)

saws, iron picks, and axes

These are tools to cut wood or break up the ground.

brick kilns

ovens where bricks are dried and hardened

all the cities of the people of Ammon

This refers to the people in the cities. Alternate translation: "all the people of the cites of Ammon" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- appoint, appointed
- David
- Jerusalem
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- return
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- appoint, appointed
- David
- Jerusalem
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- return
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

31 He brought out the people who were in the city and forced them to work with saws, iron picks, and axes; he also made them work at brick kilns. David required all the cities of the people of Ammon to do this labor. Then David and all the army returned to Jerusalem.

UST

31 Then they brought the people out of the city and forced them to work for them, using saws, iron picks, and axes. David's troops also forced them to make bricks. David's soldiers did this in all the cities of the Ammonites. Then David and all of his army returned to Jerusalem.

2 Samuel 13

2 Samuel 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the story about the difficulties and killings in David's family. David's sin caused these problems in his family. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Special concepts in this chapter

Amnon raped Absalom's sister

Amnon raped Absalom's sister, who was his own half-sister. David did nothing to punish him and David's lack of action caused significant problems in his family and in Israel. This eventually caused Solomon to become king, even though he was not the oldest son.

2 Samuel 13:1

It came about after this

"It happened after this." This phrase is used to introduce a new event to the story line. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

half-sister

Amnon and Tamar shared the same father but not the same mother.

full sister

Absalom and Tamar shared the same father and mother.

Translation Words - ULT

- love, beloved
- son
- son (2)
- Tamar
- David
- David

Translation Words - UST

- love, beloved
- son
- son (2)
- Tamar
- David
- David

ULT

1 It came about after this that Amnon son of David was very attracted to his beautiful half-sister Tamar, who was a full sister of Absalom, another of David's sons.

UST

1 David's son Absalom had a beautiful sister named Tamar. Another of David's sons, Amnon, was attracted to Tamar, with whom he was a half-brother.

2 Samuel 13:2

Amnon was so frustrated that he became sick because of his sister Tamar

Amnon was frustrated because he desired to sleep with his sister Tamar. Alternate translation: "Amnon was so frustrated with desire for his sister Tamar that he felt sick" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Tamar
- oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor
- virgin, virginity

Translation Words - UST

- Tamar
- oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor
- virgin, virginity

ULT

[2] Amnon was so frustrated that he became sick because of his sister Tamar. She was a virgin, and it seemed impossible to Amnon to do anything to her.

UST

[2] He wanted to sleep with Tamar very much, so much that he felt sick with desire. But it seemed impossible for Amnon to get her, because she was a virgin, so they kept men away from her.

2 Samuel 13:3

Jonadab son of Shimeah, David's brother

These are the names of men. Shimeah was David's brother. (See: How to Translate Names)

shrewd

crafty or deceptive

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- David
- wise men, advisor

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- David
- wise men, advisor

ULT

3 But Amnon had a friend whose name was Jonadab son of Shimeah, David's brother. Jonadab was a very shrewd man.

UST

3 But Amnon had a friend named Jonadab, who was a nephew to David, son of David's brother Shimeah. Jehonadab was a very crafty man.

2 Samuel 13:4

depressed

in an emotional state of extreme unhappiness

Will you not tell me?

It is understood that he is asking him about his depression, which can be stated clearly. Also, this rhetorical question is a request for Jehonadab to tell him why he is depressed. It may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Will you not tell me why you are depressed?" or "Please, tell me why you are depressed." (See: Ellipsis and Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- love, beloved
- brother
- son
- Tamar
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- love, beloved
- brother
- son
- Tamar
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

4 Jonadab said to Amnon, "Why, son of the king, are you depressed every morning? Will you not tell me?" So Amnon answered him, "I love Tamar, my brother Absalom's sister."

UST

4 One day Jehonadab said to Amnon, "You are the king's son, but every day I see that you seem very depressed. What is your problem?" Amnon replied, "I am in love with Tamar, my half-brother Absalom's sister."

2 Samuel 13:5

Jonadab

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 13:3.

eat it from her hand

This is probably a request for her to serve food to him personally. He probably did not want her to put the food in his mouth. Alternate translation: "have her serve it to me herself" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Tamar
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- bread
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- Tamar
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- bread
- devour

ULT

5 Then Jonadab said to him, "Lie down on your bed and pretend to be sick. When your father comes to see you, ask him, 'Would you please send my sister Tamar to give me something to eat and cook it before me, so that I may see it and eat it from her hand?'"

UST

5 Jehonadab said to him, "Lie down on your bed and pretend that you are sick. When your father comes to see you, ask him to let your half-sister Tamar come and give you some food to eat. Ask for her to cook the food while you are watching her. Then she can serve it to you herself."

2 Samuel 13:6

I may eat from her hand

This is probably a request for her to serve food to him personally. He probably did not expect her to put the food in his mouth. Alternate translation: "she may serve it to me to eat" (See: Idiom)

pretended to be sick

This means he gave a false appearance of being ill.

for my sickness in front of me

The food is not for his sickness, but rather it is for him, because he is sick. The phrase "in front of me" is a request for Tamar to prepare the food in his presence. Alternate translation: "in front of me because I am sick" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Tamar
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Tamar
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

6 So Amnon lay down and pretended to be sick. When the king came to see him, Amnon said to the king, "Please send my sister Tamar to make some food for my sickness in front of me so that I may eat from her hand."

UST

6 So Amnon lay down and pretended that he was sick. When the king came to see him, Amnon said to him, "I am sick. Please allow Tamar to come and make a couple breadcakes for me while I am watching, and then she can serve them to me."

2 Samuel 13:7

David sent word

This means that he sent a messenger to speak to Tamar. Alternate translation: "David sent a messenger" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Tamar
- David
- walk, walked
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Tamar
- David
- walk, walked
- house
- house

ULT

7 Then David sent word to Tamar at his palace, saying, "Go now to your brother Amnon's house and prepare food for him."

UST

7 So David sent a message to Tamar in the palace saying, "Amnon is sick; he wants you to go to his house and prepare some food for him."

2 Samuel 13:8

dough

a thick mixture of flour and liquid used for baking

kneaded

used her hands to mix the dough

in his sight

This means that Tamar made the bread in front of him. Alternate translation: "in front of him" or "in his presence" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Tamar
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Tamar
- house

ULT

8 So Tamar went to her brother Amnon's house where he was lying down. She took dough and kneaded it and formed bread in his sight, and then she baked it.

UST

8 So Tamar went to Amnon's house, where he was lying in bed. She took some dough and kneaded it, and formed them into some breadcakes while he was watching her. Then she baked them.

2 Samuel 13:9

So everyone went out from him

To "go out from someone" means to leave them. Alternate translation: "So everyone left him" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

9 She took the pan and gave the bread to him, but he refused to eat. Then Amnon said to the others present, "Send everyone out, away from me." So everyone went out from him.

UST

9 She took them out of the pan and put them on a plate in front of him, but he refused to eat them. Then he said to his servants in the room, "All the rest of you, leave me!" So they all left.

2 Samuel 13:10

that I may eat from your hand

This is a request for Tamar to serve the food to him personally.
Alternate translation: "and serve it to me" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Tamar
- Tamar (2)
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Tamar
- Tamar (2)
- hand

ULT

10 So Amnon said to Tamar, "Bring the food into my room that I may eat from your hand." So Tamar took the bread that she had made, and brought it into the room of Amnon her brother.

UST

10 Then Amnon said to Tamar, "Bring the food to my bed and serve it to me." So Tamar took into his room the breadcakes that she had made.

2 Samuel 13:11

lie with me

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "have sexual relations with me" (See: Euphemism)

2 Samuel 13:12

do not force me

She is referring to having sexual relations with him. Alternate translation: "do not force me to have sexual relations with you" (See: Ellipsis)

appalling

very shameful

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Israel, Israelites

2 Samuel 13:13

General Information:

Tamar continues to talk to Amnon.

How could I be rid of my shame?

Tamar asks this rhetorical question to emphasize how much shame she would have if she slept with him. Tamar speaks of getting rid of her shame as if it were an enemy or a tormentor that she needed to escape from. Alternate translation: "If you do this, I would have to endure shame everywhere I go" (See: Rhetorical Question and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

ULT

13 How could I be rid of my shame? What about you? You would be like one of the fools in Israel! Now, please speak to the king, for he would not keep me from you."

UST

13 I would not be able to endure being disgraced by having done that. And as for you, everyone in Israel would condemn you for having done such a disgraceful deed. So I plead with you, talk to the king. I am sure that he will allow me to marry you."

2 Samuel 13:14

he lay with her

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "he had sexual relations with her" (See: Euphemism)

Translation Words - ULT

- voice

Translation Words - UST

- voice

2 Samuel 13:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- love, beloved
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- love, beloved
- walk, walked

ULT

15 Then Amnon hated Tamar with extreme hatred. He hated her even more than he had desired her. Amnon said to her, "Get up and go."

UST

15 Then Amnon hated her very much. He hated her much more than he had desired her. He said to her, "Get up and get out of here!"

2 Samuel 13:16

Because this great evil of making me leave is even worse

The abstract noun "this great evil" can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "It would be very evil to make me leave! It would be even worse" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant

ULT

16 But she responded to him, "No! Because this great evil of making me leave is even worse than what you did to me!" But Amnon did not listen to her.

UST

16 But she said to him, "No! It would be very wrong for you to send me away. It would be worse than what you just did to me!" But again he paid no attention to her.

2 Samuel 13:17

bolt the door after her

This means to lock the door so that she will not be able to come back in again. Alternate translation: "lock the door so that she cannot come back in" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

17 Instead, he called his personal servant and said, "Take this woman away from me, and bolt the door after her."

UST

17 He summoned his personal servant and said to him, "Take this woman outside, away from me, and lock the door so that she cannot come in again!"

2 Samuel 13:18

bolted the door after her

This means to lock the door so that she will not be able to come back in again. Alternate translation: "locked the door so that she could not go back in" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- king, kingdom, kingship
- virgin, virginity
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- king, kingdom, kingship
- virgin, virginity
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

18 Then his servant brought her out and bolted the door after her. Tamar was wearing a very decorated robe because the king's daughters who were virgins dressed that way.

UST

18 So the servant put her outside and locked the door. Now Tamar was wearing a decorated long robe, which was the clothing that was usually worn by the unmarried daughters of the king at that time.

2 Samuel 13:19

put ashes on her head and tore her robe. She put her hands on her head

These are acts of mourning and grief in the Israelite culture. Alternate translation: "put ashes on her head and tore her robe to show that she was very sad. Then to show her grief, she put her hands on her head" (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Tamar
- hand
- head
- head (2)
- cry, cry out, outcry
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Tamar
- hand
- head
- head (2)
- cry, cry out, outcry
- walk, walked

ULT

19 Tamar put ashes on her head and tore her robe. She put her hands on her head and walked away, crying aloud as she went.

UST

19 But Tamar tore the long robe that she was wearing, and put ashes on her head to show that she was very sad. Then she put her hands on her head to show that she was grieving, and she went away crying.

2 Samuel 13:20

Has Amnon your brother been with you?

This is a polite way to ask is Amnon has had sexual relations with her. Alternate translation: "Has Amnon your brother slept with you?" (See: Euphemism)

keep quiet

This means to not tell anyone about something. Alternate translation: "do not tell anyone about this" (See: Idiom)

Do not take this thing to heart

The phrase "take something to heart" means "to worry about it." Alternate translation: "Do not worry about what has happened" (See: Idiom)

So Tamar remained alone

This means that she did not marry.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- brother
- brother
- heart
- Tamar
- tongue, language
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- brother
- brother
- heart
- Tamar
- tongue, language
- house

ULT

20 Absalom her brother said to her, "Has Amnon your brother been with you? But now keep quiet, my sister. He is your brother. Do not take this thing to heart." So Tamar remained alone in her brother Absalom's house.

UST

20 Her brother Absalom saw her and said to her, "Has your half-brother Amnon forced you to sleep with him? Please, my sister, do not tell anyone, and do not become depressed." So Tamar went to live in Absalom's house, and she was very sad and lonely.

2 Samuel 13:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

21 But when King David heard of all these things, he was very angry.

UST

21 When King David heard about all this, he became very angry.

2 Samuel 13:22

said nothing

"did not speak"

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Tamar

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Tamar

ULT

22 Absalom said nothing to Amnon, for Absalom hated him for what he had done to her and how he had disgraced his sister Tamar.

UST

22 And Absalom hated Amnon, because he had forced his sister to sleep with him, so he would not speak to Amnon about anything.

2 Samuel 13:23

It came about after two full years

This explains that two whole years has passed and introduces the next event in the story line. The phrase "full years" means that they are complete years. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

shearers

These are people who cut the wool from sheep.

Baal Hazor

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- king, kingdom, kingship
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- king, kingdom, kingship
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

23 It came about after two full years that Absalom had sheep shearers working at Baal Hazor, which is near Ephraim, and Absalom invited all the king's sons to visit there.

UST

23 However, two years later, Absalom hired men to shear his sheep at Baal Hazor, which is near the tribal land of Ephraim. They were going to celebrate when they finished shearing the sheep, so Absalom invited all the king's sons to come and celebrate with him.

2 Samuel 13:24

Look now

This is a phrase used to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

your servant

Absalom is calling himself "your servant" to show respect.

has sheep shearers

It was customary for people in Israel to have a party after they had sheared their sheep.

may the king

Although he is talking to his father the king, he calls him "the king" instead of "you" to show respect for him.

ULT

24 Absalom went to the king and said, "Look now, your servant has sheep shearers. Please, may the king and his servants go with me, your servant."

UST

24 Absalom went to the king and said to him, "Sir, my workers have been shearing my sheep. Please come with your officials to celebrate with us!"

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

2 Samuel 13:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- son
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- son
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

ULT

25 The king answered Absalom, "No, my son, all of us should not go because we would be a burden to you." Absalom begged the king, but he would not go, but he gave him his blessing.

UST

25 But the king replied, "No, my son, it would not be good for all of us to go, because we are so many people; we would cost you too much." Absalom continued urging him, but the king would not go. Instead, he said that he hoped that God would bless them while they celebrated.

2 Samuel 13:26

please let my brother Amnon go with us

The oldest son could often represent his father in Israelite culture. Amnon was David's oldest son.

Why should Amnon go with you?

David knew that Amnon was not Absalom's friend.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

ULT

26 Then Absalom said, "If not, please let my brother Amnon go with us." So the king said to him, "Why should Amnon go with you?"

UST

26 Then Absalom said, "If you will not go, please allow my half-brother Amnon to go with us." But the king replied, "Why do you want him to go with you?"

2 Samuel 13:27

Absalom pressed David

Here the author speaks of Absalom urging David to let Amnon come as if he were putting physical pressure on him. Alternate translation: "Absalom begged David for Amnon to come" (See: Metaphor)

all the king's sons

This does not include Absalom and Amnon who is dead. It includes the rest of the sons that the king allowed to go to the celebration. Alternate translation: "the rest of the king's sons" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

27 Absalom pressed David, and so he let Amnon and all the king's sons go with him.

UST

27 But Absalom continued to insist, so finally the king permitted Amnon and all David's other sons to go with Absalom.

2 Samuel 13:28

Do not be afraid

This implies that they do not need to be afraid of the consequences for killing Amnon. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Do not be afraid that you will be blamed for killing the king's son" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Have I not commanded you?

Absalom asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that he will be blamed for killing Amnon because he is commanding them. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have commanded you to do this." or "I will be the one guilty for killing him because I have commanded you to do this." (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

not commanded you

What Absalom has commanded them to do may be stated in the question. Alternate translation: "not commanded you to kill him" (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- son
- heart
- pray, prayer
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- strength, strengthen, strong
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- son
- heart
- pray, prayer
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- strength, strengthen, strong
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

28 Absalom commanded his servants saying, "Listen closely. When Amnon begins to be affected by the wine, and when I say to you, 'Attack Amnon,' then kill him. Do not be afraid. Have I not commanded you? Be courageous and brave."

UST

28 So they all went. At the celebration, Absalom commanded his servants, "Notice when Amnon has become a bit drunk from the wine. Then when I signal to you, kill him. Do not be afraid. You will be doing this only because I told you to do it. So be courageous and do it!"

2 Samuel 13:29

every man

This refers to the king's sons who left the celebration.

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

29 So Absalom's servants did to Amnon as he had commanded them. Then all the king's sons arose, and every man mounted his mule and fled.

UST

29 So Absalom's servants did what Absalom told them to do. They killed Amnon. All the rest of David's sons saw what happened and fled, riding on their mules.

2 Samuel 13:30

So it came about

"It happened that." This phrase is used here to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

on the road

"travelling along the road"

that the news came to David saying

Here it says that the news came, when really someone came and told David the news. Alternate translation: "that someone came and reported the news to David saying" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

30 So it came about, while they were on the road, that the news came to David saying, "Absalom has killed all the king's sons, and there is not one of them left."

UST

30 While they were on their way home, someone quickly went and reported to David, "Absalom has killed all of your other sons. None of them is alive!"

2 Samuel 13:31

Then the king arose

"Then the king stood up"

tore his clothes, and lay on the floor

He did these things to show that he was extremely sad. Alternate translation: "tore his clothes, and threw himself on the floor grieving" (See: Symbolic Action)

with their clothes torn

They did this to show their sadness and to mourn with their king. Alternate translation: "and tore their clothes, mourning with the king" (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

31 Then the king arose and tore his clothes, and lay on the floor; all his servants stood by with their clothes torn.

UST

31 The king stood up, tore his clothes because he was extremely sad, and then he threw himself down on the ground. All the servants who were there also tore their clothes.

2 Samuel 13:32

Jonadab…Shimeah

See how you translated these men's names in 2 Samuel 13:3.

Let not my master believe

"My master, do not believe"

my master

Jonadab calls David "my master" to show respect.

Amnon violated his sister

This is a polite way of saying that Amnon raped his sister. (See: Euphemism)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- brother
- son
- son
- Tamar
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- brother
- son
- son
- Tamar
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

32 Jonadab son of Shimeah, David's brother, answered and said, "Let not my master believe that they have killed all the young men who are the king's sons, for Amnon only is dead. Absalom has planned this from the day that Amnon violated his sister Tamar.

UST

32 But Jehonadab son of Shimeah, David's brother, said, "Your Majesty, I am sure that they have not killed all your sons. I am sure that only Amnon is dead, because Absalom has been determined to do this ever since the day that Amnon raped Tamar.

2 Samuel 13:33

let not my master the king

"my master the king, do not"

take this report to heart

The phrase "take something to heart" means "to worry about it." Alternate translation: "worry about this report" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- heart
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- heart
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

33 So therefore let not my master the king take this report to heart, so as to believe that all the king's sons are dead, for Amnon only is dead."

UST

33 So, your Majesty, do not believe the report that all your sons are dead. I am sure that only Amnon is dead."

2 Samuel 13:34

keeping watch

This means that the servant was watching for enemies while guarding at the city wall. Alternate translation: "who was guarding" or "who was guarding at the city wall" (See: Idiom)

raised his eyes

Here the servant looking up at something is spoken of as if he lifted up his eyes. Alternate translation: "looked up" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

34 Absalom fled away. A servant keeping watch raised his eyes and saw many people coming on the road on the hillside west of him.

UST

34 In the meantime, Absalom ran away. Just then, a soldier keeping guard on the city wall saw a large crowd of people coming down the hill along the road to the west. He ran and told the king what he had seen.

2 Samuel 13:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

35 Then Jonadab said to the king, "Look, the king's sons are coming. It is just as your servant said."

UST

35 Jonadab said to the king, "Look there! What I told you is true. Your other sons are alive and have come!"

2 Samuel 13:36

So it came about

This phrase is used to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

raised their voices

Here the sons crying out is spoken of as if their voices were something they lifted into the sky. Alternate translation: "cried out" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

36 So it came about when he finished speaking, the king's sons arrived and raised their voices and wept. The king and all his servants also wept bitterly.

UST

36 And as soon as he said that, David's sons came in. They all started crying, and David and all his officials also cried very much.

2 Samuel 13:37

Talmai…Ammihud

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

for his son

"for his son Amnon"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

37 But Absalom fled and went to Talmai son of Ammihud, the king of Geshur. David mourned for his son every day.

UST

37-38 But Absalom had fled. He went to stay with the king of the region of Geshur. His name was Talmai son of Ammihud. Absalom stayed there for three years. But King David mourned for his son Amnon for a long time,

2 Samuel 13:38

where he was for three years

"where he stayed for three years"

2 Samuel 13:39

The mind of King David longed

Here David is referred to by his mind to emphasize his thoughts. Alternate translation: "King David longed" (See: Synecdoche)

for he was comforted concerning Amnon and his death

"because he was no longer grieving about Amnon being dead." This refers to three years after Absalom fled to Geshur.

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

Translation Words - UST

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

ULT

39 The mind of King David longed to go out to see Absalom, for he was comforted concerning Amnon and his death.

UST

39 but after that, he desired very much to see Absalom, because he was no longer grieving about Amnon being dead.

2 Samuel 14

2 Samuel 14 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Reconciliation

David missed his son, Absalom, who was in exile. Joab summons a wise woman to reconcile David and Absalom. (See: reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation)

Important figures of speech used in this chapter

Parable

The wise woman uses a type of parable to convince David that his actions were wrong. He treated a stranger worse than he treated his own son. This hypothetical situation was intended to convict David of his sin. She uses David's own words against him. (See: Hypothetical Situations and sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

2 Samuel 14:1

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells about a new person in the story.

Zeruiah

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 2:13.

perceived

This means Joab discerned or understood what David was thinking.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- heart
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- heart
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

[1] Now Joab son of Zeruiah perceived that the king's heart desired to see Absalom.

UST

[1] Joab realized that the king was longing to see Absalom.

2 Samuel 14:2

sent word to Tekoa and had a wise woman brought

This means that Joab sent someone with a message to Tekoa and had him bring back a woman to him. This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "sent someone with a message to Tokoa and had him bring a wise woman back" (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

Tekoa

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

the dead

This refers to someone who has died, not dead people in general. Alternate translation: "someone who has died" (See: Nominal Adjectives)

Translation Words - ULT

- wise men, advisor
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- olive

Translation Words - UST

- wise men, advisor
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- olive

ULT

2 So Joab sent word to Tekoa and had a wise woman brought to him. He said to her, "Please pretend you are a mourner and put on mourning clothes. Please do not anoint yourself with oil, but be like a woman who has mourned a long time for the dead.

UST

2 So Joab sent someone to the city of Tekoa to bring to him a woman who was very clever. When she arrived, Joab said to her, "Pretend that you are grieving because someone has died. Put on clothes that show that you are mourning. Do not put any lotion on your body. Act as if you were a woman who has been mourning for a long time.

2 Samuel 14:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- king, kingdom, kingship

2 Samuel 14:4

she lay facedown on the ground

She did this to show her respect and submission to the king. Alternate translation: "she showed her respect to the king by laying facedown on the ground" (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- prostrate, worship
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- prostrate, worship
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

[4] When the woman from Tekoa spoke to the king, she lay facedown on the ground and said, "Help me, king."

UST

[4] So the woman from Tekoa went to the king. She prostrated herself in front of him to show honor and then said, "Your Majesty, help me!"

2 Samuel 14:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

[5] The king said to her, "What is wrong?" She answered, "The truth is that I am a widow, and my husband is dead.

UST

[5] The king replied, "What is your problem?" She replied, "Please, sir, I am a widow. My husband died some time ago.

2 Samuel 14:6

One struck the other

"One of my sons hit the other son with something"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

6 I, your servant, had two sons, and they fought together in the field, and there was no one to separate them. One struck the other and killed him.

UST

6 I had two sons. But one day they quarreled with each other out in the fields. There was no one to separate them, and one of them struck the other one and killed him.

2 Samuel 14:7

the whole clan

"my entire family"

your servant

To show respect for the king the woman refers to herself as "your servant."

put him to death

This is an idiom which means to kill. Alternate translation: "kill him" (See: Idiom)

they would also destroy the heir

If they put the guilty brother to death there would not be a son left to inherit the family's possessions. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "if they did this, they would be destroying our family's heir" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Thus they will put out the burning coal that I have left

Here the woman refers to her only living son as if he were a burning piece of coal. She speaks of the men killing her son as stopping the coal's burning. Alternate translation: "In this way they will kill the only child I have left" (See: Metaphor)

> **ULT**
>
> **7** Now the whole clan has risen against your servant, and they say, 'Give into our hand the man who struck his brother, so that we may put him to death, to pay for the life of his brother whom he killed.' So they would also destroy the heir. Thus they will put out the burning coal that I have left, and they will leave for my husband neither name nor descendant on the surface of the earth."
>
> **UST**
>
> **7** Now, all my family oppose me. They are insisting that I allow them to kill my son who is still alive, in order that they may get revenge for his killing his brother. But if they do that, I will not have any son to inherit my possessions. I will be without any son at all, and my husband will have no son to preserve our family's name."

they will leave for my husband neither name nor descendant

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "they will not leave for my husband name or descendant" (See: Double Negatives)

neither name nor descendant

This refers to a son to carry on the family's name into the next generation. Alternate translation: "no son to preserve our family's name" (See: Metonymy)

on the surface of the earth

"on the earth." This descriptive phrase emphasizes that the family line would not continue on earth after the husband died. "The surface of the earth" refers to the ground on which people walk.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- heart
- name
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- die, dead, deadly, death,

- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- heart
- name
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

2 Samuel 14:8

I will command something to be done for you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will take care of this matter for you" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- house

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- house

ULT

8 So the king said to the woman, "Go to your house, and I will command something to be done for you."

UST

8 Then the king said to the woman, "Go back home. I will take care of this matter for you."

2 Samuel 14:9

Tekoa

Translate the name of this place the same as you did in 2 Samuel 14:2.

may the guilt be on me and on my father's family

This means that if people say that the king was wrong for helping the woman's family that the king should not be guilty. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "if anyone blames you for helping our family, may my family be considered guilty instead" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

The king and his throne

Here the word "throne" refers to anyone who later becomes king in David's place. Alternate translation: "The king and his descendants" or "The king and his family" (See: Metonymy)

are guiltless

"are innocent." This implies that in the future if anyone accuses the king of wrongdoing, he will be innocent in the matter. Alternate translation: "will be innocent regarding the matter" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- innocent
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- innocent
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT

9 The woman of Tekoa replied to the king, "My master, king, may the guilt be on me and on my father's family. The king and his throne are guiltless."

UST

9 The woman from Tekoa replied to the king, "Your Majesty, if any criticizes you for helping me, my family and I will accept the blame. You and the royal family will be innocent."

2 Samuel 14:10

says anything to you

Here speaking threats is spoken of as speaking in general. Alternate translation: "threatens you" or "speaks threats to you" (See: Synecdoche)

he will not touch you anymore

Here David speaks of a person not threatening or hurting her, by saying that the person would not touch her. It is implied that David will not allow the person threatening her to bother her again. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "I will make sure he does not threaten you again" (See: Metaphor and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT
10 The king replied, "Whoever says anything to you, bring him to me, and he will not touch you anymore."

UST
10 The king said to her, "If anyone says anything to threaten you, bring that person to me, and I will make sure that he will never cause you trouble again."

2 Samuel 14:11

Please, may the king call to mind Yahweh your God

Possible meanings are 1) The phrase "call to mind" is an idiom meaning to pray. Alternate translation: "Please, pray to Yahweh your God" or 2) Here "call to mind" means to remember and it is implied that after he remembers Yahweh he will promise in his name. Alternate translation: "Please promise in the name of Yahweh your God" (See: Idiom and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the avenger of blood

This refers to the man who wants to avenge the death of the dead brother. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "the man who wants to avenge my son's brother's death" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

destroy anyone further

"cause anyone else to die." This is in addition to the brother who already died.

that they will not destroy my son

"that they will not kill my son" or "that they will not execute my son"

As Yahweh lives

Often people would make promises and compare how surely they would fulfil their promise to how surely Yahweh is alive. Alternate translation: "I promise you, as surely as Yahweh lives" or "In Yahweh's name I promise" (See: Simile and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

not one hair of your son will fall to the ground

The means that her son will not be harmed, which is exaggerated by saying that he will not lose even a single hair. Alternate translation: "your son will be completely safe" (See: Hyperbole)

ULT

11 Then she said, "Please, may the king call to mind Yahweh your God, so that the avenger of blood will not destroy anyone further, so that they will not destroy my son." The king replied, "As Yahweh lives, not one hair of your son will fall to the ground."

UST

11 Then the woman said, "Your Majesty, please pray that Yahweh your God will not allow my relative, who wants to get revenge on my son for killing his brother, to be able to do that." David replied, "As surely as Yahweh lives, your son will not be harmed at all."

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- son
- God
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

- son
- God
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

2 Samuel 14:12

your servant

To show respect for the king the woman refers to herself as "your servant."

speak a further word to

"talk about something else to." The woman is requesting to speak to the king about another topic.

Speak on

This is an idiom. The king was giving her permission to continue speaking. Alternate translation: "You may speak to me" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT
12 Then the woman said, "Please let your servant speak a further word to my master the king." He said, "Speak on."

UST
12 Then the woman said, "Your Majesty, please allow me to say one more thing to you." He replied, "Speak!"

2 Samuel 14:13

Why then have you devised such a thing against the people of God?

The woman asks this rhetorical question to rebuke David for how he has treated Absalom. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "What you have just said proved that you did wrong." (See: Rhetorical Question)

the king is like someone who is guilty

The woman compares the king to someone who is guilty to suggest that he is guilty without saying it directly. Alternate translation: "the king has declared himself guilty"

his banished son

"his son whom he banished"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- restore, restoration
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- God
- restore, restoration
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

13 So the woman said, "Why then have you devised such a thing against the people of God? For in saying this thing, the king is like someone who is guilty, because the king has not brought back home again his banished son.

UST

13 The woman said, "Why have you done this bad thing to God's people? You have not allowed your son Absalom to return home. By saying what you have just said, you have certainly declared that what you have done is wrong.

2 Samuel 14:14

For we all must die, and we are like water spilled on the ground...up again

Here the woman speaks of a person dying as if they were water being spilled on the ground. Alternate translation: "We all must die, and after we die we cannot be brought back to life again" (See: Simile)

God...finds a way for those who were driven away to be restored

The woman is implying that David should bring his son back to himself. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "God brings back someone whom he has driven away and you should do the same for your son" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

14 For we all must die, and we are like water spilled on the ground, which cannot be gathered up again. But God will not take away life; instead, he finds a way for those who were driven away to be restored.

UST

14 All of us will die. We are like water that cannot be picked up after it is spilled on the ground. God does not take life away, but instead, God creates ways for those who have been exiled to return and be restored to their people and to their homes.

2 Samuel 14:15

because the people have made me afraid

The understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: "because the people have made me afraid that I have come" (See: Ellipsis)

your servant

To show respect for the king the woman refers to herself as "your servant"

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

15 Now then, seeing that I have come to speak this thing to my master the king, it is because the people have made me afraid. So your servant said to herself, 'I will now speak to the king. It may be that the king will perform the request of his servant.

UST

15 Now, Your Majesty, I have come to you because others have threatened me. So I said to myself, 'I will go and talk to the king, and perhaps he will do what I request him to do.

2 Samuel 14:16

from the hand of the man

This phrase is an idiom. Also, "the hand" is a metonym referring to the man's control. Alternate translation: "out of the control of the man" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- hand
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- hand
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

16 Perhaps the king will listen to me and deliver his servant from the hand of the man who would destroy me and my son together, out of the inheritance God gave us.'

UST

16 Perhaps he will listen to me, and save me from the man who is trying to kill my son. If my son is killed, it would result in us disappearing from the land that God gave to us.'

2 Samuel 14:17

the word of my master the king

"the message of my master the king"

for as an angel of God, so is my master…from evil

Here David, the king, is compared to an "angel of God." Alternate translation: "for the king is like an angel of God because they both know how to tell good from evil" (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

17 Then your servant prayed, 'Yahweh, please let the word of my master the king give me relief, for as an angel of God, so is my master the king in telling good from evil.' May Yahweh your God be with you."

UST

17 And I thought, 'What the king says will comfort me, because the king is like an angel of God. He knows what is good and what is evil.' I pray that Yahweh our God will be with you."

2 Samuel 14:18

Please do not hide from me anything that I will ask you

The negative form here is used for emphasis and can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "Please tell me the truth about everything I ask you" (See: Litotes)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- pray, prayer
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- pray, prayer
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

18 Then the king answered and said to the woman, "Please do not hide from me anything that I will ask you." The woman replied, "Let my master the king now speak."

UST

18 Then the king said to the woman, "I will now ask you a question. Answer it; tell me the truth." The woman replied, "Your Majesty, ask your question."

2 Samuel 14:19

Is not the hand of Joab with you in all this

Here the word "hand" refers to Joab's influence. Alternate translation: "Has not Joab influenced you in all this" or "Did Joab send you here to speak these things" (See: Metonymy)

As you live

"As surely as you are alive." Here the woman compares the certainty of what David has said to the certainty that he is alive, to emphasize how true his statement is. (See: Idiom)

no one can escape to the right hand...the king has spoken

Here the woman describes the difficulty of speaking to the king and keeping him from finding out the truth by comparing it to a person not being about to escape in any direction. Alternate translation: "no one can keep you from knowing the truth" (See: Metaphor)

to the right hand or to the left

The expression gives two extremes and means "anywhere." Alternate translation: "anywhere at all" or "anywhere" (See: Merism)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

19 The king said, "Is not the hand of Joab with you in all this?" The woman answered and said, "As you live, my master the king, no one can escape to the right hand or to the left from anything that my master the king has spoken. It was your servant Joab who commanded me and told me to say these things that your servant has spoken.

UST

19 The king said, "Was Joab the one who told you to do this?" She replied, "Yes, Your Majesty, as surely as you live, I cannot say anything to avoid telling you what is true. Yes, indeed, it was Joab who told me to come here, and who told me what to say.

2 Samuel 14:20

My master is wise

"My master the king is wise"

is wise, like the wisdom of an angel of God

The woman compares David's wisdom to the wisdom of an angel to emphasize how very wise he is. Alternate translation: "you are very wise, like an angel of God" (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- wise men, advisor
- messenger
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- God
- wise men, advisor
- messenger
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

[20] Your servant Joab has done this to change the course of what is happening. My master is wise, like the wisdom of an angel of God, and he knows everything that is happening in the land."

UST

[20] He did it in order to cause you to think differently about this matter. Your Majesty, you are as wise as God's angels, and it seems that you know everything that happens on the earth, so you know why Joab sent me here."

2 Samuel 14:21

So the king said to Joab

It is implied that the king had Joab brought before him so that he could speak to him. The full meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Then the king summoned Joab and said to him" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Look now

This phrase is used to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

this thing

This refers to what Joab wants the king to do. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "what you want me to do" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

21 So the king said to Joab, "Look now, I will do this thing. Go then, and bring the young man Absalom back."

UST

21 Then the king summoned Joab and said to him, "Listen! I have decided to do what you want. So go and get that young man Absalom and bring him back to Jerusalem."

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

2 Samuel 14:22

Joab lay facedown on the ground

Joab did this to honor the king and show his gratitude. (See: Symbolic Action)

your servant

To show respect for the king Joab refers to himself as "your servant."

I have found favor in your eyes

The phrase "found favor" is an idiom which means to be approved of by someone. Also, "eyes" is a metonym for sight, and sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "you are pleased with me" or "you have approved of me" (See: Idiom and Metonymy and Metaphor)

in that the king

"because the king"

the king has performed the request of his servant

"you have done what I asked you to do"

ULT

22 So Joab lay facedown on the ground in honor and gratitude to the king. Joab said, "Today your servant knows that I have found favor in your eyes, my master, king, in that the king has performed the request of his servant."

UST

22 Joab prostrated himself on the ground, and then he bowed down before the king, and asked God to bless him. Then Joab said, "Your Majesty, today I know that you are pleased with me, because you have agreed to do what I requested."

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- prostrate, worship
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- prostrate, worship
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

2 Samuel 14:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

• Jerusalem

ULT

23 So Joab arose, went to Geshur, and brought Absalom back to Jerusalem.

UST

23 Then Joab got up and went to Geshur, and got Absalom and brought him back to Jerusalem.

2 Samuel 14:24

but he may not see my face…the king's face

Here the word "face" refers to the king himself. Alternate translation: "but he may not see me…the king" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house (2)

Translation Words - UST

- face, facial
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house (2)

ULT

24 The king said, "He may return to his own house, but he may not see my face." So Absalom returned to his own house, but did not see the king's face.

UST

24 But the king said that he would not allow Absalom to come to him. He said, "I do not want him to come to see me." So Absalom lived in his own house, and did not go to talk to the king.

2 Samuel 14:25

Now

This word marks a break in the main story line. This new section gives background information for the part of the story that follows. (See: Background Information)

there was no one praised for his handsomeness more than Absalom

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people praised Absalom for his handsomeness more than they praised anyone else" (See: Active or Passive)

handsomeness

good and pleasing appearance, especially of the face

ULT

25 Now in all Israel there was no one praised for his handsomeness more than Absalom. From the sole of his foot to the top of his head there was no blemish in him.

UST

25 Now Absalom was very handsome. There were no imperfections on his body, from the bottom of his feet to the top of his head. In all of Israel there was no one whom people admired more that Absalom.

From the sole of his foot to the top of his head there was no blemish in him

This means the whole person was without blemish. Alternate translation: "There were no blemishes on any part of his body" (See: Merism)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- praise, praised, praiseworthy

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- praise, praised, praiseworthy

2 Samuel 14:26

two hundred shekels

This can be written in modern units. Alternate translation: "two and a half kilograms" (See: Biblical Weight)

the weight of the king's standard

The king had weights that determined the standard weight of the shekel and other weights and measurements.

Translation Words - ULT

- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- head
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- head
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

26 When he cut the hair of his head at the end of every year, because it was heavy on him, he weighed his hair; it would weigh about two hundred shekels, which is measured by the weight of the king's standard.

UST

26 His hair was very thick, and he cut it only once each year, when it became very heavy on him. Using the standard weights, he would weigh the hair that he cut off, and it always weighed about two and one-half kilograms.

2 Samuel 14:27

To Absalom were born three sons and one daughter

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Absalom had three sons and one daughter"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Tamar

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Tamar

ULT

27 To Absalom were born three sons and one daughter, whose name was Tamar. She was a beautiful woman.

UST

27 Absalom had three sons and one daughter named Tamar. She was a very beautiful woman.

2 Samuel 14:28

the king's face

Here "the king's face" refers to the king himself. Alternate translation: "the king" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

28 Absalom lived two full years in Jerusalem, without seeing the king's face.

UST

28 After Absalom returned to Jerusalem, he lived there two years, and during that time he never was allowed to see the king.

2 Samuel 14:29

Absalom sent word for Joab

Here "word" is a metonym for "a message." This means that he sent a messenger to Joab with a request. Alternate translation: "Absalom sent a messenger to Joab asking him" (See: Metonymy)

to send him to the king

It is implied that Absalom wanted Joab to come to him to see him and to intercede for him so that he would be allowed to see the king. The full meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "to come to him and to intercede for him so that he could see the king" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

So Absalom sent word a second time

ULT

29 Then Absalom sent word for Joab to send him to the king, but Joab would not come to him. So Absalom sent word a second time, but Joab still did not come.

UST

29 So he sent a messenger to go to Joab to request him to come and talk to him, but Joab refused to come. So Absalom sent a messenger to him a second time, but he still would not come.

Here "word" is a metonym for "a message." This means that he sent a messenger to Joab again with the same request. The full meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "So Absalom sent a messenger to Joab again with the same request" (See: Metonymy and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship

2 Samuel 14:30

See

Here this word is used to remind people of something. Alternate translation: "As you know"

Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- walk, walked
- barley
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- hand
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- walk, walked
- barley
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

30 So Absalom said to his servants, "See, Joab's field is near mine, and he has barley there. Go and set it on fire." So Absalom's servants set the field on fire.

UST

30 Then Absalom said to his servants, "You know that Joab's field is next to mine, and that he has barley growing there. Go and light a fire there to burn the barley." So Absalom's servants went there and lit a fire, and all the barley burned.

2 Samuel 14:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

31 Then Joab arose and came to Absalom at his house, and said to him, "Why have your servants set my field on fire?"

UST

31 Joab knew who had done it, so he went to Absalom's house and said to him, "Why have your servants burned the barley in my field?"

2 Samuel 14:32

Look

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important"

I sent word

Here "word" is a metonym for "a message." This means that he sent a messenger. Alternate translation: "I sent a messenger" (See: Metonymy)

to the king to say

The message here for the king is written as if Absalom were the speaker. Absalom was asking Joab to speak the message on his behalf. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "to say to the king on my behalf" or "to ask the king for me" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the king's face

Here "king's face" refers to the king himself. Alternate translation: "the king" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- iniquity
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- iniquity
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

32 Absalom answered Joab, "Look, I sent word to you saying, 'Come here so I may send you to the king to say, "Why did I come from Geshur? It would be better for me to still be there. Now therefore let me see the king's face, and if I am guilty, let him kill me."'"

UST

32 Absalom replied, "Because you did not come to me when I sent messengers to you requesting that you come. I wanted to request that you go to the king to say to him, 'Absalom wants to know what good it did for him to leave Geshur and come here. He thinks that it would have been better for him to stay there. He wants you to allow him to talk to you. And if you think that he has done something that is wrong, you can command that he be executed.'"

2 Samuel 14:33

bowed low to the ground before the king

Absalom is showing respect to the king. Alternate translation: "bowed low to the ground to honor the king" (See: Symbolic Action)

the king kissed Absalom

This implies that the king forgave and restored Absalom. The full meaning of this can be made clear. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- prostrate, worship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- prostrate, worship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

33 So Joab went to the king and told him. When the king called for Absalom, he came to the king and bowed low to the ground before the king, and the king kissed Absalom.

UST

33 So Joab went to the king and told him what Absalom had said. Then the king summoned Absalom, and he came to the king and knelt down in front of him with his face touching the ground. Then the king kissed Absalom to show that he was pleased to see him.

2 Samuel 15

2 Samuel 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the story of Absalom's attempted revolt.

Special concepts in this chapter

Absalom's conspiracy

For four years, Absalom made many allies in an attempt to make himself king. This is why he acted as a judge for the people. Since this was all done in secret, it is called a "conspiracy." David found out and fled with those in the army who were loyal to him.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The author used the metaphor of a thief to describe how Absalom was able to win people's loyalty: "So Absalom stole the hearts of the men of Israel." (See: Metaphor)

2 Samuel 15:1

It came about

This phrase is used to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

with fifty men to run before him

These men would run in front of the chariot to honor Absalom. Alternate translation: "with fifty men to run before him to honor him" (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- chariot, charioteers
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- chariot, charioteers
- horse, warhorse, horseback

ULT

1 It came about after this that Absalom prepared a chariot and horses for himself, with fifty men to run before him.

UST

1 Some time later, Absalom acquired a chariot and horses to pull it. He hired fifty men to run in front of him to honor him while he was riding around Jerusalem in the chariot.

2 Samuel 15:2

Your servant

When a man would respond to Absalom's question he would refer to himself as "your servant" to honor Absalom.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

2 Absalom would get up early and stand beside the road leading to the city gate. When any man had a dispute to come to the king for judgment, Absalom called to him and said, "From what city have you come?" Then the man would answer, "Your servant is from one of the tribes of Israel."

UST

2 Furthermore, he always rose early each morning and stood by the city gate. Whenever someone came there with a dispute with someone that he wanted the king to decide, Absalom would call out to him, asking, "What city are you from?" The person would tell him what city and tribe he was from.

2 Samuel 15:3

So Absalom would say to him

It is implied that the person told his case to Absalom. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Absalom would ask him what his problem was, and the man would then explain to Absalom why he sought justice. Absalom would then say to him" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

good and right

These words have basically the same meaning and are used together to emphasize that his case is good. (See: Doublet)

to hear your case

ULT

3 So Absalom would say to him, "Look, your case is good and right, but there is no one empowered by the king to hear your case."

UST

3 Then Absalom would say to him, "Listen, I am sure that what you are saying is right. But there is no one whom the king has appointed to listen to people like you."

"Hearing" a case means to listen to it and to make a judgement decision over it. Alternate translation: "to judge your case" or "to oversee your case" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- king, kingdom, kingship

2 Samuel 15:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- statute

Translation Words - UST

- statute

ULT

4 Absalom added, "I wish that I were made judge in the land, so that every man who had any dispute or cause might come to me, and I would bring him justice!"

UST

4 Absalom would then add, "I wish that I were a judge in this land. If I were a judge, anyone who had a dispute could come to me, and I would decide it fairly."

2 Samuel 15:5

put out his hand and take hold of him and kiss him

This action is a friendly greeting. Alternate translation: "greet him as a friend by embracing him and kissing him" (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- hand

Translation Words - UST

- hand

ULT

5 So it came about that when any man came to Absalom to honor him, Absalom would put out his hand and take hold of him and kiss him.

UST

5 And whenever anyone came near to Absalom to bow respectfully in front of him, Absalom would reach out and embrace him and kiss him.

2 Samuel 15:6

for judgment

This means that they can for the king to decide their disputes. Alternate translation: "to judge over their disputes" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

So Absalom stole the hearts of the men of Israel

This sentence means Absalom convinced the men to be loyal to him rather than to David. Here the author speaks of how the people became loyal to Absalom by saying that he stole their hearts. Alternate translation: "In this way, Absalom convinced the men of Israel to be loyal to him" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

6 Absalom acted in this way to all Israel who came to the king for judgment. So Absalom stole the hearts of the men of Israel.

UST

6 Absalom did this to everyone in Israel who came to the king with a dispute to be decided. In that way, Absalom persuaded all the Israelite people to be more pleased with him than they were pleased with his father David.

2 Samuel 15:7

It came about

This phrase is used to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

at the end of four years that Absalom

This refers to four years after he returned to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "fours years after Absalom had returned to Jerusalem, he" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

and pay a vow that I have made to Yahweh in Hebron

"to Hebron and there fulfill a vow that I have made to Yahweh"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

ULT

7 It came about at the end of four years that Absalom said to the king, "Please let me go and pay a vow that I have made to Yahweh in Hebron.

UST

7 Four years later, Absalom went to the king and said, "Please allow me to go to the city of Hebron, in order that I can do what I promised Yahweh that I would do.

2 Samuel 15:8

For your servant

Here Absalom refers to himself this way to honor the king.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- restore, restoration
- Jerusalem
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- restore, restoration
- Jerusalem
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

8 For your servant made a vow while I was living at Geshur in Aram, saying,' If Yahweh will indeed bring me again to Jerusalem, then I will worship Yahweh.'"

UST

8 When I was living in Geshur, in Aram, I promised Yahweh that if he brought me back to Jerusalem, I would worship him in Hebron."

2 Samuel 15:9

So Absalom arose

"So Absalom left"

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

2 Samuel 15:10

throughout all the tribes of Israel

Here the places where the tribes of Israel lived are referred to as the tribes themselves. Alternate translation: "throughout the land of the tribes of Israel" (See: Metonymy)

the sound of the trumpet

"a trumpet being blown"

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- trumpet, trumpeters
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- trumpet, trumpeters
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

10 But then Absalom sent spies throughout all the tribes of Israel, saying, "As soon as you hear the sound of the trumpet, then you must say, 'Absalom is king in Hebron.'"

UST

10 But while he was there, he secretly sent messengers to all the tribes in Israel to tell them, "When you hear the sound of the trumpets being blown, shout, 'Absalom has become the king at Hebron!'"

2 Samuel 15:11

who were invited

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "who he had invited" (See: Active or Passive)

went in their innocence

"went innocently"

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Jerusalem
- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- Jerusalem
- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

11 With Absalom went two hundred men from Jerusalem, who were invited. They went in their innocence, not knowing anything that Absalom had planned.

UST

11 Absalom had taken with him to Hebron two hundred men from Jerusalem, but they did not know what Absalom was planning to do.

2 Samuel 15:12

he sent for Ahithophel

This means that he sent a messenger to go get Ahithophel and bring him back to him. Alternate translation: "he sent a messenger to go get Ahithophel who was" (See: Idiom)

Ahithophel

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Giloh

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- people, people group,
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- David
- people, people group,
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- walk, walked

ULT

12 While Absalom offered sacrfices, he sent for Ahithophel from his hometown of Giloh. He was David's counselor. Absalom's conspiracy was strong, for the people following Absalom were constantly increasing.

UST

12 While Absalom was offering sacrifices at Hebron, he sent a message to Ahithophel from the town of Giloh, requesting him to come. Ahithophel was one of the king's advisors. So the number of people who joined Absalom and who were ready to rebel against David became larger.

2 Samuel 15:13

The hearts of the men of Israel are following after

Here the men are referred to by their "hearts" to emphasize their loyalty to Absalom. Alternate translation: "The men of Israel are loyal to" or "The men of Israel are following after" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- David

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- David

ULT

13 A messenger came to David saying, "The hearts of the men of Israel are following after Absalom."

UST

13 Soon a messenger came to David and said to him, "All the Israelite people are joining Absalom to rebel against you!"

2 Samuel 15:14

escape from Absalom...he will quickly...and he will bring

Here David speaks of Absalom and the men with him as "Absalom" himself because the men are following Absalom's authority. Alternate translation: "escape from Absalom and his men...he and his men will quickly...and they will bring" (See: Synecdoche)

attack the city with the edge of the sword

The "city" is a metonym referring to the people in the city. The "edge of the sword" is a synecdoche referring to the Israelites' swords and emphasize that they killed the people in battle. Alternate translation: "will attack the people of our city and kill them with their swords" (See: Metonymy and Synecdoche)

bring down disaster

This means to cause disaster to happen. (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- David
- Jerusalem
- sword, swordsmen
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- David
- Jerusalem
- sword, swordsmen
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

14 So David said to all his servants who were with him at Jerusalem, "Arise and let us flee, or none of us will escape from Absalom. Prepare to leave immediately, or he will quickly overtake us, and he will bring down disaster on us and attack the city with the edge of the sword."

UST

14 So David said to all his officials, "We must leave immediately if we want to escape from Absalom! We must go quickly, before he and his men arrive. If we do not do that, they will kill us and everyone else in the city!"

2 Samuel 15:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

15 The king's servants said to the king, "Look, your servants are ready to do whatever our master the king decides."

UST

15 The king's officials said, "Very well, your Majesty, we are ready to do whatever you wish."

2 Samuel 15:16

to keep the palace

Here the word "keep" means to care for. Alternate translation: "to care for the palace" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house

ULT

16 The king left and all his family after him, but the king left ten women, who were concubines, to keep the palace.

UST

16 So the king left ten of his slave wives there to take care of the palace, but all the other people in his palace went with him.

2 Samuel 15:17

at the last house

This refers to the last house they would come to when leaving the city. Alternate translation: "at the last house as they were leaving the city" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

17 After the king went out and all the people after him, they stopped at the last house.

UST

17 When they all were leaving the city, they stopped at the last house.

2 Samuel 15:18

Kerethites...Pelethites

Translate the names of these people groups the same as you did in 2 Samuel 8:18.

Gittites

Translate the name of this people group the same as you did in 2 Samuel 6:10.

six hundred men

"600 men" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- hand
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

18 All his army marched with him, and before him went all the Kerethites, and all the Pelethites, and all the Gittites—six hundred men who had followed him from Gath.

UST

18 The king and his officials stood there while his bodyguards went by in front of him. Six hundred soldiers from the city of Gath also walked by in front of him.

2 Samuel 15:19

Ittai

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Gittite

Translate the name of this people group the same as you did in 2 Samuel 6:10.

Why will you come with us?

This rhetorical question indicates that the king does not think they should go along with him. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You do not need to go with us." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- walk, walked
- alien, foreign, foreigner
- exile, exiled

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- walk, walked
- alien, foreign, foreigner
- exile, exiled

ULT

19 Then the king said to Ittai the Gittite, "Why will you come with us? Return and stay with the king, for you are a foreigner and an exile. Return to your own place.

UST

19 Then David said to Ittai, the leader of the soldiers from Gath, "Why are you going with us? Go back and stay with Absalom the new king. You are not an Israelite; you are living away from your own land.

2 Samuel 15:20

why should I make you wander all over with us?

This rhetorical question emphasizes David did not want Ittai to come. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I do not want to cause you to wander around with us." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Since you just left yesterday

Here "yesterday" is an exaggeration that emphasizes a short amount of time. Ittai the Gittite had lived there for several years. Alternate translation: "Since you have lived here only a short time" (See: Hyperbole)

May loyalty and faithfulness go with you

This is a blessing that David is giving to him. Alternate translation: "May Yahweh be faithful and loyal to you always" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- true, truth
- restore, restoration
- walk, walked
- walk, walked
- return

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- true, truth
- restore, restoration
- walk, walked
- walk, walked
- return

ULT

20 Since you just left yesterday, why should I make you wander all over with us? I do not even know where I am going. So return and take your fellow countrymen back. May loyalty and faithfulness go with you."

UST

20 You have lived here in Israel for only a short time. And we do not even know where we will be going. So it is not right for me to force you to wander around with us. And take your troops with you. And I hope that Yahweh will faithfully love and be loyal to you."

2 Samuel 15:21

As Yahweh lives, and as my master the king lives

Here the speaker is making a solemn promise. He compare the certainty the he will fulfill his promise to the certainty that Yahweh and the king are alive. Alternate translation: "I solemnly promise that as surely as Yahweh and the king live" (See: Simile)

your servant

Ittai refers to himself this way to honor the king.

whether that means living or dying

"even if I get killed supporting you"

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir (2)
- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir (2)
- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

21 But Ittai answered the king and said, "As Yahweh lives, and as my master the king lives, surely in whatever place where my master the king goes, there also will your servant go, whether that means living or dying."

UST

21 But Ittai replied, "Your Majesty, as surely as you live, wherever you go, I will go. I will stay with you whether they kill me or allow me to live."

2 Samuel 15:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- David
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- walk, walked

ULT

22 So David said to Ittai, "Go ahead and continue with us." So Ittai the Gittite marched with the king, along with all his men and all the families who were with him.

UST

22 David replied to Ittai, "Very well, march with us!" So Ittai and all his troops and their families went with David.

2 Samuel 15:23

All the country wept with a loud voice

Many of the people of Israel wept loudly when they saw the king leaving. Here this is generalized by saying that the whole country wept. Alternate translation: "All the people along the road wept" or "Many of the people wept" (See: Hyperbole)

with a loud voice

Here the many people who were weeping are spoken of as if they shared one loud voice. Alternate translation: "loudly" (See: Metaphor)

Kidron Valley

This is the name of a place near Jerusalem. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

23 All the country wept with a loud voice as all the people passed by over the Kidron Valley, and as the king also himself crossed over. All the people traveled on the road toward the wilderness.

UST

23 All the people along the road cried when they saw them walking by. The king and all the others crossed the Kidron Valley and went up the hill toward the wilderness.

2 Samuel 15:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God (2)
- covenant
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God (2)
- covenant
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- people, people group,

ULT

24 Even Zadok with all the Levites, carrying the ark of the covenant of God, were present. They set the ark of God down, and then Abiathar joined them. They waited until all the people had passed by out of the city.

UST

24 Abiathar and Zadok, the priests, were also walking with them. The descendants of Levi who helped the priests also went with them, carrying the sacred chest that contained the Ten Commandments. But they set it on the ground until all the others had left the city.

2 Samuel 15:25

I find favor in the eyes of Yahweh

Here the "eyes of Yahweh" refer to Yahweh's thoughts and opinion. If you "find favor" with someone it means that they are pleased with you. Alternate translation: "Yahweh is pleased with me" (See: Metonymy and Idiom)

where he lives

"where his presence is." The ark of the covenant symbolizes Yahweh's presence. This refers to the place where the ark is. Alternate translation: "where it is kept" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- God
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return

Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- God
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return

ULT

25 The king said to Zadok, "Carry the ark of God back into the city. If I find favor in the eyes of Yahweh, he will bring me back here and show me again the ark and the place where he lives.

UST

25 But then the king said to Zadok, "You two must take the sacred chest back into the city. If Yahweh is pleased with me, he will some day allow me to return to see it and the place where it is kept.

2 Samuel 15:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- delight

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- delight

2 Samuel 15:27

Ahimaaz

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Abiathar

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 8:17.

Are you not a seer?

This rhetorical question is used to rebuke Zadok and can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You will be able to find out what is happening." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- restore, restoration
- priest, priesthood
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- restore, restoration
- priest, priesthood
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

27 The king also said to Zadok the priest, "Are you not a seer? Return into the city in peace, and your two sons with you, Ahimaaz your son, and Jonathan son of Abiathar.

UST

27 He also said to Zadok, "Listen to what I suggest! Return to the city peacefully, and take your son Ahimaaz and Abiathar's son Jonathan with you.

2 Samuel 15:28

See

Here this word means for the listener to pay attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

until word comes from you

This refers to him sending a messenger to the king. Alternate translation: "until you send a messenger to me to inform me" (See: Metonymy)

to inform me

Here the king implies he is to receive a message informing him about what is happening in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "to tell me what is happening in Jerusalem" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

28 See, I will wait at the fords of the Arabah until word comes from you to inform me."

UST

28 I will wait in the wilderness at the place where people can walk across the river, until you send a message to me."

Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer

2 Samuel 15:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Jerusalem
- return

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Jerusalem
- return

ULT

29 So Zadok and Abiathar carried the ark of God back into Jerusalem, and they stayed there.

UST

29 So Zadok and Abiathar carried the sacred chest back to Jerusalem, and they stayed there.

2 Samuel 15:30

barefoot

wearing no shoes or sandals

his head covered

This is a sign of mourning and shame. Alternate translation: "his head covered in mourning" (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- head
- head
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- head
- head
- walk, walked

ULT

30 But David ascended barefoot and weeping up the Mount of Olives, and he had his head covered. Every man of the people who were with him covered his head, and they went up weeping as they walked.

UST

30 David and those with him went up the Mount of Olives. David was crying while he walked. He was walking barefoot and had something covering his head to show that he was sorrowful. All those who were going with him also covered their heads and were crying while they walked.

2 Samuel 15:31

Ahithophel

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 15:11.

conspirators

people who join together against someone else

please turn Ahithophel's advice into foolishness

David is asking Yahweh to make Ahitohphel's advice foolish and useless. Alternate translation: "please let whatever advice Ahithophel gives be foolishness and unsuccessful" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- David

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- David

ULT

31 Someone told David saying, "Ahithophel is among the conspirators with Absalom." So David prayed, "O Yahweh, please turn Ahithophel's advice into foolishness."

UST

31 Someone told David that Ahithophel had joined with those who were rebelling against David. So David prayed, "Yahweh, cause whatever Ahithophel suggests to Absalom that he should do be considered to be foolish!"

2 Samuel 15:32

It came about

"It happened." This phrase marks the next event in the story line. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

at the top of the road

The word "top" is used here because David went up in elevation and is at the top of a hill. Alternate translation: "at the top of the hill" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

where God used to be worshiped

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "where people once worshiped God" (See: Active or Passive)

Hushai

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Arkite

This is the name of a people group. (See: How to Translate Names)

with his coat torn and earth on his head

This is an act showing shame or repentance. Here the word "earth" means dirt. Alternate translation: "He had torn his clothes and put dirt on his head to show that he was very sad" (See: Symbolic Action and Synecdoche)

ULT

32 It came about that when David arrived at the top of the road, where God used to be worshiped, Hushai the Arkite came to meet him with his coat torn and earth on his head.

UST

32 When they arrived at the top of the hill, where there was a place where the people had previously been accustomed to worship God, suddenly Hushai, from the Arki people group, met David. He had torn his clothes and put dirt on his head to show that he was very sad.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- prostrate, worship
- David
- head
- chief

Translation Words - UST

- God
- prostrate, worship
- David
- head
- chief

2 Samuel 15:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- David

Translation Words - UST

- David

ULT

33 David said to him, "If you travel with me, then you will be a burden to me.

UST

33 David said to him, "If you go with me, you will not be able to help me.

2 Samuel 15:34

you will confuse Ahithophel's advice for me

David is suggest to Hushai that he oppose whatever Ahithopel advises. Alternate translation: "you can serve me by opposing Ahithophel's advice" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

34 But if you return to the city and say to Absalom, 'I will be your servant, king, as I have been your father's servant in time past, so will I now be your servant,' then you will confuse Ahithophel's advice for me.

UST

34 But if you return to the city, you can help me by saying to Absalom, 'Your Majesty, I will serve you as faithfully as I served your father.' If you do that and stay near Absalom, you will be able to oppose any advice that Ahithophel gives to Absalom.

2 Samuel 15:35

Will you not have the priests Zadok and Abiathar with you?

David asks this rhetorical question to tell Hushai that he will not be alone. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Zadok and Abiathar the priests will be there to help you." (See: Rhetorical Question)

whatever you hear

This is a generalization. It means all of the important and insightful things that he hears, not every single word he hears. (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT

[35] Will you not have the priests Zadok and Abiathar with you? So whatever you hear in the king's palace, you must tell it to Zadok and Abiathar the priests.

UST

[35] Zadok and Abiathar the priests are already there. Whatever you hear people say in the king's palace, tell it to Zadok and Abiathar.

2 Samuel 15:36

Ahimaaz...Jonathan

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

by their hand

The phrase "their hand" refers to the sons and means that they were to serve as messengers. Alternate translation: "their sons to tell me" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- son
- hand

ULT

36 See that they have there with them their two sons, Ahimaaz, Zadok's son, and Jonathan, Abiathar's son. You must send to me by their hand everything that you hear."

UST

36 Keep in mind that Zadok's son Ahimaaz and Abiathar's son Jonathan are also there. You can tell them whatever you find out, and send them to report it to me."

2 Samuel 15:37

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- David
- Jerusalem

2 Samuel 16

2 Samuel 16 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Absalom seeks advice from David's advisers

David's best adviser, Ahithophel, told Absalom to publicly seduce the concubines that David had left to take care of the palace. Because the concubines were the king's property, having sexual relations with a king's concubines implied that Absalom was now the king. This would show the people that the break with David was complete. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Simile

To show how seriously people took Ahithophel's advice, the author used a Simile comparing his advice to God's advice. "Now the advice of Ahithophel that he gave in those days was as if a man heard from the mouth of God himself."

2 Samuel 16:1

Ziba

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Mephibosheth

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 4:4.

two hundred loaves...one hundred clusters...one hundred bunches

"200 loaves...100 clusters...100 bunches" (See: Numbers)

loaves of bread

"cakes of bread"

clusters of raisins...bunches of figs

These phrases refer to raisins or figs pressed together.

raisins

dried grapes

a skin of wine

"a wineskin full of wine"

Translation Words - ULT

- donkey, mule
- bread
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- donkey, mule
- bread
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

1 When David had gone a short distance over the summit of the hill, Ziba the servant of Mephibosheth met him with a couple of saddled donkeys; on them were two hundred loaves of bread, one hundred clusters of raisins, and one hundred bunches of figs, and a skin of wine.

UST

1 When David and the others had gone a little way past the top of the hill, Mephibosheth's servant Ziba met him. He had with him two donkeys that were carrying two hundred loaves of bread, one hundred bunches of raisins, one hundred bunches of fresh figs, and a leather bag full of wine.

2 Samuel 16:2

faint

tired and weak

Translation Words - ULT

- desert, wilderness
- donkey, mule
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- desert, wilderness
- donkey, mule
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

2 The king said to Ziba, "Why did you bring these things?" Ziba replied, "The donkeys are for the king's household to ride on, the bread and fig cakes are for your men to eat, and the wine is for anyone who is faint in the wilderness to drink."

UST

2 The king said to Ziba, "What are these for?" Ziba replied, "The donkeys are for your family to ride on, the bread and the fruit are for your soldiers to eat, and the wine is for them to drink when they become exhausted in the wilderness."

2 Samuel 16:3

your master's grandson

"Mephibosheth, your master's grandson"

grandson

the son of one's son or daughter

Look

Here this word is used to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

house of Israel

This refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel" (See: Metonymy)

will restore my father's kingdom to me

Having a descendant of Saul being allowed to rule is spoken of as the kingdom being restored to their family. Alternate translation: "will allow me to rule the kingdom that my grandfather ruled" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

3 The king said, "Then where is your master's grandson?" Ziba replied to the king, "Look, he has stayed behind in Jerusalem, for he said, 'Today the house of Israel will restore my father's kingdom to me.'"

UST

3 The king said, "Where is Mephibosheth, the grandson of your former master Saul?" Ziba answered, "He stayed in Jerusalem, because he thinks that now the people will allow him to rule the kingdom that his grandfather Saul ruled."

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

2 Samuel 16:4

Mephibosheth

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 4:4.

I bow in humility to you

Ziba is not literally bowing before the king when he is speaking here. This means that he will serve the king with the same amount of humility he would be showing if he were literally bowing before him. Alternate translation: "I will humbly serve you" (See: Metaphor)

Let me find favor in your eyes

The phrase "find favor" means to be approved of by someone. Also, "eyes" is a metonym for sight, and sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "I want you to be pleased with me" or "I desire you for to be pleased with me" (See: Idiom and Metonymy and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- prostrate, worship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- prostrate, worship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

4 Then the king said to Ziba, "Look, all that belonged to Mephibosheth now belongs to you." Ziba answered, "I bow in humility to you, my master, king. Let me find favor in your eyes."

UST

4 The king said to Ziba, "Very well, everything that belonged to Mephibosheth is now yours." Ziba replied, "Your Majesty, I will humbly serve you, and I desire that you will always be pleased with me."

2 Samuel 16:5

Bahurim

Translate the name of this city the same as you did in 2 Samuel 3:16.

Shimei...Gera

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- curse, cursed, cursing
- David
- family, household
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- curse, cursed, cursing
- David
- family, household
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

5 When King David approached Bahurim, there came out from there a man from the clan of Saul, whose name was Shimei son of Gera. He came out cursing as he walked.

UST

5 When King David and those with him arrived at the city of Bahurim, a man named Shimei met him. Shimei, whose father was Gera, was a member of the same clan that Saul's family belong to. Shimei was cursing David as he approached.

2 Samuel 16:6

in spite of

"even though there was"

bodyguards

These are men who protect an important person.

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- might, mighty, mighty works
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- David
- David
- might, mighty, mighty works
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

6 He threw stones at David and at all of the king's officials, in spite of the army and bodyguards who were on the king's right and left.

UST

6 Then he threw stones at David and his officials, even though the officials and David's bodyguards surrounded David.

2 Samuel 16:7

villain

someone who is evil, a criminal or lawbreaker

man of blood

Here "blood" refers to all of men he was responsible for killing in battle. Alternate translation: "murderer" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

7 Shimei called out in cursing, "Go away, get out of here, you villain, you man of blood!

UST

7 Shimei cursed David and said to him, "Get out of here, you murderer, you scoundrel!

2 Samuel 16:8

Yahweh has repaid

Yahweh repays them by punishing them. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has punished" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

for the blood you shed within the family of Saul

Here "blood" refer to people who were killed from Saul's family. The king was responsible for them dying. Alternate translation: "for killing many of Saul's family" (See: Metonymy)

in whose place you have reigned

David reigned as king over the same people whom Saul had previously reigned. Alternate translation: "in whose place you have reigned as king" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

into the hand of Absalom

Here "hand" refers to control. Alternate translation: "into the control of Absalom" (See: Metonymy)

ULT

8 Yahweh has repaid all of you for the blood you shed within the family of Saul, in whose place you have reigned. Yahweh has given the kingdom into the hand of Absalom your son. You have come to ruin because you are a man of blood."

UST

8 Yahweh is getting revenge on you all for murdering many people in Saul's family. And now he is giving Saul's kingdom to your son Absalom. You murderer, you are being paid back for the many people that you have killed!"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- blood
- blood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- blood
- blood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand
- house

2 Samuel 16:9

Abishai

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 2:18. (See: How to Translate Names)

Zeruiah

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 2:13. (See: How to Translate Names)

Why should this dead dog curse my master the king?

Abishai asked this question to express his anger at the man. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "This dead dog must not speak to the king this way." (See: Rhetorical Question)

this dead dog

Here the man is being described as worthless by being compared to a dead dog. Alternate translation: "this worthless man" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

9 Then Abishai son of Zeruiah, said to the king, "Why should this dead dog curse my master the king? Please let me go over and take off his head."

UST

9 Then Abishai said to the king, "Your Majesty, this man is as worthless as a dead dog! Why should he be allowed to curse you? Allow me to go over there and cut off his head!"

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- head
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- head
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

2 Samuel 16:10

What have I to do with you, sons of Zeruiah?

This rhetorical question is asked to correct the sons of Zeruiah. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I do not want to know what you think!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Perhaps he is cursing me because

"He may be cursing me because"

Who then could say to him, 'Why are you cursing the king?

This is said as a rhetorical question to emphasize that the answer is "no one." This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one then can ask him, 'Why are you cursing the king?'" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

10 But the king said, "What have I to do with you, sons of Zeruiah? Perhaps he is cursing me because Yahweh has said to him, 'Curse David.' Who then could say to him, 'Why are you cursing the king?'"

UST

10 But the king replied, "You two sons of Zeruiah, I want nothing to do with you. If he is cursing me because Yahweh told him to do so, then no one should ask him, 'Why are you cursing the king?'"

2 Samuel 16:11

my son, who was born from my body

David describes his son this way to emphasize the close bond between a father and his son. Alternate translation: "my own son" or "my dear son" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

wants to take my life

This is a polite way to refer to killing someone. Alternate translation: "wants to kill me" (See: Euphemism)

How much more may this Benjamite now desire my ruin?

David uses this rhetorical question to express that he is not surprised that the man wants to kill him. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Of course this Benjamite desires my ruin!" or "I am not surprised this Benjamite desires my ruin as well!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

ULT

11 So David said to Abishai and to all his servants, "Look, my son, who was born from my body, wants to take my life. How much more may this Benjamite now desire my ruin? Leave him alone and let him curse, for Yahweh has commanded him to do it.

UST

11 Then David said to Abishai and to all his officials, "You know that my own son is trying to kill me. So it is not surprising that this man from the tribe of Benjamin is also trying to kill me. Just ignore him, and allow him to curse me. Yahweh has told him to do that.

desire my ruin

Here David describes the man's desire to kill him as if David were something that the man wanted to ruin. Alternate translation: "desire me to be killed" or "desire to kill me" (See: Metaphor)

Leave him alone and let him curse

Here the phrase "leave him alone" means to not stop him from what he is doing. Alternate translation: "Do not stop him from cursing me" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Yahweh
- curse, cursed, cursing
- David
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- seek, search, look for
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Yahweh
- curse, cursed, cursing
- David
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- seek, search, look for

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

2 Samuel 16:12

will look at

Here "looking" means "considering." Alternate translation: "will consider" (See: Idiom)

the misery unleashed on me

Here David speaks of misery as if it were a dangerous animal that the Benjamite unleashed on him. (See: Personification)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- return

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- return

ULT

12 Perhaps Yahweh will look at the misery unleashed on me, and repay me with good for his cursing me today."

UST

12 Perhaps Yahweh will see that I am having all this trouble, and some day he will repay me by blessing me in return for this man cursing me today."

2 Samuel 16:13

Shimei went beside him up on the hillside

Shimei was walking parallel to David and his men, though Shimei was up higher on the hillside.

Translation Words - ULT

- curse, cursed, cursing
- David
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- curse, cursed, cursing
- David
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

ULT

13 So David and his men traveled on the road, while Shimei went beside him up on the hillside, cursing and throwing dust and stones at him as he went.

UST

13 Then David and those who were with him walked along the road, and Shimei continued walking along the hillside near him. While he walked along, he cursed David and threw stones and dirt at him.

2 Samuel 16:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

14 Then the king and all the people who were with him became weary, and he rested when they stopped for the night.

UST

14 When David and those stopped traveling that evening, they were very tired. So they rested.

2 Samuel 16:15

Ahithophel

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 15:12. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- people, people group,

ULT

15 As for Absalom and all the men of Israel who were with him, they came to Jerusalem, and Ahithophel was with him.

UST

15 While that was happening, Absalom and all the Israelites who were with him had arrived in Jerusalem. Ahithophel had also arrived there.

2 Samuel 16:16

Hushai

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 15:32. (See: How to Translate Names)

It came about

"It happened that." This phrase is used to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

Arkite

See how you translated the name of this people group in 2 Samuel 15:32. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive (2)
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive (2)
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

16 It came about when Hushai the Arkite, David's friend, had come to Absalom, that Hushai said to Absalom, "Long live the king! Long live the king!"

UST

16 When David's friend Hushai came to Absalom, he said to Absalom, "I desire that the king will live a long time! May you live for many years!"

2 Samuel 16:17

loyalty

a strong feeling of support and love

Is this your loyalty to your friend? Why did you not go with him?

These rhetorical questions are asked to criticize Hushai. They can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You have been a loyal friend to David; you should have gone with him." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- walk, walked

ULT
17 Absalom said to Hushai, "Is this your loyalty to your friend? Why did you not go with him?"

UST
17 Absalom said to Hushai, "You have been loyal to your friend David for a long time. So why did you not go with him instead of coming to me?"

2 Samuel 16:18

the one whom Yahweh

Hushai is referring to Absalom.

the one whom...that is the man...with him

Here Hushai is referring to Absalom in the third person to take emphasize off of him and place it on Yahweh and the people who chose him. This can be written in second person. Alternate translation: "you are the one whom...you are the man...with you" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,

ULT

18 Hushai said to Absalom, "No! Instead, the one whom Yahweh and this people and all the men of Israel have chosen, that is the man to whom I will belong, and I will stay with him.

UST

18 Hushai replied, "It is right for me to serve the one whom Yahweh and these people and all the other people of Israel have chosen to be their king. So I will stay with you.

2 Samuel 16:19

what man should I serve? Should I not serve in the presence of his son?

Hushai asks these rhetorical questions to emphasize that he wants to serve Absalom. They can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I should serve only David's son, so I will serve in his presence." or "I should serve you, for you are David's son." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

19 Also, what man should I serve? Should I not serve in the presence of his son? As I have served in your father's presence, I will serve in your presence."

UST

19 Besides, whom should I serve? Why should I not serve my master's son? Just as I have served your father, even so, I will serve you."

2 Samuel 16:20

Ahithophel

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 15:12. (See: How to Translate Names)

2 Samuel 16:21

Go into your father's slave wives

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "Have sexual relations with your father's slave wives" (See: Euphemism)

to keep the palace

The phrase "to keep" means to take care of. Alternate translation: "to take care of the palace" (See: Idiom)

become a stench to your father

Ahithophel speaks of Absalom offending his father as if he would become something that had a strong and offensive odor. Alternate translation: "become offensive to your father" or "greatly insulted father" (See: Metaphor)

Then the hands of all who are with you will be strong

Here the people who followed Absalom are referred to by their hands. The news will strengthen the peoples' loyalty to Absalom and encourage them. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "The news of this will strengthen the loyalty of all who follow you" (See: Synecdoche and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

21 Ahithophel answered Absalom, "Go into your father's slave wives whom he has left to keep the palace, and all Israel will hear that you have become a stench to your father. Then the hands of all who are with you will be strong."

UST

21 Ahithophel replied, "Your father left some of his slave wives in the palace to take care of it. You should sleep with them. When everyone in Israel hears that you have done that, they will realize that you hold your father in contempt. Then all those who are with you will be very encouraged."

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather (2)
- hand
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather (2)
- hand
- house

2 Samuel 16:22

they spread

"they set up"

Absalom went in to his father's slave wives

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "Absalom had sexual relations with his father's slave wives" (See: Euphemism)

in the sight of all Israel

This means that people were able to see the tent and Absalom walking in and out of the tent with the women. The phrase "all of Israel" is a generalization, for only people near the palace could see it. Alternate translation: "where the Israelites could see him go into the tent" (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

22 So they spread for Absalom a tent on the top of the palace, and Absalom went in to his father's slave wives in the sight of all Israel.

UST

22 So they set up a tent for Absalom on the roof of the palace. And Absalom went into the tent and slept with his father's slave wives, one by one, and everyone could see them going into the tent.

2 Samuel 16:23

Now the advice of Ahithophel...was as if a man heard

Here the author compare how much people trusted Ahithophel's advice with how much they would trust advice directly from God. Alternate translation: "Now people trusted the advice of Ahithophel in those days in the same way they would have trusted it if had come" (See: Simile)

as if a man heard from the mouth of God himself

Here God's mouth represents himself and emphasizes his speech. Alternate translation: "as if God had said it with his own mouth" or "as if a man heard it spoken by God himself" (See: Synecdoche and Reflexive Pronouns)

all of Ahithophel's advice was viewed by both David and Absalom

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "both David and Absalom viewed all of Ahithophel's advice"

was viewed

"was thought of"

ULT

23 Now the advice of Ahithophel that he gave in those days was as if a man heard from the mouth of God himself. That was how all of Ahithophel's advice was viewed by both David and Absalom.

UST

23 In those days, people accepted what Ahithophel recommended as though he was speaking the words of God. So just as David had always accepted what Ahithophel said, now Absalom did also.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Translation Words - UST

- God
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

2 Samuel 17

2 Samuel 17 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Confusion

Ahithophel gives good advise to Absalom, but Hushai confuses Absalom. God is using the misleading advice to protect David, his king.

2 Samuel 17:1

Ahithophel

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 15:12. (See: How to Translate Names)

twelve thousand men

"12,000 men" (See: Numbers)

arise and

"begin to"

Translation Words - ULT

• David

Translation Words - UST

• David

2 Samuel 17:2

come on

"come to"

weary and weak

These words mean basically the same thing and are used together to emphasize how weak David was. Alternate translation: "weak" (See: Doublet)

will surprise him with fear

Here the word "fear" can be expressed with the adjective "afraid." Alternate translation: "will surprise him and make him afraid" (See: Abstract Nouns)

I will attack only the king

It is implied that he intends to kill the king. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "I will kill only the king" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- hand
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

2 I will come on him while he is weary and weak and will surprise him with fear. The people who are with him will flee, and I will attack only the king.

UST

2 We will attack him while he is tired and discouraged, and make him very afraid. Everyone with him will run away. We only need to kill the king.

2 Samuel 17:3

bring back all the people

This refers to all of the people who were with David. Alternate translation: "bring back all of the people who were with him" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

like a bride coming to her husband

Here Ahithophel speaks of the peoples' happiness by comparing it to a bride's happiness. Alternate translation: "and they will come happily, like a bride is happy when she comes to her husband" or "and they will come happily" (See: Simile)

be at peace

This means to have peace or to live peacefully. Alternate translation: "live peacefully" (See: Idiom)

under you

This refers to being under the king's authority. Alternate translation: "under your authority" (See: Metonymy)

> **ULT**
>
> **3** I will bring back all the people to you, like a bride coming to her husband, and all the people will be at peace under you."
>
> **UST**
>
> **3** Then we will bring back all his soldiers to you, and they will come happily. You need to kill only one man—David, and then all trouble will be over."

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- people, people group, (2)
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- seek, search, look for
- return

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- people, people group, (2)
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- seek, search, look for
- return

2 Samuel 17:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- elder, older, old

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- elder, older, old

ULT

4 What Ahithophel said pleased Absalom and all the elders of Israel.

UST

4 Absalom and all the Israelite leaders who were with him thought that what Ahithophel said would be good to do.

2 Samuel 17:5

Hushai the Arkite

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 15:32.

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out

ULT

5 Then Absalom said, "Now call Hushai the Arkite, too, and let us hear what he says."

UST

5 But Absalom said, "Summon Hushai also, and we will hear what he suggests."

2 Samuel 17:6

Ahithophel

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 15:12.

ULT

6 When Hushai had come to Absalom, Absalom explained to him what Ahithophel had said and then asked Hushai, "Should we do what Ahithophel has said? If not, tell us what you advise."

UST

6 So when Hushai arrived, Absalom told him what Ahithophel had suggested. Then he asked Hushai, "What do you think we should do? If you do not think that we should do what Ahithophel advises, tell us what you think that we should do."

2 Samuel 17:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

ULT

7 So Hushai said to Absalom, "The advice that Ahithophel has given this time is not good."

UST

7 Hushai replied, "This time what Ahithophel has suggested is not good advice.

2 Samuel 17:8

they are like a bear robbed of her cubs

The anger of the soldiers here is being compared to that of a mother bear who cubs are taken from her. Alternate translation: "they are angry, like a mother bear whose cubs have been take from her" or "they are very angry" (See: Simile)

a bear

a large furry animal that walks on four legs and has sharp claws and teeth

is a man of war

This means that his has fought in many battles and knows well the ways of war. Alternate translation: "has fought in many battles" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

8 Hushai added, "You know your father and his men are strong warriors, and that they are bitter, and they are like a bear robbed of her cubs in a field. Your father is a man of war; he will not sleep with the army tonight.

UST

8 You know that your father and the men who are with him are strong soldiers, and that now they are very angry, like a mother bear whose cubs have been stolen from her. Furthermore, your father knows how to wage war because he has fought in many battles. He will not stay with his troops during the night.

2 Samuel 17:9

Look

Here this word is used to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

pit

a deep hole in the ground

or in some other place

This is another place he may be hiding. Alternate translation: "or hidden in some other place" (See: Ellipsis)

when some of your men have been killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when his soldiers kill some of your men" (See: Active or Passive)

A slaughter has taken place among the soldiers who follow Absalom

The noun "slaughter" means an event where many people are brutally killed. This can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "Many of the soldiers who follow Absalom have been slaughtered" or "The enemy soldiers have killed many of the soldiers who follow Absalom" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,

ULT

9 Look, right now he is probably hidden in some pit or in some other place. It will happen that when some of your men have been killed at the beginning of an attack, that whoever hears it will say, 'A slaughter has taken place among the soldiers who follow Absalom.'

UST

9 Right now he is probably already hiding in one of the pits, or in some other place. If his soldiers start to attack your soldiers, and if they kill some of them, whoever hears about that will say, 'Many of the soldiers with Absalom have been killed!'

2 Samuel 17:10

whose hearts are like the heart of a lion

Here the soldiers are refers to by their "hearts." Also, their strong bravery is compared to that of a lion's. Alternate translation: "who are as brave as lions" or "who are very brave" (See: Synecdoche and Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

10 Then even the bravest soldiers, whose hearts are like the heart of a lion, will be afraid because all Israel knows that your father is a mighty man, and that the men who are with him are very strong.

UST

10 Then your other soldiers, even if they are as fearless as lions, they will become very afraid. Do not forget that everyone in Israel knows that your father is a great soldier, and that the soldiers who are with him are also very brave.

2 Samuel 17:11

that all Israel should be gathered together to you

This can be stated in active form. Also, here "all Israel" represents only the Israelite soldiers. Alternate translation: "that you should gather together all of the Israelite soldiers" (See: Active or Passive and Synecdoche)

from Dan to Beersheba

This phrase means from the northern border of Israel to the southern border. Alternate translation: "from the whole nation of Israel" (See: Merism)

as numerous as the sands that are by the sea

This is an exaggeration where all the grains of sand on a beach are compared to the number of Israelite soldiers. Alternate translation: "so many that they can barely be counted" (See: Hyperbole and Simile)

that you go to battle in person

The phrase "in person" means to go yourself and not send someone else instead. Alternate translation: "then lead them yourself into battle" (See: Idiom)

ULT

11 So I advise you that all Israel should be gathered together to you, from Dan to Beersheba, as numerous as the sands that are by the sea, and that you go to battle in person.

UST

11 So what I suggest is that you call all the Israelite soldiers, from Dan in the far north to Beersheba in the far south. They will be as many as the grains of sand on the seashore. Wait until they come, and then you yourself should lead us into the battle.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- face, facial
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- face, facial
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- walk, walked

2 Samuel 17:12

come on him

This means to purposefully go to where he is and then to attack. (See: Idiom)

we will cover him as the dew falls on the ground

Absalom's army is described as covering David's army like the dew covers the ground in the morning. Alternate translation: "we will overwhelm and completely defeat David's army" (See: Simile)

dew

the fog or misty cloud of water that can fall onto the ground during the night, covering the ground and leaving it wet in the morning

We will not leave even one of his men...alive

This negative sentence is used for emphasis and can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "We will kill every one of his men" (See: Litotes)

him himself

Both these words refer to David. Alternate translation: "David himself" (See: Reflexive Pronouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- rest, rested, restless

Translation Words - UST

- rest, rested, restless

ULT

12 Then we will come on him wherever he may be found, and we will cover him as the dew falls on the ground. We will not leave even one of his men, or him himself, alive.

UST

12 We will find your father, wherever he is, and we will attack him from all sides, as dew covers all the ground. And neither he nor any of the soldiers who are with him will survive.

2 Samuel 17:13

then all Israel

This refers to Israel's soldiers, not to all of Israel. Alternate translation: "then all of our soldiers" (See: Synecdoche)

will bring ropes to that city and we will drag it into the river

This means that the soldiers would tear down the city walls and drag the pieces to river. Alternate translation: "will destroy the city and drag the stones to the river with ropes" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

until there is no longer even a small stone found there

ULT

13 If he retreats into a city, then all Israel will bring ropes to that city and we will drag it into the river, until there is no longer even a small stone found there."

UST

13 If he escapes into some city, all our soldiers will bring ropes and pull that city down into the valley. As a result, not one stone will be left there on top of the hill where that city was!"

This is an exaggeration to describe how completely they will destroy the city. The would not literally sweep away every small stone from the city. Alternate translation: "until the city is completely destroyed" (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

2 Samuel 17:14

Hushai the Arkite

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 15:32. Arkite is the name of a people group.

Ahithophel

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 15:12.

the rejection of Ahithophel's good advice

The word "rejection" can be expressed with the verb "reject." Alternate translation: "for the men of Israel to reject Ahithophel's good advice" (See: Abstract Nouns)

to bring destruction on Absalom

To "bring" something on someone means to cause it to happen to them. Alternate translation: "to cause a disaster to happen to Absalom" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

ULT

14 Then Absalom and the men of Israel said, "Hushai the Arkite's advice is better than Ahithophel's." Yahweh had ordained the rejection of Ahithophel's good advice in order to bring destruction on Absalom.

UST

14 Absalom and all the other Israelite men who were with him said, "What Hushai suggests is better than what Ahithophel suggested." The reason that happened was that Yahweh had determined that if they would accept the good advice that Ahithophel had given them, they would have been able to defeat David. But as a result of their doing what Hushai suggested, Yahweh would cause a disaster to happen to Absalom.

2 Samuel 17:15

Zadok...Abiathar

See how you translated these men's names in 2 Samuel 15:24. (See: How to Translate Names)

in such and such a way

This phrase, meaning "like this," refers to what Ahithophel advised Absalom earlier beginning in 2 Samuel 17:1. (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- elder, older, old
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- elder, older, old
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

ULT

15 Then Hushai said to Zadok and to Abiathar the priests, "Ahithophel advised Absalom and the elders of Israel in such and such a way, but I have advised something else.

UST

15 Then Hushai told the two priests, Zadok and Abiathar, what both he and Ahithophel had suggested to Absalom and the Israelite leaders.

2 Samuel 17:16

the fords of the Arabah

A ford is a shallow part of a river where people can walk across. The Arabah is the land along both sides of the Jordan River.

by all means

This means to make sure that you do something. Alternate translation: "be sure to" or "make sure that you" (See: Idiom)

the king will be swallowed up

Here the king and his people being killed is describes as if they were "swallowed" by their enemy. Alternate translation: "the king will be killed" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

16 Now then, go quickly and report to David; say to him, 'Do not camp tonight at the fords of the Arabah, but by all means cross over, or the king will be swallowed up along with all the people who are with him.'"

UST

16 Then he said to them, "Send a message quickly to David. Tell him to not stay at the place where people walk across the river, near the wilderness. Instead, he and his soldiers must cross the Jordan River immediately, in order that they will not be killed."

2 Samuel 17:17

Jonathan...Ahimaaz

See how you translated these men's names in 2 Samuel 15:27. (See: How to Translate Names)

When the message came

Here the "message" is spoken of as coming to them, when really it is the woman who came to then bringing the message. Alternate translation: "When she brought them a message" (See: Metonymy)

spring of Rogel

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

17 Now Jonathan and Ahimaaz were staying at the spring of Rogel. A female servant used to go and inform them what they needed to know, for they could not risk being seen going into the city. When the message came, then they were to go and tell King David.

UST

17 The priest's two sons, Jonathan and Ahimaaz, were waiting at the spring at En Rogel, outside Jerusalem. They did not dare to enter the city, because if someone saw them, he would report it to Absalom. While they were at En Rogel, a female servant of the two priests would frequently go to them and report to them what was happening, and then they would go and report it to King David.

2 Samuel 17:18

this time

"one time"

So Jonathan and Ahimaaz went away

It is implied that they found out that the young man had told Absalom about them being there. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Jonathan and Ahimaaz found out what the young man had done, so they went away" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Bahurim

This is the name of a small town. (See: How to Translate Names)

they descended

"they lowered themselves and hid"

Translation Words - ULT

- court, courtyard
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- court, courtyard
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

18 But a young man saw them this time and told Absalom. So Jonathan and Ahimaaz went away quickly and came to the house of a man in Bahurim, who had a well in his courtyard, into which they descended.

UST

18 But a young man saw them, and went and reported it to Absalom. They found out what the young man had done, so both of them left quickly and went to stay in the house of a man in the city of Bahurim. That man had a well in his courtyard, so the two men went down into the well to hide.

2 Samuel 17:19

Jonathan...Ahimaaz

See how you translated these men's names in 2 Samuel 15:27. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- face, facial
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

19 The man's wife took the covering for the well and spread it over the well's opening, and tossed grain over it, so no one knew Jonathan and Ahimaaz were in the well.

UST

19 The man's wife took a cloth and covered the mouth of the well, and then scattered grain on top of it order than no one would even suspect that a well was there.

---

2 Samuel 17:20

the woman of the house

"the man's wife"

Ahimaaz...Jonathan

See how you translated these men's names in 2 Samuel 15:27. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- seek, search, look for
- return
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- seek, search, look for
- return
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

20 Absalom's men came to the woman of the house and said, "Where are Ahimaaz and Jonathan?" The woman told them, "They have crossed over the river." So after they had looked around and could not find them, they returned to Jerusalem.

UST

20 Some of Absalom's soldiers found out where the two men had gone. So they went to the house, and asked the woman, "Where are Ahimaaz and Jonathan?" She replied, "They went across the Jordan River." So the soldiers crossed the river and searched for them. But after they could not find them, they returned to Jerusalem.

2 Samuel 17:21

It came about

"It happened." This phrase marks the next event in the story line. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

cross quickly over the water

Here "the water" refers to the Jordan River. Alternate translation: "cross quickly over the river" (See: Metonymy)

has given such and such advice

The idiom "such and such" is used in the place of information that is already know by the reader. Here it refers to what Ahithophel advised Absalom beginning in 2 Samuel 17:1. This information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "has advised that Absalom send him with an army to attack you now" (See: Idiom and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- David
- David
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- walk, walked

ULT

21 It came about after they had left that Jonathan and Ahimaaz came up out of the well. They went to report to King David; they said to him, "Get up and cross quickly over the water because Ahithophel has given such and such advice about you."

UST

21 After they had gone, the two men came out of the well and went and reported to King David what had happened and what Ahithophel had suggested. Then they said to him, "Cross the Jordan River quickly!"

2 Samuel 17:22

By morning daylight not one of them had failed to cross over the Jordan

This negative sentence is used to emphasize that they all crossed the river. It can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "By morning daylight every one of them had crossed over the Jordan" (See: Litotes)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jordan River, Jordan
- Jordan River, Jordan
- David
- people, people group,
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Translation Words - UST

- Jordan River, Jordan
- Jordan River, Jordan
- David
- people, people group,
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

ULT

22 Then David arose and all the people who were with him, and they crossed over the Jordan. By morning daylight not one of them had failed to cross over the Jordan.

UST

22 So David and all his soldiers quickly started to cross the river, and by dawn they had all crossed to the other side.

2 Samuel 17:23

Ahithophel saw

"Ahithophel knew" or "Ahithophel realized"

his advice had not been followed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Absalom had not followed his advice" (See: Active or Passive)

saddled his donkey

placed a blanket or small leather seat on the donkey so he could sit on it

set his affairs in order

He prepared for his death by telling his family what to do after he died. Alternate translation: "he prepared for his death" (See: Idiom)

In this way

"And this is how"

was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they buried him" (See: Active or Passive)

<div style="border:1px dashed">

ULT

23 When Ahithophel saw that his advice had not been followed, he saddled his donkey and left. He went home to his own city, set his affairs in order, and hanged himself. In this way he died and was buried in the tomb of his father.

UST

23 When Ahithophel realized that Absalom was not going to do what he suggested, he put a saddle on his donkey and returned to his own city. He gave to his family instructions about his possessions, and then he hanged himself because he knew that Absalom would be defeated and that he would be considered a traitor and be killed. His body was buried in the tomb where his ancestors had been buried.

</div>

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- donkey, mule
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- donkey, mule
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- house
- house

2 Samuel 17:24

Mahanaim

Translate the name of this place the same as you did in 2 Samuel 2:8. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Jordan River, Jordan

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Jordan River, Jordan

ULT

24 Then David came to Mahanaim. As for Absalom, he crossed over the Jordan, he and all the men of Israel with him.

UST

24 David and his soldiers arrived at Mahanaim. At the same time, Absalom and all his soldiers also crossed the Jordan River.

2 Samuel 17:25

Amasa…Joab…Jether…Nahash

These are the names of men. See how you translated Joab and Zeruiah (Joab's mother) in 2 Samuel 2:13. (See: How to Translate Names)

Ishmaelite

This word means that the person is descended from Ishmael. Some versions say "Israelite" here. See the footnote. You may want to choose the word that is used in the majority language Bible in your area.

who went in to Abigail

This is a polite way of speaking of sexual relations. You may have to use other words in your translation. Alternate translation: "who had sexual relations with Abigail" (See: Euphemism)

Abigail…Zeruiah

These are the names of women. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

25 Absalom had set Amasa over the army instead of Joab. Amasa was the son of Jether the Ishmaelite [1] , who went in to Abigail, who was the daughter of Nahash and sister of Zeruiah, the mother of Joab.

UST

25 Now Absalom had appointed his cousin Amasa to be the commander of his army, instead of Joab. Amasa was the son of Jether, an Ishmaelite. Amasa's mother was Abigail, the daughter of Nahash and the sister of Joab's mother Zeruiah.

2 Samuel 17:26

Gilead

Translate the name of this place the same as you did in 2 Samuel 2:9.
(See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Gilead, Gileadite
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Gilead, Gileadite
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
26 Then Israel and Absalom camped in the land of Gilead.

UST
26 Absalom and his Israelite soldiers set up their tents in the region of Gilead.

2 Samuel 17:27

It came about

This phrase is used to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

Mahanaim...Rabbah...Lo Debar...Rogelim

These are the names of cities or places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Shobi...Nahash...Machir...Ammiel...Barzillai

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Ammonites...Gileadite

These are the names of people groups. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- Gilead, Gileadite
- David

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- Gilead, Gileadite
- David

ULT

27 It came about when David had come to Mahanaim, that Shobi son of Nahash from Rabbah of the Ammonites, and Machir son of Ammiel from Lo Debar, and Barzillai the Gileadite from Rogelim,

UST

27 When David and his soldiers arrived at Mahanaim, Shobi son of Nahash from the Ammonite city of Rabbah, and Machir son of Ammiel from the city of Lo Debar, and Barzillai from the city of Rogelim in Gilead came to them.

2 Samuel 17:28

sleeping mats and blankets

A mat is something soft to sleep on, and a blanket is a cloth covering for warmth.

flour

crushed grain made into powder and used to make bread

roasted

cooked with dry heat

beans

seeds that are cooked and eaten

lentils

a kind of seed that is cooked and eaten

2 Samuel 17:29

curds

milk that has soured and become solid

thirsty

in need of water or some other drink

Translation Words - ULT

- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- desert, wilderness
- people, people group,
- flock, herd
- honey, honeycomb

Translation Words - UST

- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- desert, wilderness
- people, people group,
- flock, herd
- honey, honeycomb

ULT

29 honey, butter, sheep, and milk curds, so that David and the people with him could eat. These men had said, "The people are hungry, weary, and thirsty in the wilderness."

17:25 [1] Scholars are divided about whether the word describing Jether should be "Ishmaelite" as it is in some ancient Greek versions, or "Israelite" as it is in the ancient Hebrew text. Some scholars believe that "Israelite" is a scribal error in the Hebrew. "Ishmaelite" is the word used in a parallel passage (See: 1 Chronicles 2:17), in both the ancient Hebrew and Greek texts.

UST

29 They brought honey and curds, sheep, and some cream for David and his soldiers to eat. They knew that David and his soldiers would be hungry and tired and thirsty from marching in the wilderness.

2 Samuel 18

2 Samuel 18 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter tells of the defeat and death of Absalom, ending this section on Absalom's rebellion.

Special concepts in this chapter

David's mercy

David reorganized his army and sent them out to battle, but told them to be merciful to Absalom. When David's army defeated Absalom's army, Absalom fled on a mule, but his hair caught in a tree limb and the mule ran on, leaving him hanging. One of David's soldiers saw him and told Joab. Joab went and killed him. When David heard about this he mourned for his son, Absalom. (See: mercy, merciful)

2 Samuel 18:1

David counted the soldiers who were with him and appointed

David did not count all of the people himself, rather other men counted them. Alternate translation: "David commanded for the soldiers who were with him to be counted and he appointed" or "David arranged the soldiers who were with him and appointed" (See: Metonymy)

captains of thousands and captains of hundreds

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these captains led. Alternate translation: "captains of 1,000 soldiers and captains of 100 soldiers" or 2) the words translated as "thousands" and "hundreds" do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: "captains of large military divisions and captains of smaller military divisions" (See: Numbers)

captains

A captain is a person who is in authority over a group of soldiers.

ULT

1 David counted the soldiers who were with him and appointed captains of thousands and captains of hundreds over them.

UST

1 David arranged his soldiers for the battle. He divided them into groups, and he appointed a commander for each one hundred soldiers and a commander for each one thousand soldiers.

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- appoint, appointed
- David
- people, people group,
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- appoint, appointed
- David
- people, people group,
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

2 Samuel 18:2

one-third...another third

"one-third of the army...another third of the army." A "third" is one part out of three equal parts. (See: Fractions)

Abishai...Zeruiah

See how you translated these men's names in 2 Samuel 2:18. (See: How to Translate Names)

Ittai

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 15:19. (See: How to Translate Names)

Gittite

This refers to a person from Gath, which is a Philistine city. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT

2 Then David sent out the army, one-third under the command of Joab, another third under the command of Abishai son of Zeruiah, Joab's brother, and still another third under the command of Ittai the Gittite. The king said to the army, "I will certainly go out with you myself, too."

UST

2 He sent them out in three groups. Joab commanded one group, Joab's brother Abishai commanded a second group, and Ittai from Gath commanded the third group. David said to them, "I myself will go with you to battle."

I will certainly go out with you myself, too

This means that he will go out with them to battle. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "I myself will go with you to battle" or "I personally will go with you into battle" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- David
- hand
- hand
- hand
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- David
- hand
- hand
- hand
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

2 Samuel 18:3

half of us

The word "half" refers to one out of two equal parts. (See: Numbers)

you are worth ten thousand of us

This means that the enemy army considering killing David of greater worth than killing 10,000 of the other men. The number 10,000 here is an exaggeration used to emphasize a very great number of people. Alternate translation: "they would rather kill you than to kill 10,000 of us" or "killing you is worth more to them than killing a great number of us" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Hyperbole)

ten thousand

"10,000" (See: Numbers)

that you be ready to help us from the city

David could help them from the city by advising them and sending men to help them. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "that you stay here in the city and send help to us" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

³ But the men said, "You must not go to battle, for if we flee away they will not care about us, or if half of us die they will not care. But you are worth ten thousand of us! Therefore it is better that you be ready to help us from the city."

UST

³ But his soldiers said, "No, we will not allow you to go with us. If they force us to all run away, they will not be concerned about us. Or if they kill half of us, they will not care about that, either. To them, capturing you is more important than capturing ten thousand of us. So it would be better that you stay here in the city and send help to us."

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- heart
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- heart
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

2 Samuel 18:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- hand
- people, people group,
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- hand
- people, people group,
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

4 So the king answered them, "I will do whatever seems best to you." The king stood by the city gate while all the army went out by hundreds and by thousands.

UST

4 The king replied to them, "Very well, I will do whatever seems best to you." So he stood at the city gate and watched while his soldiers marched out, group by group.

2 Samuel 18:5

Abishai

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 2:18. (See: How to Translate Names)

Ittai

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 15:19. (See: How to Translate Names)

Deal gently for my sake with the young man, with Absalom

"For my sake, do not harm the young man, Absalom." The phrase "Deal gently" means to be kind to someone and not to harm them.

my sake

"my well-being" or "my account"

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- people, people group,
- chief
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- people, people group,
- chief
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

5 The king commanded Joab, Abishai, and Ittai saying, "Deal gently for my sake with the young man, with Absalom." All the people heard that the king had given the captains this command about Absalom.

UST

5 While they were leaving, the king commanded Joab, Abishai, and Ittai, "For my sake, do not harm my son Absalom!" And all the troops heard about this, that David had given this order to the three commanders.

2 Samuel 18:6

went out into the countryside against Israel

This means that they went out and fought against them in battle. Alternate translation: "went out into the countryside and fought against Israel" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

against Israel

Here "Israel" refers to their soldiers, not all of the Israelites. Alternate translation: "against the Israelite soldiers" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- people, people group,

ULT

6 So the army went out into the countryside against Israel; the battle spread into the forest of Ephraim.

UST

6 So the army went out to fight against the Israelite soldiers who were with Absalom. They fought the battle in the forest where people from the tribe of Ephraim lived.

2 Samuel 18:7

The army of Israel was defeated there before the soldiers of David

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "There the soldiers of David defeated the army of Israel" (See: Active or Passive)

a great slaughter

an event where many people are brutally killed

twenty thousand men

"20,000 men" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- David
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- David
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

7 The army of Israel was defeated there before the soldiers of David; there was a great slaughter there that day of twenty thousand men.

UST

7 David's soldiers defeated Absalom's soldiers. They killed twenty thousand of them.

2 Samuel 18:8

more men were consumed by the forest than by the sword

Here "the forest" is described as if it were alive and could act. "The sword" refers to David's soldiers who fought with swords. Alternate translation: "dangerous things in the forest killed more men than David's soldiers killed with their swords" (See: Personification and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- devour
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- devour
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

8 The battle spread throughout the whole countryside, and more men were consumed by the forest than by the sword.

UST

8 The battle was fought all over that area, and the number of men who died because of dangerous things in the forest was greater than the number of men who were killed in the battle.

2 Samuel 18:9

Absalom happened to meet some of David's soldiers

This is an event that happened during the battle. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "During the battle, Absalom happened to meet some of David's soldiers" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

his head was caught up in the tree branches

Absalom had long hair that got caught in the tree branches. Alternate translation: "his hair was caught in the tree branches" (See: Metonymy)

dangling

hanging or swinging loosely

between the ground and the sky

"in the air"

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- David
- head
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- David
- head
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

9 Absalom happened to meet some of David's soldiers. Absalom was riding his mule, and the mule went under the thick branches of a large oak tree, and his head was caught up in the tree branches. He was left dangling between the ground and the sky while the mule he was riding kept going.

UST

9 During the battle, Absalom suddenly came near some of David's soldiers. Absalom was riding on his mule, and when the mule went under the thick branches of a large oak tree, Absalom's head was caught in the branches. The mule kept going, but Absalom was left dangling in the air.

2 Samuel 18:10

Look

Here this word is used to draw a person's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

Translation Words - ULT

- hang, hung

Translation Words - UST

- hang, hung

2 Samuel 18:11

Why did you not strike him down to the ground?

This rhetorical question means that he should have killed him. This question can be written as a statement. The phrase "strike down" means to kill. Alternate translation: "You should have struck him down to the ground!" or "You should have killed him immediately!" (See: Rhetorical Question and Euphemism)

ten silver shekels

This can be written in modern units. Alternate translation: "ten silver coins" or "110 grams of silver" (See: Biblical Money)

belt

This is a special belt that shows people that someone is a great soldier and should be honored.

Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- silver
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

11 Joab said to the man who told him about Absalom, "Look! You saw him! Why did you not strike him down to the ground? I would have given you ten silver shekels and a belt."

UST

11 Joab said to the man, "What? You say that you saw him hanging there, so why did you not kill him immediately? If you had killed him, I would have given you ten pieces of silver and a soldier's belt!"

2 Samuel 18:12

a thousand silver shekels

"1,000 silver shekels." This can be stated in modern units. Alternate translation: "1,000 silver coins" or "11 kilograms of silver" (See: Biblical Money and Numbers)

would not have reached out my hand against the king's son

The phrase "reached out my hand" means to attack. Alternate translation: "would not have attacked the king's son" (See: Idiom)

No one must touch

Here "touching" refers to "harming." Alternate translation: "No none must harm" or "Do not harm" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- pray, prayer
- hand
- hand
- silver
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- son
- pray, prayer
- hand
- hand
- silver
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

ULT

12 The man replied to Joab, "Even if I received a thousand silver shekels, still I would not have reached out my hand against the king's son, because we all heard the king command you, Abishai, and Ittai, saying, 'No one must touch the young man Absalom.'

UST

12 The man replied to Joab, "Even if you gave me a thousand pieces of silver, I would not have done anything to harm the king's son. We all heard the king command you and Abishai and Ittai: 'For my sake, do not harm my son Absalom!'

2 Samuel 18:13

a falsehood

The word "falsehood" can be expressed with a verb phrase. Also, this refers to disobeying the king's command. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "doing something that is wrong" or "by disobeying the king" (See: Abstract Nouns and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

there is nothing hidden from the king

Here the man speaks about how the king knows about almost everything that happens as if everything were a physical object he knew the location of. Alternate translation: "there is nothing that the king does not know" or "the king hears about everything that happens" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

13 If I had risked my life by a falsehood (and there is nothing hidden from the king), you would have abandoned me."

UST

13 If I had disobeyed the king and killed Absalom, the king would have heard about it, because the king hears about everything, and even you would not have defended me!"

2 Samuel 18:14

I will not wait for you

Joab meant that he should not continue talking to the man. Alternate translation: "I will not waste anymore time talking to you" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

heart of Absalom

Here Absalom's heart refers to his chest or upper body. Alternate translation: "chest" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- heart
- heart
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- heart
- heart
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

14 Then Joab said, "I will not wait for you." So Joab took three javelins in his hand and thrust them through the heart of Absalom, while he was still alive and hanging from the oak.

UST

14 Joab said, "I am not going to waste time talking to you!" Then he took three spears, went to where Absalom was, and thrust them into Absalom's chest while he was still alive, dangling from the oak tree.

2 Samuel 18:15

armor

This refers to both the armor he would wear to protect himself and to his weapons. Alternate translation: "armor and weapons" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

15 Then ten young men who carried Joab's armor surrounded Absalom, attacked him, and killed him.

UST

15 Then ten young men who carried weapons for Joab surrounded Absalom and finished killing him.

2 Samuel 18:16

Then Joab blew the trumpet, and the army returned from pursuing Israel, for Joab held back the army

This describes what Joab commanded by blowing the trumpet. Alternate translation: "Then Joab blew the trumpet to call back the army, and the army returned from pursuing Israel" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

returned from pursuing Israel

Here "Israel" refers to the Israelite army. Alternate translation: "returned from pursuing the Israelite army" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- trumpet, trumpeters
- return
- punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- trumpet, trumpeters
- return
- punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

ULT

16 Then Joab blew the trumpet, and the army returned from pursuing Israel, for Joab held back the army.

UST

16 Then Joab blew his trumpet to signal that they should not fight anymore, and his soldiers returned from pursuing Absalom's men.

2 Samuel 18:17

They took Absalom and threw him

"They took Absalom's body and threw it"

they buried his body under a very large pile of stones

After putting his body in the pit they covered it with a pile of stones. This can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "they covered his body with a huge pile of stones" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

while all Israel fled

Here "all Israel" refers to the Israelite soldiers. The word "fled" means "ran away." Alternate translation: "while all the Israelite soldiers ran away" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites

ULT

17 They took Absalom and threw him into a large pit in the forest; they buried his body under a very large pile of stones, while all Israel fled, every man to his own home.

UST

17 They took Absalom's body and threw it into a huge pit in the forest, and covered it with a huge pile of stones. Then all the remaining Israelite soldiers who had been with Absalom fled to their own homes.

2 Samuel 18:18

the King's Valley

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

to carry along the memory of my name

Absalom uses the phrase "my name" to refer to himself and his family line. Alternate translation: "to carry on my family name, by which people would remember me" (See: Metonymy)

so it is called Absalom's Monument to this very day

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so people called it Absalom's Monument from that day on" (See: Active or Passive)

to this very day

This refers to the present time when this book of the Bible was written.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- name
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- declare, proclaim, announce
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- son
- name
- name
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- declare, proclaim, announce
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

18 Now Absalom, while still alive, had built for himself a large stone pillar in the King's Valley, for he said, "I have no son to carry along the memory of my name." He named the pillar after his own name, so it is called Absalom's Monument to this very day.

UST

18 Absalom had no sons to preserve his family name because his sons had died while they were still young. So while Absalom was alive, he had built a monument to himself in the Valley of Kings near Jerusalem, in order that people would remember him. He put his name on the monument, and people still call it Absalom's Monument.

2 Samuel 18:19

Ahimaaz

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 15:27. (See: How to Translate Names)

run to the king with the good news

Here Ahimaaz speaks of running to go and tell the king the good news as if the good news were a object that he were carrying. Alternate translation: "run to tell the king the good news" (See: Metaphor)

the hand of his enemies

Here "hand" refers to control. Alternate translation: "the control of his enemies" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

19 Then Ahimaaz son of Zadok said, "Let me now run to the king with the good news, how Yahweh has rescued him from the hand of his enemies."

UST

19 After Absalom had been killed, Zadok's son Ahimaaz said to Joab, "Allow me to run to the king to tell him the good news that Yahweh has rescued him from the power of his enemies!"

2 Samuel 18:20

the bearer of news

"the one who tells the news"

you will bear no news

This refers to not bearing the news to the king. Alternate translation: "you will not tell the news to the king" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

20 Joab answered him, "You will not be the bearer of news today; you must do it another day. Today you will bear no news because the king's son is dead."

UST

20 But Joab said to him, "No, I will not allow you to take news to the king today. Some other day I will allow you to take some news, but not today. If you took news today it would not be good news for the king, because his son is dead."

2 Samuel 18:21

tell the king what you have seen

Joab is telling him to go and tell the king about the news of the battle.

Translation Words - ULT

- prostrate, worship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- prostrate, worship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

ULT

21 Then Joab said to a Cushite, "Go, tell the king what you have seen." The Cushite bowed down to Joab, and ran.

UST

21 Then Joab said to David's servant who was from Ethiopia, "You go and tell the king what you have seen." So the man from Ethiopia bowed in respect to Joab, and started to run.

2 Samuel 18:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

22 Then Ahimaaz son of Zadok said again to Joab, "Regardless of what may happen, please let me also run and follow the Cushite." Joab replied, "Why do you want to run, my son, seeing that you will have no reward for the news?"

UST

22 Then Ahimaaz said again to Joab, "Even though that man from Ethiopia is running, allow me to run behind him." Joab replied, "My boy, why do you want to do that? You will not receive any reward for your news!"

2 Samuel 18:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Translation Words - UST

• preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

ULT

23 "Whatever happens," said Ahimaaz, "I will run." So Joab answered him, "Run." Then Ahimaaz ran by the way of the plain, and outran the Cushite.

UST

23 But Ahimaaz replied, "That does not matter, I want to go." So Joab said, "Very well, then, go." So Ahimaaz ran along another road through the Valley of the Jordan and arrived where David was, before the man from Ethiopia arrived.

2 Samuel 18:24

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line and the beginning of a new part of the story.

raised his eyes

Here the watchman looking to see something is spoken of as if he lifted up his eyes. Alternate translation: "looked out beyond the city" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT

24 Now David was sitting between the inner and outer gates. The watchman had gone up to the roof of the gate to the wall and raised his eyes. As he looked, he saw a man approaching, running alone.

UST

24 David was sitting between the outer gate and the inner gate of the city. The watchman went up on top of the city wall and stood on the roof over the gates. He looked out and saw one man running alone.

2 Samuel 18:25

there is news in his mouth

Here the king speaks of the man having a message as if the news were an object sitting in his mouth. Alternate translation: "he has news to tell us" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

25 The watchman shouted out and told the king. Then the king said, "If he is alone, there is news in his mouth." The runner came closer and neared the city.

UST

25 The watchman called down and reported it to the king. The king said, "If he is alone, that indicates that he is bringing news." The man who was running continued to come closer.

2 Samuel 18:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

26 Then the watchman noticed another man running, and the watchman called to the gatekeeper; he said, "Look, there is another man running alone." The king said, "He is also bringing news."

UST

26 Then the watchman saw another man running. So he called down to the gatekeeper, "Look! There is another man running!" And the king said, "He also is bringing some good news."

2 Samuel 18:27

I think the running of the man in front is like the running of Ahimaaz son of Zadok

The watchman compares the way the man ran to the way Ahimaaz runs to suggest that it may be him. Alternate translation: "I think the man running in front is Ahimaaz son Zadok, because he runs like Ahimaaz" (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

27 So the watchman said, "I think the running of the man in front is like the running of Ahimaaz son of Zadok." The king said, "He is a good man and is coming with good news."

UST

27 The watchman said, "I think the first man must be Ahimaaz, because he is running as Ahimaaz runs." The king said, "Ahimaaz is a good man, and I am sure he is coming with good news."

2 Samuel 18:28

He bowed himself before the king with his face to the ground

He did this to honor the king. Alternate translation: "He bowed himself before the king with his face to the ground to honor the king" (See: Symbolic Action)

Blessed be Yahweh

"Praise Yahweh." Here "bless" means to praise.

the men who lifted up their hand against my master the king

Here Ahimaaz speaks of the men opposing the king as if they were raising their hands before him. Alternate translation: "the men who opposed and fought against my master the king" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- earth, earthen, earthly
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- earth, earthen, earthly
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

28 Then Ahimaaz called out and said to the king, "All is well." He bowed himself before the king with his face to the ground and said, "Blessed be Yahweh your God! He has delivered the men who lifted up their hand against my master the king."

UST

28 When Ahimaaz reached the king, he called out, "I hope that things will go well with you!" Then he prostrated himself on the ground in front of the king and said, "Your Majesty, praise Yahweh our God, who has rescued you from the men who were rebelling against you!"

2 Samuel 18:29

a great disturbance

This means that people were acting as though things were not right.

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

29 So the king replied, "Is it well with the young man Absalom?" Ahimaaz answered, "When Joab sent me, the king's servant, to you, king, I saw a great disturbance, but I did not know what it was."

UST

29 The king said, "Is the young man Absalom safe?" Ahimaaz did not want to answer that question, so he replied, "When Joab sent me, I saw that there was a lot of confusion, but I do not know what it was about."

2 Samuel 18:30

Turn aside and stand here

"Move out of the way" or "Stand aside"

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

30 Then the king said, "Turn aside and stand here." So Ahimaaz turned aside, and stood still.

UST

30 Then the king said, "Stand aside." So Ahimaaz stepped aside and stood there.

2 Samuel 18:31

rose up against

This means to oppose. Alternate translation: "opposed" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

31 Immediately then the Cushite arrived and said, "There is good news for my master the king, for Yahweh has avenged you today from all who rose up against you."

UST

31 Suddenly the man from Ethiopia arrived, and said, "Your Majesty, I have good news for you! Yahweh has enabled your soldiers to defeat all those who rebelled against you!"

2 Samuel 18:32

The enemies of my master the king,...should be as that young man is

The Cushite uses a comparison as a polite way to tell the king that Absalom is dead. This can be stated more directly. Alternate translation: "I would like all your enemies...to die the way that young man died" (See: Simile and Euphemism)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- adversary, enemy
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- adversary, enemy
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

32 Then the king said to the Cushite, "Is it well with the young man Absalom?" The Cushite answered, "The enemies of my master the king, and all who rise up against you to do harm to you, should be as that young man is."

UST

32 The king said to him, "Is the young man Absalom safe?" The man from Ethiopia replied, "Sir, I wish that what happened to him would happen to all of your enemies and to all those who rebel against you!"

2 Samuel 18:33

was deeply unnerved

"was very unhappy" or "was trembling with grief"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- son
- son
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- son
- son
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

33 Then the king was deeply unnerved, and he went up to the room over the gate and wept. As he went he grieved, "My son Absalom, my son, my son Absalom! I wish I had died instead of you, Absalom, my son, my son!"

UST

33 The king realized that he meant that Absalom was dead, so he became extremely distressed, and he went up to the room above the gateway and cried. While he was going up, he kept crying out, "O, my son Absalom! My son! O, my son Absalom, I desire that I had died instead of you!"

2 Samuel 19

2 Samuel 19 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

David told to stop mourning Absalom

Joab warned David that if he continued to mourn Absalom and not thank his army, they would all desert him. So David went out to encourage the soldiers. David was both a good father and a good leader.

David made king again

This chapter record the recognition that David was the true king of Israel. It is important to remember that even though Absalom had power for a while, David never stopped being the king.

The ten tribes and Judah argue over David

The ten tribes of Israel argued with the tribe of Judah about who would bring David across the river. The men of Judah answered the ten tribes very harshly. This may foreshadow, or give a glimpse of, the future civil war that would come to divide these two groups.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical questions

The people wanted David back as their king and expressed it in a rhetorical question: "So why are we not talking about bringing the king back?" David also used a question to persuade the people of Judah to bring him back: "You are my brothers, my flesh and bone. Why then are you the last to bring back the king?" (See: Rhetorical Question)

2 Samuel 19:1

Joab was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told Joab" (See: Active or Passive)

Look, the king is weeping

The word "Look" is used here to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen, the king is weeping"

Translation Words - ULT

- mourn, mourner, weeping
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- mourn, mourner, weeping
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT
[1] Joab was told, "Look, the king is weeping and mourning for Absalom."

UST
[1] Someone told Joab that the king was crying and mourning because Absalom had died.

2 Samuel 19:2

So the victory that day was turned into mourning for all the army

This means that the whole army mourned instead of celebrating. AT "So instead of celebrating victory that day, the whole army mourned" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

2 So the victory that day was turned into mourning for all the army, for the army heard it said that day, "The king is mourning for his son."

UST

2 All of David's soldiers heard that the king was mourning because Absalom was dead. So they became sad that they had defeated Absalom's men.

2 Samuel 19:3

like people who are ashamed sneak away when they run from battle

The author compares the way that the soldiers had to sneak back into the city to the way that soldiers sneak away when they are running away from battle. This emphasizes that they were made to feel ashamed. Alternate translation: "in the same way that people who had run away from battle would sneak away because they were ashamed" (See: Simile)

sneak

move without being seen by others

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- people, people group,

2 Samuel 19:4

The king covered his face

This is a way to express grief and mourning. Alternate translation: "The king showed his grief by covering his face" (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- cry, cry out, outcry
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- cry, cry out, outcry
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

4 The king covered his face and cried in a loud voice, "My son Absalom, Absalom, my son, my son!"

UST

4 The king covered his face with his hands and kept crying loudly, "O, my son Absalom! O, Absalom, my son! My son!"

2 Samuel 19:5

You have shamed the faces of all your soldiers today

Here the soldiers are referred to by their face to emphasize how they would have hid their faces because of their shame" Alternate translation: "You have caused all your soldiers to hide their faces in shame today" or "You have caused all of your soldiers to be ashamed today" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- son
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- son
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

5 Then Joab entered into the house to the king and said to him, "You have shamed the faces of all your soldiers today, who have saved your life today, and the lives of your sons and of your daughters, and the lives of your wives, and the lives of your slave wives,

UST

5 Joab entered the room where the king was, and said to the king, "Today you have caused your soldiers to be ashamed! You have humiliated the men who saved your life and the lives of your sons and daughters and your ordinary wives and your slave wives!

2 Samuel 19:6

nothing to you

This phrase is an exaggeration, but it expresses the very low value that David showed for the army. Alternate translation: "are worth very little to you" (See: Hyperbole)

if Absalom had lived, and we all had died, then that would have pleased you

The speaker is giving a hypothetical situation. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- love, beloved
- love, beloved
- just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- love, beloved
- love, beloved
- just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

6 because you love those who hate you, and you hate those who love you. For today you have shown that commanders and soldiers are nothing to you. Today I believe that if Absalom had lived, and we all had died, then that would have pleased you.

UST

6 It seems that you love those who hate you and that you hate those who love you. Everyone realizes now that your commanders and your officers are not at all important to you. If Absalom were still alive and we were all dead today, you would actually be happy.

2 Samuel 19:7

I swear by Yahweh

Joab is making a very strong oath. Alternate translation: "I swear, as surely as Yahweh is alive" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

if you do not go, not one man will remain with you

This means that only if David went would his soldiers remain with him. Alternate translation: "only if you go will any of your men remain with you" (See: Double Negatives)

not one man will remain with you

This refers to them remaining loyal to him. Alternate translation: "not one man will remain loyal to you" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

7 Now therefore get up and go out and speak kindly to your soldiers, for I swear by Yahweh, if you do not go, not one man will remain with you tonight. That would be worse for you than all the disasters that have ever happened to you from your youth until now."

UST

7 So now go and thank your soldiers for what they did. Because I solemnly declare that if you do not do that, none of them will still be with you by tomorrow morning. That would be worse for you than all the disasters that you have experienced since you were a boy."

2 Samuel 19:8

all the people were told

This is a generalization. It means most of the men. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "many of the men who were there heard others saying" (See: Hyperbole and Active or Passive)

Look, the king is sitting

The word "Look" is used here to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen, the king is sitting"

all the people

Here "the people" refer to the people who followed David. Here "all" is an generalization. It means a large number came and gathered around him. Alternate translation: "many of the people" (See: Hyperbole)

So Israel fled, every man to his home

Here "Israel" refers to the Israelite soldiers who followed Absalom. Alternate translation: "And every Israelite soldier fled to his own home" or "And all of the Israelite soldiers fled to their homes" (See: Synecdoche)

ULT

8 So the king got up and sat in the city gate, and all the people were told, "Look, the king is sitting in the gate," and all the people came before the king. So Israel fled, every man to his home.

UST

8 So the king got up and went and sat at the city gate. And all the people were told, "The king is sitting at the gate!" So they all came and gathered around him. Meanwhile, all of Absalom's men had gone home.

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

2 Samuel 19:9

out of the hand of our enemies

Here "hand" means control. Alternate translation: "from under the control of our enemies" or "from our enemies' control" (See: Metonymy)

out of the hand of the Philistines

Here "hand" means control. Alternate translation: "from under the control of the Philistines" or "from the Philistines' control" (See: Metonymy)

out of the land because of Absalom

This means that he had left the country fleeing from Absalom. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "out of the country fleeing from Absalom" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- save, saved, safe, salvation
- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- hand
- hand (2)
- adversary, enemy
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- save, saved, safe, salvation
- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- hand
- hand (2)
- adversary, enemy
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

9 All the people were arguing with each other throughout all the tribes of Israel saying, "The king rescued us out of the hand of our enemies, and he saved us out of the hand of the Philistines, but now he has run out of the land because of Absalom.

UST

9 Then all the people throughout the tribes of Israel started to quarrel among themselves. They said to each other, "The king rescued us from the people of Philistia and from our other enemies. But now he has fled from Absalom and left Israel!

2 Samuel 19:10

why do you say nothing about bringing the king back?

This means they should consider bringing David back now that Absalom was dead. The question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "we should be talking about bringing the king back." (See: Rhetorical Question)

the king

This refers to David.

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- tongue, language
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- tongue, language
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

10 Absalom, whom we anointed over us, has died in battle. So why do you say nothing about bringing the king back?"

UST

10 We appointed Absalom to be our king, but he died in the battle against David's soldiers. So why does someone not try to bring King David back?"

2 Samuel 19:11

sent to Zadok and to Abiathar

This means that David sent a messenger to Zadok and Abiathar. Alternate translation: "sent a messenger to Zadok and to Abiathar" (See: Idiom)

Why are you the last to bring the king back...to bring him back to his palace?

This rhetorical question is asked to rebuke the elders in Judah. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have been the first to favor the king and bring him back to the palace, not the people of the nation of Israel." (See: Rhetorical Question)

since the talk of all Israel favors the king, to bring

The noun "talk" can be expressed with the verb "talk" or "speak." Alternate translation: "since all Israel speaks favorably about the king and desires to bring" or "since what the people of Israel are saying is in the king's favor, to bring" (See: Abstract Nouns)

to bring the king back to his palace

Here restoring the king's authority to rule is spoken of as bringing him back to his palace. Alternate translation: "to restore the king's authority as king" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

11 King David sent to Zadok and to Abiathar the priests saying, "Speak to the elders of Judah saying, 'Why are you the last to bring the king back to his palace, since the talk of all Israel favors the king, to bring him back to his palace?

UST

11 King David found out what the people were saying. So he sent the two priests, Zadok and Abiathar, to say to the leaders of Judah, "The king says that he has heard that all the Israelite people want him to be king again. And he says, 'Why should you be the last ones to bring me back to my palace?

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Judea
- David
- elder, older, old
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Judea
- David
- elder, older, old
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- house
- house

2 Samuel 19:12

You are my brothers, my flesh and bone

The king uses these to phrases to emphasize that they are closely related. Being or having the same flesh is a metaphor for belonging to the same family or tribe. Alternate translation: "You are my brothers, and we have the same flesh and bone" or "You are my brothers, my close relatives" (See: Metaphor)

Why then are you the last to bring back the king?

This is the second rhetorical question here and it is also a rebuke for the elders of Judah. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have been the first, not the last, to bring back the king." (See: Rhetorical Question)

ULT

12 You are my brothers, my flesh and bone. Why then are you the last to bring back the king?'

UST

12 You are my relatives. We have the same ancestor. So why should you be the last ones to bring me back?'"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- restore, restoration
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- restore, restoration
- king, kingdom, kingship

2 Samuel 19:13

Amasa

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 17:25. (See: How to Translate Names)

Are you not my flesh and my bone?

David uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that they are related. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are my flesh and my bones." (See: Rhetorical Question)

my flesh and my bone

Here David speaks of them being related by saying that they have the same flesh and bones. See how you translated a similar phrase in 2 Samuel 19:12. Alternate translation: "my relative" (See: Metaphor)

God do so to me

This is an idiom that means for God to kill him. Alternate translation: "May God kill me" (See: Idiom)

ULT

13 Then say to Amasa, 'Are you not my flesh and my bone? God do so to me, and more also, if you are not captain of my army from now on in the place of Joab.'"

UST

13 And say to Amasa, "You are one of my relatives. I hope that God will kill me if I do not appoint you to be, from now on, the commander of my army instead of Joab."

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- God
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

2 Samuel 19:14

he won the hearts

Here the mens' loyalty is referred to as their "hearts." Alternate translation: "he won the loyalty" (See: Metonymy)

as one man

This speaks of the men being united in their loyalty to the king as if they were one man with the same mind. Alternate translation: "and they were united together" or "they were united in their loyalty to the king" (See: Metaphor)

They sent to the king

This means that they sent a messenger to the king. Alternate translation: "They sent a messenger to the king" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- restore, restoration
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- restore, restoration
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

14 So he won the hearts of all the men of Judah as one man. They sent to the king saying, "Return, you and all your men."

UST

14 By sending that message to them, David convinced all the people of Judah that they should be loyal to him. So they sent a message to the king, saying, "We want you and all your officials to return here."

2 Samuel 19:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jordan River, Jordan
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Judah
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return

Translation Words - UST

- Jordan River, Jordan
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Judah
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return

ULT

15 So the king returned and came to the Jordan. Now the men of Judah came to Gilgal to go to meet the king and then to bring the king across the Jordan.

UST

15 So the king and his officials started back toward Jerusalem. When they reached the Jordan River, the people of Judah came there to Gilgal to meet the king, and to escort him across the river.

2 Samuel 19:16

Gera

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Bahurim

Translate the name of this place the same as you did in 2 Samuel 3:16. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judea
- David
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Judea
- David
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

16 Shimei son of Gera, the Benjamite, who was from Bahurim, hurried down with the men of Judah to meet King David.

UST

16 Shimei, the man from the tribe of Benjamin, also came down quickly to the river with the people of Judah to meet King David.

2 Samuel 19:17

Ziba

This is the name of a man. Translate as you did in 2 Samuel 9:2. (See: How to Translate Names)

one thousand men...fifteen sons...twenty servants

"1,000 men...15 sons...20 servants" (See: Numbers)

in the presence of the king

This means that the king was there and was aware of what was happening. Alternate translation: "at the place where the king was" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jordan River, Jordan
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Jordan River, Jordan
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

17 There were one thousand men from Benjamin with him, and Ziba the servant of Saul, and his fifteen sons and twenty servants with him. They crossed through the Jordan in the presence of the king.

UST

17 There were a thousand men from the tribe of Benjamin who came with him. Ziba, who had been the servant of Saul, also hurried down to the Jordan River, bringing twenty of his servants with him. They all came to the king.

2 Samuel 19:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Jordan River, Jordan
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Jordan River, Jordan
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- house

ULT

18 They crossed to bring over the king's family and to do whatever he thought good. Shimei son of Gera bowed down before the king just before he began to cross the Jordan.

UST

18 They all prepared to take the king and all his family across the river, at the place where they could walk across it. They wanted to do whatever the king wanted. As the king was about to cross the river, Shimei came to him and prostrated himself in front of the king.

2 Samuel 19:19

call to mind

This means "to remember." Alternate translation: "remember" (See: Idiom)

your servant

Here Shimei refers to himself this way to humble himself before the king and honor the king.

not take it to heart

"To take something to heart" means to think about something seriously or to be bothered by it. Alternate translation: "not be bothered by it" or "forget about it" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- iniquity
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- iniquity
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

19 Shimei said to the king, "Do not, my master, find me guilty or call to mind the wrong your servant did the day my master the king left Jerusalem. Please, may the king not take it to heart.

UST

19 He said to the king, "Your Majesty, please forgive me. Please do not keep thinking about the terrible thing that I did on the day that you left Jerusalem. Do not think about it anymore.

2 Samuel 19:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Joseph (OT)
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Joseph (OT)
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

20 For your servant knows that I have sinned. See, that is why I have come today as the first from all the family of Joseph to come down to meet my master the king."

UST

20 I know that I have sinned. Look, I have come today, the first one from the northern tribes to come here to greet you today, Your Majesty."

2 Samuel 19:21

Abishai

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 2:18. (See: How to Translate Names)

Zeruiah

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 2:13. (See: How to Translate Names)

Should not Shimei be put to death for this, because he cursed Yahweh's anointed?

Abishai was angry at Shimei for cursing David and is suggesting that he should be killed. This question can be written as a statement.
Alternate translation: "Shimei should be put to death because he cursed Yahweh's anointed." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Yahweh's anointed

This refers to David. It means that he is the man that Yahweh had anointed as king. Alternate translation: "the man that Yahweh has anointed as king" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh

ULT

21 But Abishai son of Zeruiah answered and said, "Should not Shimei be put to death for this, because he cursed Yahweh's anointed?"

UST

21 But Abishai son of Zeruiah, said to David, "He cursed the one whom Yahweh appointed to be the king! So should he not be executed for doing that?"

---

2 Samuel 19:22

What have I to do with you...that you should today be adversaries to me?

David uses this rhetorical question to rebuke Abishai. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "We have nothing in common with you, you sons of Zeruiah! You have no good reason to become my adversaries today." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Will any man be put to death today in Israel? For do I not know that today I am king over Israel?

David uses these rhetorical questions to continue rebuking Abishai. These questions can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "No person will be executed today in the nation of Israel, because today I am the one who is king over all of Israel." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Will any man be put to death

This phrase "put to death" means to be killed or executed. Alternate translation: "Will any man be killed" or "Will I order any man to die" (See: Idiom)

For do I not know that today I am king over Israel?

Possible meanings of this rhetorical question are 1) "I know that I am still king of Israel." or 2) "Today I am the one who is king over Israel!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

ULT

22 Then David said, "What have I to do with you, you sons of Zeruiah, that you should today be adversaries to me? Will any man be put to death today in Israel? For do I not know that today I am king over Israel?"

UST

22 But David said, "You sons of Zeruiah, what am I going to do with you? It is as though you had become my enemies today. I know that I am still king of Israel, so I say that certainly no one in Israel should be executed today."

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

2 Samuel 19:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

23 So the king said to Shimei, "You will not die." So the king promised him with an oath.

UST

23 Then the king said to Shimei, "I solemnly promise that I will not execute you."

2 Samuel 19:24

Mephibosheth

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 4:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

He had not dressed his feet

"He had not cared for his feet." Mephibosheth's feet were crippled. This phrase means that he had not taken proper care of his feet.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

ULT

24 Then Mephibosheth son of Saul came down to meet the king. He had not dressed his feet, or trimmed his beard, or washed his clothes from the day the king left until the day he came home in peace.

UST

24 Then Miphibosheth, Saul's grandson, came down to the river to greet the king. He had not washed his feet or trimmed his beard or washed his clothes from the time that the king left Jerusalem until the day that he returned.

2 Samuel 19:25

Why did you not go with me, Mephibosheth?

David is asking Mephibosheth why he did not go with David when David and all the people who followed him left Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "Why did you not go with me when I left Jerusalem, Mephibosheth?" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

ULT

25 So when he came from Jerusalem to meet the king, the king said to him, "Why did you not go with me, Mephibosheth?"

UST

25 When he arrived from Jerusalem to greet the king, the king said to him, "Mephibosheth, why did you not go with me?"

2 Samuel 19:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- donkey, mule
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- donkey, mule
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

26 He answered, "My master the king, my servant deceived me, for I said, 'I will saddle a donkey so I may ride on it and go with the king, because your servant is lame.'

UST

26 He replied, "Your Majesty, you know that I am crippled. When I heard that you were leaving Jerusalem, I said to my servant Ziba, 'Put a saddle on my donkey in order that I can ride on it and go with the king.' But he deceived me and left without me.

2 Samuel 19:27

Ziba

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 9:2. (See: How to Translate Names)

my master the king is like an angel of God

Here David's wisdom is compared to the wisdom of an angel. Alternate translation: "my master the king is as wise as an angel of God" (See: Simile)

do what is good in your eyes

This means to do what you think is right. Alternate translation: "do what you believe to be the right thing to do" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

27 My servant Ziba has slandered me, your servant, to my master the king. But my master the king is like an angel of God. Therefore, do what is good in your eyes.

UST

27 He lied to you about me. But your Majesty, you are as wise as God's angel. So do whatever seems right to you.

2 Samuel 19:28

all my father's house were dead men before my master the king

Mephibosheth speaks of how his relatives had deserved to be executed as if they had already been executed and were dead. Alternate translation: "all my father's house deserved for my master the king to order them to be executed" (See: Metaphor)

my father's house

This refers to his father's relatives. Alternate translation: "my father's relatives" (See: Metonymy)

What right therefore have I that I should still cry any more to the king?

Mephibosheth uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he has no right to request anything from the king. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Therefore, I have no right to ask the king to do anything else for me." (See: Rhetorical Question)

ULT

28 For all my father's house were dead men before my master the king, but you set your servant among those who ate at your own table. What right therefore have I that I should still cry any more to the king?"

UST

28 All of my grandfather's family expected that we would be executed. But you did not execute me. You allowed me to eat food with you at your table! So I certainly do not have the right to request from you anything more."

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

2 Samuel 19:29

Why explain anything further?

David uses this rhetorical question to tell him that he does not need to continue talking about his conflict with Ziba. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You do not need to explain this any further." or "You certainly do not need to say any more." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship

2 Samuel 19:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT

30 So Mephibosheth replied to the king, "Yes, let him take it all, since my master the king has come safely to his own home."

UST

30 Mephibosheth replied to the king, "Your Majesty, I am content that you have returned safely. So allow him to take all the land."

2 Samuel 19:31

Barzillai

See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 17:27. (See: How to Translate Names)

Gileadite

See how you translated the name of this people group in 2 Samuel 17:27. (See: How to Translate Names)

Rogelim

See how you translated the name of this place in 2 Samuel 17:27. (See: How to Translate Names)

the Jordan

the Jordan River

Translation Words - ULT

- Jordan River, Jordan
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Gilead, Gileadite
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Jordan River, Jordan
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Gilead, Gileadite
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

31 Then Barzillai the Gileadite came down from Rogelim to cross over the Jordan with the king, and he accompanied the king over the Jordan.

UST

31 Barzillai, the man from the region of Gilead, had come down to the Jordan River from his town of Rogelim to escort the king across the river.

2 Samuel 19:32

Mahanaim

See how you translated the name of this place in 2 Samuel 17:27. (See: How to Translate Names)

eighty years old

"80 years old" (See: Numbers)

had furnished the king with provisions

"had provided what the king needed"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

32 Now Barzillai was a very old man, eighty years old. He had furnished the king with provisions while he stayed at Mahanaim, for he was a very wealthy man.

UST

32 Barzillai was a very old man, eighty years old. He was a very wealthy man, and he had provided food for the king and his soldiers while they were at Mahanaim.

2 Samuel 19:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

33 The king said to Barzillai, "Come over with me, and I will provide for you to stay with me in Jerusalem."

UST

33 The king said to Barzillai, "Come with me to Jerusalem, and I will take care of you."

2 Samuel 19:34

How many days are left in the years of my life, that I should go up with the king to Jerusalem?

Here Barzillai means that he is old and that there is no reason for him to accompany David. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am certainly not going to live many more years. There is no good reason for me to go up with the king to Jerusalem." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

34 Barzillai replied to the king, "How many days are left in the years of my life, that I should go up with the king to Jerusalem?

UST

34 But Barzillai replied, "I certainly do not have many more years to live. So why should I go with you to Jerusalem?

2 Samuel 19:35

eighty years old

"80 years old" (See: Numbers)

Can I distinguish between good and bad?

Barzillai uses rhetorical questions to emphasize why he does not want to go to Jerusalem. Here "good" and "bad" refer to what is desirable and what is not. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I cannot distinguish between what is desirable and what is not." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Can your servant taste what I eat or what I drink?

Barzillai uses rhetorical questions to emphasize why he does not want to go to Jerusalem. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I cannot enjoy the taste of what I eat and drink." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Can I hear any more the voice of singing men and singing women?

Barzillai uses rhetorical questions to emphasize why he does not want to go to Jerusalem. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I cannot hear well the voices of singing men and singing women." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Why then should your servant be a burden to my master the king?

Barzillai uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he does not want to be a burden to the king. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Your servant should not go with you and be a burden to you." (See: Rhetorical Question)

> **ULT**
>
> **35** I am eighty years old. Can I distinguish between good and bad? Can your servant taste what I eat or what I drink? Can I hear any more the voice of singing men and singing women? Why then should your servant be a burden to my master the king?
>
> **UST**
>
> **35** I am eighty years old. I do not know what is enjoyable and what is not enjoyable. I cannot enjoy what I eat and what I drink. I cannot hear the voices of men and women as they sing. So why should I be another burden to you?

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- pray, prayer
- voice
- devour
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- pray, prayer
- voice

- devour
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

2 Samuel 19:36

Why should the king repay me with such a reward?

Barzillai uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he does not know why the king would reward him this way. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I do not know why the king would repay me with such a great reward" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jordan River, Jordan
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Jordan River, Jordan
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

36 Your servant would like to just go over the Jordan with the king. Why should the king repay me with such a reward?

UST

36 I will cross the Jordan River with you and go a little further, and that will be all the reward that I need for helping you.

2 Samuel 19:37

General Information:

Barzillai asks that Kimham be allowed to take his place instead with David.

Kimham

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

by the grave of my father and my mother

This does not mean that he wants to die right next to their graves, but rather, that he wants to die in the city where they are buried. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "where my father's and my mother's graves are" or "where my father and my mother are buried" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Let him cross over

This refers to crossing the Jordan River. Alternate translation: "Let him cross over the Jordan" (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- restore, restoration
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- restore, restoration
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

37 Please let your servant return back home, so I may die in my own city by the grave of my father and my mother. But see, here is your servant Kimham. Let him cross over with my master the king, and do for him what seems good to you."

UST

37 Then please allow me to return to my home, because that is where I want to die, near my parents' grave. But here is my son Kimham. Your Majesty, allow him to go with you and serve you, and do for him whatever seems good to you!"

2 Samuel 19:38

Kimham will go over with me

This refers to crossing the Jordan River. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Kimham will cross the river with me" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

38 The king answered, "Kimham will go over with me, and I will do for him what seems good to you, and whatever you desire from me, I do that for you."

UST

38 The king replied, "Very well, he will cross the river with me, and I will do for him whatever seems good to you. And I will do for you whatever you want me to do."

2 Samuel 19:39

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Jordan River, Jordan
- people, people group,
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Jordan River, Jordan
- people, people group,
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return

ULT

39 Then all the people crossed the Jordan, and the king crossed over, and the king kissed Barzillai and blessed him. Then Barzillai returned to his own home.

UST

39 Then King David and all the others crossed the Jordan River. He kissed Barzillai and asked God to bless him. Then Barzillai returned to his home.

2 Samuel 19:40

crossed over to Gilgal

They crossed over the Jordan River. Alternate translation: "crossed over the river to Gilgal" (See: Ellipsis)

Kimham

See how you translated this name in 2 Samuel 19:37.

All the army of Judah brought the king over, and also half the army of Israel

"All the army of Judah and half the army of Israel brought the king over"

brought the king over

They crossed over the Jordan River with the king. Alternate translation: "escorted the king over the river" (See: Ellipsis)

ULT

40 So the king crossed over to Gilgal, and Kimham crossed over with him. All the army of Judah brought the king over, and also half the army of Israel.

UST

40 After they crossed the river, Kimham went with the king, and all the army of Judah and half the army of the other Israelite tribes escorted the king to Gilgal.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

2 Samuel 19:41

Why have our brothers, the men of Judah...and all David's men with him?

The men of Israel use this question to express that they feel betrayed by the people of Judah. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is not right that our brothers, the men of Judah, who did not support you as king, had the privilege of bringing you and your family back across the Jordan River." (See: Rhetorical Question)

stolen you away

The men of Israel speak of how the men of Judah escorted the king across the river as if the king were something they stole that did not belong to them. Alternate translation: "taken you away from us" (See: Metaphor)

the Jordan

the Jordan River

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Jordan River, Jordan
- David
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Jordan River, Jordan
- David
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT

41 Soon all the men of Israel began to come to the king and say to the king, "Why have our brothers, the men of Judah, stolen you away and brought the king and his family over the Jordan, and all David's men with him?"

UST

41 Then all the Israelite soldiers from the other Israelite tribes came to the king and said, "Why is it that our relatives, the men from Judah, took you away from us and wanted to be the only ones to escort you and your family across the river, along with all your men? Why did you not request us to do that?"

2 Samuel 19:42

Why then are you angry about this?

The men of Judah ask this rhetorical question to rebuke the men of Israel. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "But you have no reason to be upset about this." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Have we eaten anything that the king had to pay for? Has he given us any gifts?

The men of Judah ask the question to express that they have not taken anything from the king. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "The king has never paid for our food, and he has never given us any gifts." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- devour
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- devour
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

42 So the men of Judah answered the men of Israel, "It is because the king is more closely related to us. Why then are you angry about this? Have we eaten anything that the king had to pay for? Has he given us any gifts?"

UST

42 The soldiers from Judah replied, "We did it because the king is from Judah. Why are you angry about this? The king has never paid for our food, and he has never given us any gifts."

2 Samuel 19:43

we have even more right to David than you

"we have a greater claim to David than you do." It may be helpful to state clearly what having "more right" means. Alternate translation: "we have more right to serve the king and to be with the king than you do" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Why then did you despise us?

The men of Israel ask this rhetorical question to express their anger. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not have despised us!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Was not our proposal to bring back our king the first to be heard?

The men of Israel ask this question to remind and rebuke the people of Judah. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "We were the first to suggest that we bring back the king!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

the words of the men of Judah were even more harsh than the words of the men of Israel

"the men of Judah spoke even more harshly than the men of Israel did"

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Judea
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Judea
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

43 The men of Israel answered the men of Judah, "We have ten tribes related to the king, so we have even more right to David than you. Why then did you despise us? Was not our proposal to bring back our king the first to be heard?" But the words of the men of Judah were even more harsh than the words of the men of Israel.

UST

43 The men of the other Israelite tribes replied, "There are ten tribes in Israel, and only one in Judah. So it is ten times more right for us to say that David is our king than it is for you to say that. So why are you despising us? We were certainly the first ones to talk about bringing David back to Jerusalem to be our king again." But the men of Judah spoke more harshly than the men from the other tribes of Israel did.

2 Samuel 20

2 Samuel 20 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Sheba's revolt

A man named Sheba told the people of the ten tribes that David was Judah's king, but not their king. David worked hard to preserve unity in Israel after this time of division.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

Joab used an idiom "has lifted up his hand against the king, against David" meaning "revolted against David," to explain why his army was attacking the city of Able. (See: Idiom)

2 Samuel 20:1

to be at the same place

This refers to the town of Gilgal.

Sheba...Bikri

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

We have no part in David, neither have we any inheritance in the son of Jesse

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Sheba is emphasizing that he and the tribes of Israel have no relationship with David. Alternate translation: "The inheritance of David and his father's family does not belong to us" or "We are not a part of David and his father's family" (See: Parallelism and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Jesse
- trumpet, trumpeters

Translation Words - UST

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Jesse
- trumpet, trumpeters

ULT

1 There also happened to be at the same place a troublemaker whose name was Sheba son of Bikri, a Benjamite. He blew the trumpet and said, "We have no part in David, neither have we any inheritance in the son of Jesse. Let every man go back to his home, Israel."

UST

1 There was also a man there at Gilgal named Sheba. He was a man who always caused trouble. He was from the tribe of Benjamin son of Bikri. He blew a trumpet and called out, "We have nothing to do with David, that son of Jesse! So, men of Israel, let us go to our homes!"

2 Samuel 20:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Jordan River, Jordan
- David
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Jordan River, Jordan
- David
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

2 So all the men of Israel deserted David and followed Sheba son of Bikri. But the men of Judah followed closely their king, from the Jordan all the way to Jerusalem.

UST

2 So all the men from the Israelite tribes deserted David and went with Sheba, but the men of Judah stayed with David. They wanted him to be their king, and went with him from near the Jordan River up to Jerusalem.

2 Samuel 20:3

to keep the palace

Here the phrase "to keep" means to take care of. Alternate translation: "to take care of the palace" (See: Idiom)

in a house under guard

If a house is "under guard" it means that a guard is posted at the house. Alternate translation: "in a house and put a guard there" (See: Idiom)

he did not lie with them

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "he did not have sexual relations with them" (See: Euphemism)

they were shut up

This means that they were not allowed to leave the house. Alternate translation: "they were shut inside the house" (See: Idiom)

widows

These are women whose husbands have died.

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- David
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house
- house

ULT

3 When David came to his palace at Jerusalem, he took the ten slave wives whom he had left to keep the palace, and he put them in a house under guard. He provided for their needs, but he did not lie with them any longer. So they were shut up to the day of their death, living as if they were widows.

UST

3 When David arrived at the palace in Jerusalem, he took the ten slave wives whom he had left there to take care of the palace and put them in another house. He put a guard at that house, and he provided for them what they needed, but he never had slept with them again. So they remained shut up in their house until they died. It was as though they were widows.

2 Samuel 20:4

Amasa

This is the commander of David's army. See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 17:25. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship

2 Samuel 20:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Judea

Translation Words - UST

- Judea

ULT

5 So Amasa went to call Judah, but he was delayed beyond the time that the king had allotted for him.

UST

5 So Amasa went to summon them, but he did not return within the time that David told him to.

2 Samuel 20:6

Abishai

This is another commander of David's army. See how you translated his name in 2 Samuel 2:18. (See: How to Translate Names)

do us more harm

"hurt us more"

your master's servants, my soldiers

The phrase "my soldiers" clarifies which "servants." David refers to himself as "your master" as a formal way of speaking to someone with less authority.

pursue after

"chase after"

he will find fortified cities

This means that Sheba and his men will enter these cities to hide from David's army. The word "he" represents Sheba but refers to both him and his men. Alternate translation: "he and his men will hide in fortified cities" or "he and his men will take refuge in fortified cities" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Synecdoche)

out of our sight

Here David refers to his army by their sight to emphasize that Sheba and his men would be hidden and David's army would be unable to capture them. Alternate translation: "from us" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- David
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- David
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

2 Samuel 20:7

Kerethites...Pelethites

These are the names of people groups who helped to protect King David. See how you translated this man's name in 2 Samuel 8:18. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- son
- Jerusalem
- might, mighty, mighty works

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- son
- Jerusalem
- might, mighty, mighty works

ULT

7 Then Joab's men went out after him, along with the Kerethites and the Pelethites and all the mighty warriors. They left Jerusalem to pursue Sheba son of Bikri.

UST

7 So Abishai and Joab and the king's bodyguards and the other soldiers left Jerusalem to pursue Sheba.

2 Samuel 20:8

When they were

"When Joab and the men of Judah were"

belt

a strip of leather or other material used to hold clothing or weapons in place

sheathed sword

This means the sword was in its protective covering.

the sword fell out

Joab let the sword fall out to fool Amasa into thinking that he Joab was unarmed, so that Amasa would allow him to walk closer to him. Alternate translation: "he allowed the sword to fall on the ground so Amasa would think he was unarmed" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

8 When they were at the great stone which is at Gibeon, Amasa came to meet them. Joab was wearing the battle armor that he had put on, which included a belt around his waist with a sheathed sword fastened to it. As he walked forward, the sword fell out.

UST

8 When they arrived at the huge rock in the region of Gibeah, Amasa met them. Joab was wearing armor for battle and had a sword fastened to his belt. When he came close to Amasa, he allowed the sword to fall on the ground.

Translation Words - ULT

- robe, robed
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- sword, swordsmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- robe, robed
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- sword, swordsmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

2 Samuel 20:9

my cousin

Amasa was the son of the sister of Joab's mother.

took Amasa by the beard with his right hand to kiss him

This was a common way for men to greet one another.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- hand

ULT

9 So Joab said to Amasa, "Is it well with you, my cousin?" Joab took Amasa by the beard with his right hand to kiss him.

UST

9 Joab said to Amasa, "Are things going well with you, my friend?" Then Joab grabbed Amasa's beard with his right hand, in order to kiss him.

2 Samuel 20:10

dagger

a short sword that is easy to hide and was often used for close-in fighting and assassinations

bowels spilled

"intestines spilled"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- hand
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- earth, earthen, earthly
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- hand
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- earth, earthen, earthly
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

ULT

10 Amasa did not notice the dagger that was in Joab's left hand. Joab stabbed Amasa in the stomach and his bowels spilled out to the ground. Joab did not strike him again, and Amasa died. So Joab and Abishai his brother pursued Sheba son of Bikri.

UST

10 But Amasa did not see that Joab was holding another dagger in his other hand. Joab thrust it into Amasa's belly, and his insides spilled out onto the ground. Amasa died immediately. Joab did not need to stab him again. Then Joab and his brother Abishai continued to pursue Sheba.

2 Samuel 20:11

he who is for David

To be "for" someone means to support them. Alternate translation: "he who supports David" or "he who is loyal to David" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- delight

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- delight

ULT

11 Then one of Joab's men stood by Amasa, and the man said, "He who favors Joab, and he who is for David, let him follow Joab."

UST

11 One of Joab's soldiers stood alongside Amasa's body and called out, "Everyone who wants Joab to be our commander and who wants David to be our king, go with Joab!"

2 Samuel 20:12

Amasa lay wallowing in his blood

"Amasa lay squirming in his blood." Amasa may have still been alive and rolling in his blood, but he was probably dead by this time. It is described this way to show how gruesome his body looked. Alternate translation: "Amasa lay dead in his blood" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

all the people stood still...came by him stood still

This means they stopped walking and were staring at Amasa's dead body. Alternate translation: "all the people stood still staring at the dead body...came by him stood still, staring at his dead body" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

he carried Amasa

"he carried Amasa's body"

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- people, people group,

ULT

12 Amasa lay wallowing in his blood in the middle of the road. When the man saw that all the people stood still, he carried Amasa off of the road and into a field. He threw a garment over him because he saw that everyone who came by him stood still.

UST

12 Amasa's body was lying on the road. It was covered with blood. The soldier of Joab who had called out saw that many other of Joab's soldiers were stopping to look at it, so he dragged Amasa's body off the road into a field and threw a cloth over the body.

2 Samuel 20:13

After Amasa was taken off the road

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After the man took Amasa off the road" (See: Active or Passive)

in pursuit of

This abstract noun can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "pursuing" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

2 Samuel 20:14

Sheba passed through

Here "Sheba" refers to both him and his army. Alternate translation: "Sheba and his army" or "Sheba and his men" (See: Synecdoche)

Abel Beth Maacah

Both Abel and Beth Maacah names refer to the same place and may be combined. It is a city near the tribe of Dan. (See: How to Translate Names)

of the Bikrites

This is the name of a people group. (See: How to Translate Names)

also pursued Sheba

"also followed Sheba"

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

14 Sheba passed through all the tribes of Israel to Abel Beth Maacah, and through all the land of the Bikrites, who gathered together and also pursued Sheba.

UST

14 Sheba went through all the tribes of Israel, and arrived at the city that is called Abel of Beth Maacah in the northern part of Israel. All the members of his father Bikri's clan gathered there and went with Sheba into the city.

2 Samuel 20:15

They caught up with him

"Joab and the soldiers caught up with him"

against the city against the wall

"against the city wall"

battered the wall to knock it down

This means that they used a battering ram to knock down the wall. A battering ram was a cut tree or large log with a sharpened end or an end covered in metal. It was held by several men who would pound the end against a wall. Alternate translation: "used a battering ram to knock down the wall" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,

ULT

15 They caught up with him and besieged him in Abel Beth Maacah. They built up a siege ramp against the city against the wall. All the army who were with Joab battered the wall to knock it down.

UST

15 The soldiers who were with Joab found out that Sheba had gone there, so they went there and surrounded the city. They built a dirt ramp up against the city wall. They also pounded against the wall to cause it to collapse.

2 Samuel 20:16

Listen, please listen

The repetition of "Listen" strengthens the woman's plea.

Translation Words - ULT

- wise men, advisor
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- wise men, advisor
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

16 Then a wise woman cried out of the city, "Listen, please listen, Joab! Come near me so I may speak with you."

UST

16 Then a wise woman who was in that town stood on the top of the wall and shouted down, "Listen to me! Tell Joab to come here, because I want to talk to him!"

2 Samuel 20:17

Listen to the words of your servant

The woman refers to herself as "your servant." This is a polite way to speak to someone with greater authority.

Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

17 So Joab came near to her, and the woman said, "Are you Joab?" He answered, "I am." Then she said to him, "Listen to the words of your servant." He answered, "I am listening."

UST

17 So after they told Joab, he came there, and the woman said, "Are you Joab?" He replied, "Yes, I am." She said to him, "Listen to what I say." He replied, "I am listening."

2 Samuel 20:18

that advice would end the matter

"that advice would solve the problem"

2 Samuel 20:19

most peaceful and faithful in Israel

This describes the cities. Alternate translation: "most peaceful and faithful cities in Israel" (See: Ellipsis)

city that is a mother in Israel

This speaks of the importance of this city among the nation of Israel as if it were a well respected mother. Alternate translation: "city that everyone in Israel respects like they would their mother" or "city that is very important and that Israel respects" (See: Metaphor)

Why do you want to swallow up the inheritance of Yahweh?

Here the woman uses a rhetorical question to suggest to Joab what they should not do. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not destroy the city that is Yahweh's inheritance!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

swallow up

Here the woman speaks of the army destroying the city as if the city were food to be swallowed. Alternate translation: "destroy" (See: Metaphor)

the inheritance of Yahweh

Here the city is referred to as Yahweh's inheritance to emphasize that it belongs to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "a city that belongs to Yahweh" (See: Metonymy)

ULT

19 We are a city that is one of the most peaceful and faithful in Israel. You are trying to destroy a city that is a mother in Israel. Why do you want to swallow up the inheritance of Yahweh?"

UST

19 We are peaceful and loyal Israelites. Our people here are important and respected. So why are you trying to destroy a city that belongs to Yahweh?"

Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- pray, prayer
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- pray, prayer
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- seek, search, look for

2 Samuel 20:20

Far be it, far be it from me, that I should

He repeats this phrase to emphasize that this is something he would never do. Alternate translation: "Truly, truly, I would never" (See: Idiom)

that I should swallow up or destroy

This refers to destroying the city. This may be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "that I should swallow up or destroy your city" (See: Ellipsis)

swallow up or destroy

Both of these phrases means to destroy. In the first phrase "destroying" is spoken of as if it were "swallowing." These may be combined. Alternate translation: "ruin or destroy the city" or "destroy" (See: Doublet and Metaphor)

ULT

20 So Joab answered and said, "Far be it, far be it from me, that I should swallow up or destroy.

UST

20 Joab replied, "I would certainly never want to ruin or destroy your city!

2 Samuel 20:21

has lifted up his hand against

This means to rebel and fight against someone. Alternate translation: "has opposed" or "is rebelling against" (See: Idiom)

Give up him alone

Joab is asking for the people of the city to release Sheba to him. Alternate translation: "Hand this man over to us" or "Give this man to us" (See: Idiom)

I will withdraw from the city

Here the "I" refers to both Joab and his soldiers. Alternate translation: "We will withdraw from the city" (See: Synecdoche)

His head will be thrown

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "We will throw his head" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- hand
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- name
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- hand
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

21 That is not true. But a man from the hill country of Ephraim, named Sheba son of Bikri, has lifted up his hand against the king, against David. Give up him alone, and I will withdraw from the city." The woman said to Joab, "His head will be thrown to you over the wall."

UST

21 That is not what we want to do. But Bikri's son Sheba, a man from the hill area in the tribe of Ephraim, is rebelling against King David. Put this man into our hands, and then we will go away from this town." The woman replied to Joab, "Very well; we will cut off his head and throw it over the wall to you."

2 Samuel 20:22

Then the woman went to all the people in her wisdom

This means that the woman acted wisely and spoke to her people about what they should do. Alternate translation: "Then the wise woman spoke to all the people" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

every man to his home

"every man went to his own home"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- restore, restoration
- Jerusalem
- people, people group,
- cut off
- head
- trumpet, trumpeters
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- restore, restoration
- Jerusalem
- people, people group,
- cut off
- head
- trumpet, trumpeters
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

22 Then the woman went to all the people in her wisdom. They cut off the head of Sheba son of Bikri, and threw it out to Joab. Then he blew the trumpet and Joab's men left the city, every man to his home. Then Joab returned to Jerusalem to the king.

UST

22 Then this woman went to the elders of the town and told them what she had said to Joab. So they cut off Sheba's head and threw it over the wall to Joab. Then Joab blew his trumpet to signal that the battle was ended, and all his soldiers left the town and returned to their homes. Joab returned to Jerusalem and told the king what had happened.

2 Samuel 20:23

Now

"Now" marks a break in the main story line. This new section gives background information about the men who served King David. (See: Background Information)

Joab was over...Benaiah son of Jehoiada was over

The phrase "was over" refers to having authority over a group of people. Alternate translation: "Joab had authority over...Benaiah son of Jehoiada had authority over" (See: Idiom)

Benaiah...Jehoiada

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in 2 Samuel 8:18. (See: How to Translate Names)

Kerethites...Pelethites

Translate the names of these people groups the same as you did in 2 Samuel 8:18. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT

23 Now Joab was over all the army of Israel, and Benaiah son of Jehoiada was over the Kerethites and over the Pelethites.

UST

23 Joab was the commander of the entire Israelite army. Jehoiada's son Benaiah was the commander of David's bodyguards.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites

2 Samuel 20:24

Adoniram was over

The phrase "was over" refers to having authority over a group of people. Alternate translation: "Adoniram had authority over" (See: Idiom)

Adoniram

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

the men who did forced labor

"the slave workers"

Jehoshaphat...Ahilud

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in 2 Samuel 8:16. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

2 Samuel 20:25

Sheva

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- priest, priesthood

Translation Words - UST

- scribe
- priest, priesthood

2 Samuel 20:26

Ira

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Jairite

This is the name of a people group. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood

2 Samuel 21

2 Samuel 21 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Special concepts in this chapter

Famine caused by a broken oath

When Israel first conquered the land, they promised not to kill the people of Gibeon. When Saul tried to kill them all, God caused a famine in Israel. David made amends with the people of Gideon and the famine ended. David also kept his vow to Jonathan's sons. This helps to show the wisdom of king David. Although these people were not Israelites, they believed in Yahweh. (See: promise, promised, vow and wise, wisdom and believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief)

Wisdom, grace and justice

David is seen to have many great qualities in this chapter. These were qualities important for a king of Israel: wisdom, grace and justice. (See: wise, wisdom and grace, gracious and just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification)

2 Samuel 21:1

sought the face of Yahweh

Here "face" is a synecdoche for Yahweh's presence. This means David prayed to Yahweh for an answer about the famine. (See: Synecdoche)

because of Saul and his murderous family

Saul had killed many Gibeonites, and Saul's descendants are guilty because of this sin.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- face, facial
- seek, search, look for
- famine
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- face, facial
- seek, search, look for
- famine
- house

ULT

[1] There was a famine in David's time for three years in a row, and David sought the face of Yahweh. So Yahweh said, "This famine is on you because of Saul and his murderous family, because he put the Gibeonites to death."

UST

[1] There was a famine in Israel for three years that occurred in the time that David ruled. David prayed to Yahweh about it. And Yahweh said, "In order for the famine to end, Saul's family need to be punished because Saul killed many people from the city of Gibeon."

2 Samuel 21:2

Now

Here "Now" marks a break in the main story line. This gives background information about the Gibeonites. (See: Background Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Judah
- Amorite
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for
- declare, proclaim, announce
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Judah
- Amorite
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for
- declare, proclaim, announce
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

2 Now the Gibeonites were not from the people of Israel; they were from what remained of the Amorites. The people of Israel had sworn not to kill them, but Saul tried to kill them all anyway in his zeal for the people of Israel and Judah.

UST

2 The people of Gibeon were not native born Israelites. They were a small group of the Amor people group whom the Israelites had solemnly promised to protect when they invaded the land of Canaan. But Saul had tried to kill all of them because he was very eager to enable the people of Judah and Israel to be the only ones living in that land. So the king summoned the leaders of Gibeon

2 Samuel 21:3

What should I do for you? How can I make atonement... promises?

These two sentences have similar meanings. Alternate translation: "What can I do to remove this sin, so that you may bless the people of Yahweh, who inherit his goodness and promises?" (See: Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Yahweh
- David
- Gibeon, Gibeonite

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Yahweh
- David
- Gibeon, Gibeonite

ULT

[3] So King David called together the Gibeonites and said to them, "What should I do for you? How can I make atonement, so that you may bless the people of Yahweh, who inherit his goodness and promises?"

UST

[3] and said to them, "What should I do for you? How can I make up for what Saul did to your people, in order that you will bless us who belong to Yahweh and have so many good things from him?"

2 Samuel 21:4

It is not a matter of silver or gold

"Money will not solve the problem"

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- silver
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- gold, golden
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- silver
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- gold, golden
- house

ULT

4 The Gibeonites responded to him, "It is not a matter of silver or gold between us and Saul or his family. In the same way it is not for us to put to death any man in Israel." David replied, "What are you saying that I should do for you?"

UST

4 They replied, "You cannot settle our quarrel with Saul and his family by giving us silver or gold. And we do not have the right to kill any Israelites." So David asked, "Then what do you say that I should do for you?"

2 Samuel 21:5

who schemed against us

"who made plans against us"

Translation Words - ULT

- • Israel, Israelites
- • king, kingdom, kingship
- • consume, devour

Translation Words - UST

- • Israel, Israelites
- • king, kingdom, kingship
- • consume, devour

ULT

5 They answered the king, "The man who tried to kill us all, who schemed against us, so that we are now destroyed and have no place within the borders of Israel—

UST

5 They replied, "Saul wanted to get rid of us. He wanted to annihilate all of us, in order that none of us would live anywhere in Israel.

2 Samuel 21:6

let seven men from his descendants be handed over to us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "allow your men to give seven of his descendants to us" (See: Active or Passive)

we will hang them

"we will execute them by hanging"

in Gibeah of Saul

Saul was from the town of Gibeah.

the one chosen by Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the one whom Yahweh chose" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

6 let seven men from his descendants be handed over to us, and we will hang them before Yahweh in Gibeah of Saul, the one chosen by Yahweh." So the king said, "I will give them to you."

UST

6 Put seven of Saul's descendants into our hands. We will hang them where Yahweh is worshiped in Gibeon, our city, the city where Saul, whom Yahweh chose to be king, lived." The king replied, "Very well, I will hand them over to you."

2 Samuel 21:7

Mephibosheth

Mephibosheth was the son of Jonathan. See how you translated his name in 2 Samuel 4:4.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- Yahweh
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- Yahweh
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

7 But the king spared Mephibosheth son of Jonathan son of Saul, because of Yahweh's oath between them, between David and Jonathan son of Saul.

UST

7 The king did not hand over Saul's grandson Mephibosheth to them, because of what he and Mephibosheth's father Jonathan had solemnly promised to each other.

2 Samuel 21:8

Rizpah...Aiah

Rizpah was a woman and her father was Aiah. See how you translated these names in 2 Samuel 3:7.

Armoni and Mephibosheth...Adriel...Barzillai

These are names of men. This is not the same Mephibosheth as the son of Jonathan. (See: How to Translate Names)

Merab

This is the name of a woman. See how you translated it in 2 Samuel 3:13.

Meholathite

This is the name of a people group. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

8 But the king took the two sons of Rizpah daughter of Aiah, sons whom she bore to Saul—the two sons were named Armoni and Mephibosheth; and David also took the five sons of Merab [1] daughter of Saul, whom she bore to Adriel son of Barzillai the Meholathite.

UST

8 Instead, he took the two sons of Rizpah and Saul, named Armoni and Mephibosheth—Rizpah was the daughter of Aiah and had been Saul's slave wife; David also the five sons of Merab, Saul's daughter. Merab's husband was Adriel son of Barzillai, was from the city of Meholah.

2 Samuel 21:9

He handed them over into the hands of the Gibeonites

Here "the hands of the Gibeonites" represents the Gibeonite people's control. Alternate translation: "He gave them to the Gibeonites" (See: Metonymy)

They were put to death

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Gibeonites put them to death" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- hand
- harvest, reap
- harvest, reap
- barley
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- hand
- harvest, reap
- harvest, reap
- barley
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

9 He handed them over into the hands of the Gibeonites. They hanged them on the mountain before Yahweh, and they died all seven together. They were put to death during the time of harvest, during the first days at the beginning of barley harvest.

UST

9 David handed these men over to the people of Gibeon. They took those seven men to Gibeon and hanged them on a hill where they worshiped Yahweh. They died during the time of the year that the people started to harvest the barley.

2 Samuel 21:10

Rizpah...Aiah

Rizpah was a woman and her father was Aiah. See how you translated these names in 2 Samuel 3:7.

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- harvest, reap

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- harvest, reap

ULT

10 Then Rizpah, the daughter of Aiah, took sackcloth and spread it for herself on the mountain beside the dead bodies, from the beginning of harvest until the rain poured down on them from the sky. She did not allow the birds of the sky to disturb the bodies by day or the wild animals by night.

UST

10 Then Rizpah took coarse cloth made from goats' hair, and spread it on the rock where the corpses lay. She stayed there from the time that people started to harvest the barley until the rains started. She did not allow any birds to come near the corpses during the day, and she did not allow any animals to come near during the night.

2 Samuel 21:11

It was told to David

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told David" (See: Active or Passive)

2 Samuel 21:12

Jabesh Gilead

Jabesh is a town in the region of Gilead. See how you translated this in 2 Samuel 2:4.

the public square

This is an area near the city gate where people did various kinds of business.

Beth Shan

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Gilboa

See how you translated the name of this place in 2 Samuel 1:6.

Translation Words - ULT

- bind, bond, bound
- son
- Philistines
- David
- hang, hung

Translation Words - UST

- bind, bond, bound
- son
- Philistines
- David
- hang, hung

ULT

12 So David went and took the bones of Saul and the bones of Jonathan his son from the men of Jabesh Gilead, who had stolen them from the public square of Beth Shan, where the Philistines had hanged them, after the Philistines had killed Saul in Gilboa.

UST

12 So he went with some of his servants to Jabesh in the region of Gilead and got the bones of Saul and his son Jonathan. The people of Jabesh had stolen their bones from the plaza in the city of Beth Shan, where the men from Philistia had hanged them on the day that they had killed Saul and Jonathan on Mount Gilboa.

2 Samuel 21:13

who had been hanged

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the Gibeonites executed by hanging" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

13 David took away from there the bones of Saul and the bones of Jonathan his son, and they gathered the bones of the seven men who had been hanged, as well.

UST

13 David and his men took the bones of Saul and Jonathan, and they also took the bones of the seven men from Gibeon who had been hanged.

2 Samuel 21:14

Zela

This is the name of a town in Benjamin. (See: How to Translate Names)

Kish

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

his father

"Saul's father"

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- God
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- son
- God
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

14 They buried the bones of Saul and Jonathan his son in the country of Benjamin in Zela, in the tomb of Kish his father. They performed all that the king commanded. After that God answered their prayers for the land.

UST

14 David's servants went to the tomb of Saul's father Kish, in the city of Zela in the land of the tribe of Benjamin. There they buried the bones of Saul and Jonathan also. In this way, they did all that the king had commanded them to do. After that, because God saw that Saul's family had been punished to pay for Saul's murder of many people from Gibeon, he answered the Israelites' prayers for their land, and caused the famine to end.

2 Samuel 21:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- David
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- David
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

15 Then the Philistines went to war again with Israel. So David went down with his army and fought against the Philistines. David was overcome with battle fatigue.

UST

15 The army of Philistia again started to fight against the army of Israel. And David and his soldiers went to fight them. During the battle, David became tired.

2 Samuel 21:16

Ishbi-Benob

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

three hundred shekels

"300 shekels." This is about 3.4 kilograms. (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- bronze

Translation Words - UST

- David
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- bronze

ULT

16 Ishbi-Benob, a descendant of the giants, whose bronze spear weighed three hundred shekels, and who was armed with a new sword, intended to kill David.

UST

16 One of the Philistine men thought that he could kill David. His name was Ishbi-Benob. He was a descendant of a group of giants. He carried a bronze spear that weighed almost three and one-half kilograms, and he also had a new sword.

2 Samuel 21:17

Abishai son of Zeruiah

Abishai and Zeruiah are names of men. See how you translated these names in 2 Samuel 2:18.

you do not put out the lamp of Israel

The "lamp of Israel" is a metaphor that refers to David's leadership and the idea that if David were to die, the people of Israel would have no clear direction. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

17 But Abishai son of Zeruiah rescued David, attacked the Philistine, and killed him. Then the men of David swore to him, saying, "You must not go to battle anymore with us, so that you do not put out the lamp of Israel."

UST

17 But Abishai came to help David, and attacked the giant and killed him. Then David's soldiers forced David to promise that he would not go with them into a battle again. They said to him, "If you die, and none of your descendants become king, that would be like extinguishing the last light in Israel."

2 Samuel 21:18

It came about after this that

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Gob

This is the name of a town. (See: How to Translate Names)

Sibbekai...Saph

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hushathite...Rephaim

These are names of people groups. (See: How to Translate Names)

Rephaim

This people group was known for its giant warriors. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Philistines

Translation Words - UST

- Philistines

ULT
18 It came about after this that there was again a battle with the Philistines at Gob, when Sibbekai the Hushathite killed Saph, who was one of the descendants of the Rephaim. [2]

UST
18 Some time after that, there was a battle with the army of Philistia near the village of Gob. During the battle, Sibbekai, from the clan of Hushah, killed Saph, one of the descendants of the Rapha giants.

2 Samuel 21:19

Elhanan son of Jair the Bethlehemite killed Goliath the Gittite

Some versions translate this as "Elhanan son of Jair the Bethlehemite killed the brother of Goliath the Gittite." (See: Textual Variants)

Elhanan son of Jair…Goliath

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Bethlehemite…Gittite

These are names of people groups. (See: How to Translate Names)

whose spear was like a weaver's beam

When a person was weaving a cloth he would run the threads through hooks attached to large sticks called a "weaver's beam." This means Goliath's spear was larger than a normal spear. (See: Simile)

ULT

19 It came about again in a battle with the Philistines at Gob, that Elhanan son of Jair the Bethlehemite killed Goliath the Gittite, the staff of whose spear was like a weaver's beam.

UST

19 Later there was another battle with the army of Philistia at Gob. During that battle, Elhanan son of Jair from Bethlehem, killed the brother of Goliath from Gath, whose spear shaft was very thick, like the bar on a weaver's loom.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Philistines

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Philistines

2 Samuel 21:20

twenty-four in number

"24 fingers and toes altogether" (See: Numbers)

Rephaim

This people group was known for its giant warriors. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- hand

Translation Words - UST

- hand

ULT

20 It came about in another battle at Gath that there was a man of great height who had six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot, twenty-four in number. He also was descended from the Rephaim.

UST

20 Later there was another battle near Gath. There was a huge man there who liked to fight in battles. He had six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot. He was descended from the Rapha giants.

2 Samuel 21:21

Jonathan son of Shimeah

These are names of men. Shimeah was David's brother. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- David

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- David

ULT

21 When he taunted Israel, Jonathan son of Shimeah, David's brother, killed him.

UST

21 But when he insulted the men in the Israelite army, Jonathan son of Shimeah, David's older brother, killed him.

2 Samuel 21:22

they were killed by the hand of David and by the hand of his soldiers

Here "by the hand of" means "through" or "by." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "David and his soldiers killed them" (See: Idiom and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- hand
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- David
- hand
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

22 These were descendants of the Rephaim of Gath, and they were killed by the hand of David and by the hand of his soldiers.

21:8 [1] Some versions have *Michal,* but 2SA 6:23 says she had no children; or Michal may have been another name for Merab.

21:18 [2] Instead of *Gob* in the Hebrew text, some versions have *Gezeth* or *Gezer* .

UST

22 Those four men were some of the descendants of the Rapha giants who had lived in Gath, who were killed by David and his soldiers.

2 Samuel 22

2 Samuel 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetic song in 22:2-51.

Special concepts in this chapter

God rescued David

God rescued David when he thought he would die. He protected David, fought against his enemies, and enabled him to defeat his enemies.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

David uses many metaphors to express his trust in God's protection: "my rock, my fortress, my shield, the horn of my salvation, my stronghold and my refuge." He used other metaphors to express his hopelessness: "the waves of death surrounded me," "the rushing waters of worthlessness overwhelmed me," "the cords of sheol surrounded me;" "the snares of death trapped me," and "the surging water." He also used metaphors for the victory God gave him: "I can run over a barricade" and "by my God I can leap over a wall." (See: Metaphor and trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness)

2 Samuel 22:1

General Information:

David's song to Yahweh starts. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: Parallelism)

out of the hand of all his enemies, and out of the hand of Saul

This is a progression from enemies in general to one specific enemy of David, King Saul.

out of the hand of

This metonym means "out of the power of." (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- hand
- adversary, enemy

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- hand
- adversary, enemy

ULT

1 David sang to Yahweh the words of this song on the day that Yahweh rescued him out of the hand of all his enemies, and out of the hand of Saul.

UST

1 After Yahweh had rescued David from Saul and his other enemies, David sang a song to Yahweh.

2 Samuel 22:2

Yahweh is my rock, my fortress

This metaphor shows a progression from a part, "rock," to the whole, "fortress." A fortress is built of many large rocks. This means Yahweh has the strength to protect his people from harm. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh

ULT
2 He prayed, "Yahweh is my rock, my fortress, the one who rescues me.

UST
2 This is what he sang: "Yahweh, you are like a huge rock on top of which I can hide. You are like a fortress, and you rescue me.

2 Samuel 22:3

General Information:

David's song to Yahweh continues. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: Parallelism)

God is my rock...He is my shield, the horn of my salvation, my stronghold

All of these metaphors are symbols of God's strength and power. They emphasize God's ability to protect and save his people. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Translation Words - UST

- God
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

ULT

3 God is my rock. I take refuge in him. He is my shield, the horn of my salvation, my stronghold, and my refuge, the one who saves me from violence.

UST

3 Yahweh, you protect me. You are like a shield, and you are the powerful one who saves me. You are like a place where I find refuge. You save me from those who act violently toward me.

2 Samuel 22:4

who is worthy to be praised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "who is worthy to receive praise" (See: Active or Passive)

I will be saved from my enemies

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he will save me from my enemies" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Yahweh
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- Yahweh
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

ULT

4 I will call on Yahweh, who is worthy to be praised, and I will be saved from my enemies.

UST

4 I call out to you, Yahweh. You deserve to be praised, and you rescue me from my enemies.

2 Samuel 22:5

General Information:

David's song to Yahweh continues. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: Parallelism)

For the waves of death surrounded me, the rushing waters of destruction overwhelmed me

David compares the wicked men who wanted to kill him to flood waters that are about to drown him. These sentences have similar meanings and are used for emphasis. (See: Metaphor and Parallelism)

the rushing waters of destruction

This is a picture of fast-flowing flood waters that destroy everything in their path.

ULT

5 For the waves of death surrounded me, the rushing waters of destruction overwhelmed me.

UST

5 I almost died. It was as if a huge wave had crashed over me, and almost destroyed me like a flood.

2 Samuel 22:6

The cords of Sheol surrounded me; the snares of death trapped me

David speaks about death and Sheol as if they are people who are trying to trap him as a hunter traps an animal. These phrases have similar meanings and are used for emphasis. (See: Personification and Parallelism)

ULT

6 The cords of Sheol surrounded me; the snares of death trapped me.

UST

6 I thought that I would die. It was as though death had wrapped ropes around me, and it was as though I were in a trap where I would surely die.

2 Samuel 22:7

General Information:

David's song to Yahweh continues. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: Parallelism)

In my distress

"In my great trouble"

he heard my voice from his temple

David is referring to the heavenly temple where Yahweh dwells. The earthly temple has not yet been built.

my call for help went into his ears

Here the metonym "his ears" refers to Yahweh and his hearing of David's call for help. Alternate translation: "he heard my prayer for help" (See: Metonymy)

his ears

David speaks of Yahweh as if he had ears. (See: Personification)

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- call, call out
- God
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- call, call out
- God
- Yahweh

ULT

7 In my distress I called to Yahweh; I called to my God; he heard my voice from his temple, and my call for help went into his ears.

UST

7 But when I was very distressed, I called out to you, Yahweh. I cried out to you, my God. You heard me from your temple. You listened when I called to you to help me.

2 Samuel 22:8

General Information:

David's song to Yahweh continues. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: Parallelism)

Then the earth shook

This is Yahweh's response to David's cry for help from his enemies (1 Samuel 22:7). David uses the imagery of the earth shaking to emphasize Yahweh's terrible anger. (See: Metaphor)

earth shook...heavens trembled

David speaks of the two extremes to include everything in creation. (See: Merism)

and were shaken, because God was angry

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because God's anger shook them" (See: Active or Passive)

ULT

8 Then the earth shook and trembled. The foundations of the heavens trembled and were shaken, because God was angry.

UST

8 Then it was as though the earth quaked and shook. It was as though the foundations that held up the sky trembled, because you were angry.

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- tremble, stagger
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- tremble, stagger
- earth, earthen, earthly

2 Samuel 22:9

were ignited by it

This is Yahweh's response to David's cry for help from his enemies (1 Samuel 22:7). David uses the imagery of fire coming from Yahweh to emphasize Yahweh's terrible anger. (See: Metaphor)

his nostrils…his mouth

David speaks of Yahweh as if he had these humans parts. (See: Personification)

Coals were ignited by it

Here Yahweh's anger is compared to fire, which causes coals to ignite and burn. Alternate translation: "The flame from his mouth set coals on fire" or "He also sent burning coals from his mouth" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

2 Samuel 22:10

General Information:

David's song to Yahweh continues. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: Parallelism)

He opened the heavens

David describes Yahweh's way of saving David from his enemies as a storm cloud gathering over a place. This emphasizes God's power and his anger. (See: Metaphor)

under his feet

David speaks of God as having feet like humans. (See: Personification)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- darkness

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- darkness

ULT

10 He opened the heavens and came down, and thick darkness was under his feet.

UST

10 You tore open the skies and came down. There was a thick dark cloud under your feet.

2 Samuel 22:11

He was seen on the wings of the wind

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "He appeared on the wings of the wind" (See: Active or Passive)

the wings of the wind

This expression speaks of the wind as if it were a bird. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- spirit, spiritual
- horse, warhorse, horseback

ULT

11 He rode on a cherub and flew. He was seen on the wings of the wind. [1]

UST

11 You rode through the sky on a winged creature. The wind enabled you to travel swiftly, like a bird.

2 Samuel 22:12

rain clouds in the skies

David describes Yahweh's way of saving David from his enemies as a storm cloud gathering over a place. This emphasizes God's power and his anger. (See: Metaphor)

He made darkness a tent around him

Here the darkness Yahweh creates is compared to a tent which hides him completely. Alternate translation: "He hid himself in the darkness" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- darkness

Translation Words - UST

- darkness

ULT

12 He made darkness a tent around him, gathering heavy rain clouds in the skies.

UST

12 The darkness was around you, like a blanket thick clouds that were full of water surrounded you.

2 Samuel 22:13

General Information:

David's song to Yahweh continues. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: Parallelism)

From the lightning before him coals of fire fell

Possible meanings are 1) "Out of his bright light he sent burning coals" or 2) "From his brightness he sent lightning"

From the lightning before him

David continues describing Yahweh, whom he compares to a storm, coming to save him from his enemies. This emphasizes God's power and anger towards David's enemies. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

ULT

13 From the lightning before him coals of fire fell.

UST

13 Out of the lightning in front of you fire from burning coals flamed.

2 Samuel 22:14

The Most High shouted.

David describes Yahweh doing these actions a person would do. (See: Personification)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh

ULT

14 Yahweh thundered from the heavens. The Most High shouted.

UST

14 Then, Yahweh, you spoke like thunder from the sky. It was your voice, God, you who are greater than all other gods, that was heard.

2 Samuel 22:15

He shot arrows

David describes Yahweh doing these actions a person would do. (See: Personification)

He shot arrows...lightning bolts

David compares the lightning from Yahweh's storm to arrows that a soldier would use. (See: Metaphor)

lightning bolts and dispersed them

ULT
15 He shot arrows and scattered his enemies— lightning bolts and dispersed them.

UST
15 When you sent flashes of lightning, it was as though you shot your arrows and scattered your enemies.

David continues describing Yahweh, whom he compares to a storm, coming to save him from his enemies. This emphasizes God's power and anger towards David's enemies. (See: Metaphor)

2 Samuel 22:16

General Information:

This continues David's song to Yahweh. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: Parallelism)

Then the channels of the sea were seen...breath of his nostrils

When Yahweh shouted in his attack against David's enemies, it is compared to his power to create upheaval in the deepest parts of the ocean and the earth. This shows his great power and fierce anger. (See: Metaphor and Personification)

the channels of the sea were seen

This means that the sea water moved and the ocean floor was visible. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "People could see the channels of the sea" (See: Active or Passive)

the channels of the sea

the deepest part of the sea, from which the Hebrews believed was where the water in the sea came

the foundations of the world were laid bare at the rebuke of Yahweh, at the blast of the breath of his nostrils

David compares Yahweh's anger to turbulent movements of the ground. "This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh's rebuke, the breath of his nostrils, laid bare the foundations of the world" (See: Active or Passive)

ULT

16 Then the channels of the sea were seen; the foundations of the world were laid bare at the rebuke of Yahweh, at the blast of the breath of his nostrils.

UST

16 Then the bottom of the ocean was uncovered. The foundations of the world could be seen when you shouted, going into battle against our enemies and angry at them.

Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- exile, exiled

Translation Words - UST

- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- exile, exiled

2 Samuel 22:17

General Information:

This continues David's song to Yahweh. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: Parallelism)

out of the surging water

David compares his enemies to a flood that threatens to drown him. (See: Metaphor)

ULT

17 He reached down from above; he took hold of me! He pulled me out of the surging water.

UST

17 Yahweh, you reached down from heaven and lifted me up. You pulled me up from the deep water.

2 Samuel 22:18

He rescued me from my strong enemy

David's enemies were overwhelming. He praises God for delivering him from all his enemies.

Translation Words - ULT

- might, mighty, mighty works
- adversary, enemy

Translation Words - UST

- might, mighty, mighty works
- adversary, enemy

ULT

18 He rescued me from my strong enemy, from those who hated me, for they were too strong for me.

UST

18 You rescued me from my strong enemies, from those who hated me. I could not defeat them because they were very strong.

2 Samuel 22:19

General Information:

This continues David's song to Yahweh. He uses parallelism to emphasize what he is saying. (See: Parallelism)

They came against me on the day of my distress

"My enemies fought against me when I was in great trouble"

the day of my distress

"the time of my distress"

but Yahweh was my support

"but Yahweh supported me" or "but Yahweh helped me"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh

ULT
19 They came against me on the day of my distress, but Yahweh was my support.

UST
19 They attacked me when I was experiencing troubles, but Yahweh, you protected me.

2 Samuel 22:20

a wide open place

This refers to a place where there was no danger and his enemies could not trap him.

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- delight

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- delight

ULT

20 He also brought me out to a wide open place. He saved me because he was pleased with me.

UST

20 You brought me into a place where I was safe. You rescued me because you were pleased with me.

2 Samuel 22:21

to the measure of the cleanness of my hands

Here "cleanness of my hands" means the same as "righteousness." Alternate translation: "because I obey his commands" (See: Idiom and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- hand

ULT

21 Yahweh has rewarded me to the measure of my righteousness; he has restored me to the measure of the cleanness of my hands.

UST

21 Yahweh, you rewarded me because I do what is right. You did good things for me because I was innocent.

2 Samuel 22:22

General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

I have kept the ways of Yahweh

Here "the ways of Yahweh" refers to how Yahweh wants his people to act. This means David has done what Yahweh commands.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

ULT

22 For I have kept the ways of Yahweh and have not acted wickedly by turning from my God.

UST

22 Yahweh, I have obeyed your laws. I have not stopped worshiping you, my God.

2 Samuel 22:23

have been before me

This means David constantly reads and thinks about God's decrees.

Translation Words - ULT

• judge, judgment

Translation Words - UST

• judge, judgment

ULT

23 For all his righteous decrees have been before me; as for his statutes, I have not turned away from them.

UST

23 All of your decrees were in my mind, and I did not stop obeying all your decrees.

2 Samuel 22:24

General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

I have kept myself from sin

This refers to choosing not to sin against Yahweh. (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- iniquity

Translation Words - UST

- iniquity

ULT

24 I have also been innocent before him, and I have kept myself from sin.

UST

24 You know that I have not done anything that is evil. I have kept myself from doing things for which you would punish me.

2 Samuel 22:25

to the degree of my cleanness in his sight

Here "my cleanness" means the same as "my righteousness."
Alternate translation: "because he knows that I have done what he commands" (See: Idiom and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- return

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- return

ULT

25 Therefore Yahweh has restored me to the measure of my righteousness, to the degree of my cleanness in his sight.

UST

25 So you have rewarded me in return for my doing what is right, because you know that I am innocent of doing wrong things.

2 Samuel 22:26

General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- might, mighty, mighty works

Translation Words - UST

- might, mighty, mighty works

2 Samuel 22:27

you are perverse to the twisted

Here "perverse" means to be cunning or crafty, and "twisted" means to turn away from what is good and right. This means God is wise in how he deals with wicked people.

2 Samuel 22:28

General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

your eyes are against the proud

Here the metonym "your eyes" refers to what Yahweh sees. This means Yahweh watches the proud person. (See: Personification)

you bring them down

"you destroy their pride"

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

ULT

28 You save afflicted people, but your eyes are against the proud, and you bring them down.

UST

28 You rescue those who are humble, but you watch those who are proud and humiliate them.

2 Samuel 22:29

you are my lamp, Yahweh. Yahweh lights up my darkness

This metaphor compares Yahweh to a lamp, which means he gives David light and helps him to see when things seem hopeless. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- darkness

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- darkness

2 Samuel 22:30

General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

I can run over a barricade

Here "barricade" may refer to a group of soldiers or to a stone wall. Either way it means God enables David to defeat his enemies.

I can leap over a wall

David is exaggerating to emphasize Yahweh's help. Alternate translation: "I can climb over the wall that surrounds their city" (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

- God

Translation Words - UST

- God

ULT

30 For by you I can run over a barricade; by my God I can leap over a wall.

UST

30 With your strength I can break through a line of soldiers blocking my way; I can climb over the wall that surrounds their city.

2 Samuel 22:31

The word of Yahweh is pure

"Everything Yahweh says is true"

He is a shield

The metaphor "a shield" emphasizes God's power to protect his people. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh

ULT

31 As for God, his way is perfect. The word of Yahweh is pure. He is a shield to everyone who takes refuge in him.

UST

31 My God whom I worship, everything that you do is perfect. You always do what you promise that you will do. You are like a shield to all those who request you to protect them.

2 Samuel 22:32

General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

For who is God except Yahweh, and who is a rock except our God?

David uses this question to emphasize that there is no God apart from Yahweh. These may be translated as statements. Alternate translation: "Yahweh alone is God. Our God alone is a rock." (See: Rhetorical Question)

who is a rock

David compares Yahweh to a rock to emphasize his strength and ability to protect his people. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh

ULT

32 For who is God except Yahweh, and who is a rock except our God?

UST

32 Yahweh, you are the only one who is God. Only you are like a huge rock on top of which which we are protected.

2 Samuel 22:33

he leads the blameless person on his path

Yahweh keeps the blameless person safe and removes anything that may harm him.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Translation Words - UST

- God
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

2 Samuel 22:34

General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

He makes my feet swift like a deer and places me on the high hills

Here David's feet are compared to those of a deer using exaggeration. Yahweh gives David the strength to move quickly and provides secure places for protection and rest. (See: Simile and Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed

ULT

34 He makes my feet swift like a deer and places me on the high hills.

UST

34 When I walk in the mountains, you enable me to walk safely as a deer runs, without stumbling.

2 Samuel 22:35

my hands...and my arms

Both of these refer to David. (See: Synecdoche)

to bend a bow of bronze

Only a very strong man could use a bow made from metal.

Translation Words - ULT

- hand

Translation Words - UST

- hand

ULT

35 He trains my hands for war, and my arms to bend a bow of bronze.

UST

35 You teach me how to fight in a battle in order that I can shoot arrows well from a very strong bow.

2 Samuel 22:36

General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

the shield of your salvation

David compares Yahweh's power to save him to a shield that protects a soldier from his enemy. (See: Metaphor)

your favor

God answered David's prayers and granted him blessings and success over his enemies.

2 Samuel 22:37

You have made a wide place for my feet beneath me

Yahweh has put David in a safe place where his enemies cannot trap him. Here he refers to himself by his "feet" to emphasize his ability to stand securely. (See: Synecdoche)

ULT

37 You have made a wide place for my feet beneath me, so my feet have not slipped.

UST

37 You have not allowed my enemies to capture me, and I have not fallen down during battle.

2 Samuel 22:38

General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

pursued my enemies

"chased my enemies"

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- adversary, enemy
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- consume, devour

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- adversary, enemy
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- consume, devour

ULT

38 I pursued my enemies and destroyed them. I did not turn back until they were destroyed.

UST

38 I pursued my enemies and defeated them. I did not stop fighting them until they were all killed.

2 Samuel 22:39

I devoured them and smashed them

Here David compares himself to a wild animal. Alternate translation: "I completely destroyed them like a wild animal devouring its prey" (See: Metaphor)

under my feet

Here "feet" refers to the power and control of victory over his enemies. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- devour
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

39 I devoured them and smashed them; they cannot rise. They have fallen under my feet.

UST

39 I struck them down. I stabbed them with my sword, and they fell down at my feet and did not stand up again.

2 Samuel 22:40

General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

You put strength on me like a belt for battle

Here the strength that Yahweh gives is compared to a belt for battle that allowed David to do mighty things. (See: Simile)

you put under me those who rise up against me

"you helped me defeat those who fought against me"

Translation Words - ULT

- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

40 You put strength on me like a belt for battle; you put under me those who rise up against me.

UST

40 You have given me strength for fighting battles and caused those who were attacking me to fall down; I trampled on them.

2 Samuel 22:41

the back of my enemies' necks

Possible meanings are 1) David seeing the backs of the enemy as they run away or 2) David putting his foot on the back of his enemy's neck after he defeats him.

I annihilated

"I completely destroyed"

ULT

41 You gave me the back of my enemies' necks; I annihilated those who hated me.

UST

41 You caused my enemies to turn and run away from me. I destroyed those who hated me.

2 Samuel 22:42

General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

They cried

"My enemies cried"

they cried out to Yahweh, but he did not answer them

The time for Yahweh's judgment had come upon them.

Translation Words - ULT

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Translation Words - UST

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

ULT

42 They cried for help, but no one saved them; they cried out to Yahweh, but he did not answer them.

UST

42 They looked for someone to rescue them, but no one did. They cried out to you, Yahweh, for help, but you did not answer them.

2 Samuel 22:43

like dust on the ground...like mud in the streets

This means that David completely destroyed his enemies. These two phrases "like dust on the ground" and "like mud on the streets" have a similar meaning and are used for emphasis. (See: Simile and Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

43 I beat them into fine pieces like dust on the ground, I pulverized them like mud in the streets.

UST

43 I crushed them, and they became like tiny particles of dust. I trampled them, and they became like mud in the streets.

2 Samuel 22:44

General Information:

David continues his song to Yahweh.

from the disputes of my own people

This refers to those among the Israelites who rebelled against King David.

You have kept me as the head of nations

"You placed me as ruler over the nations." Here "nations" refers to other nations besides Israel.

A people that I have not known

"A foreign people"

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- nation
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- nation
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

44 You also have rescued me from the disputes of my own people. You have kept me as the head of nations. A people that I have not known serves me.

UST

44 You rescued me from those who tried to rebel against me, and you appointed me to rule many nations. People whom I did not know previously are now under my authority.

2 Samuel 22:45

Foreigners were forced to bow to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Foreigners bowed down to me" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions
- alien, foreign, foreigner

Translation Words - UST

- son
- deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions
- alien, foreign, foreigner

ULT

45 Foreigners were forced to bow to me. As soon as they heard of me, they obeyed me.

UST

45 Foreigners humbly bowed down in front of me. As soon as they heard about me, they obeyed me.

2 Samuel 22:46

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- alien, foreign, foreigner

Translation Words - UST

- son
- alien, foreign, foreigner

ULT

46 The foreigners came trembling out of their strongholds.

UST

46 They became afraid, and they came to me, trembling, from the places where they were hiding.

2 Samuel 22:47

May my rock be praised. May God be exalted

These sentences have similar meaning and are used for emphasis. These may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May everyone praise my rock. May everyone exalt God" (See: Parallelism and Active or Passive)

my rock...the rock

David compares Yahweh to a rock to emphasize his power to protect his people. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- Yahweh
- exalt, exalted, exaltation

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- Yahweh
- exalt, exalted, exaltation

ULT

[47] Yahweh lives! May my rock be praised. May God be exalted, the rock of my salvation.

UST

[47] Yahweh, you are alive! I praise you! You are like a huge rock on top of which I am safe! You are the one who rescues me. Everyone should exalt you.

2 Samuel 22:48

the one who brings down peoples under me

"the one who puts the people of other nations under my rule"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- God
- people, people group,

ULT

48 This is the God who executes vengeance for me, the one who brings down peoples under me.

UST

48 You enable me to conquer my enemies, and you cause people of other nations to be under my authority.

2 Samuel 22:49

you lifted me up above those who rose up against me

"you saved me from my enemies and gave me honor"

from violent men

"from those who want to harm me"

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- adversary, enemy

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- adversary, enemy

ULT

49 He sets me free from my enemies. Indeed, you lifted me up above those who rose up against me. You rescue me from violent men.

UST

49 You delivered me from my enemies, and you caused me to be honored more than they were. You rescued me from men who always acted violently.

2 Samuel 22:50

General Information:

David concludes his song to Yahweh.

to your name

Here the metonym "name" refers to Yahweh's reputation. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- nation

ULT

50 Therefore I will give thanks to you, Yahweh, among the nations; I will sing praises to your name.

UST

50 Because of all this, I praise you among many people groups, and I sing to praise you.

2 Samuel 22:51

he shows his covenant loyalty to his anointed one

Here David may be referring to the promises Yahweh made in 2 Samuel 7:8

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- king, kingdom, kingship
- proud, pride, prideful

Translation Words - UST

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- king, kingdom, kingship
- proud, pride, prideful

ULT

51 God gives great victory to his king, and he shows his covenant loyalty to his anointed one, to David and to his descendants forever."

22:11 [1] Some versions have, *He flew on the wings of the wind* .

UST

51 You enable me, whom you appointed to be king, to conquer my enemies. You faithfully love me, David, and you will love my descendants forever."

2 Samuel 23

2 Samuel 23 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 23:2-7.

2 Samuel 23:8-39 is a list of the famous people in David's army along with some of the special deeds some of them did. (See: work, works, deeds)

Special concepts in this chapter

Everlasting covenant

This is a reference to the covenant God previously made with David. (See: 2 Samuel 7, eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever and covenant).

2 Samuel 23:1

Now

This marks the beginning of a new section of the book.

these are the last words

This refers to what David will say in 2 Samuel 23:2-7.

the man who was highly honored, the one anointed by the God of Jacob

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the man whom the God of Jacob highly honored and anointed" (See: Active or Passive)

anointed by the God of Jacob

Anointing was done by pouring oil on a person's head. This was done to choose who would serve God as king or priest. (See: Symbolic Action)

psalmist

This is a person who writes psalms or songs.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- David
- Jesse
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- David
- Jesse
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

1 Now these are the last words of David — David son of Jesse, the man who was highly honored, the one anointed by the God of Jacob, the sweet psalmist of Israel.

UST

1 David son of Jesse, was a man whom God caused to become great. The God whom Jacob worshiped made him king of Israel. David wrote beautiful songs for the people of Israel. This is the last song that he wrote:

2 Samuel 23:2

by me

by David

and his word was on my tongue

Here "on my tongue" is a metonym for David speaking. Alternate translation: "he gave me a message to speak" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh

ULT

2 "The Spirit of Yahweh spoke by me, and his word was on my tongue.

UST

2 "The Spirit of Yahweh tells me what to say. The message that I speak comes from him.

2 Samuel 23:3

General Information:

This continues David's last words.

The God of Israel spoke, the Rock of Israel...me

Here the "God of Israel" is the same as the "Rock of Israel." The two phrases say essentially the same thing. David compares God to a rock to emphasize his power to protect his people. (See: Parallelism and Metaphor)

The one who rules righteously over men, who rules in the fear of God

These two sentences both say that the king will respect God and do what God wants him to do. (See: Parallelism)

in the fear of God

"respecting God"

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- dominion
- dominion
- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- dominion
- dominion
- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites

ULT

3 The God of Israel spoke, the Rock of Israel said to me, 'The one who rules righteously over men, who rules in the fear of God.

UST

3 God, the one whom we Israelite people worship, has spoken. The one who protects us people of Israel said to me, 'Kings who rule fairly over people have an awesome respect for me, God.

2 Samuel 23:4

He will be like the morning light...sunshine after rain

Here God is comparing the king to the morning light and sunshine after the rain. These are all ways of saying this king would be a delight to God and a blessing for the people. These two phrases have a similar meaning and are used for emphasis. Alternate translation: "He will be a delight to all" (See: Simile and Parallelism)

ULT

4 He will be like the morning light when the sun rises, a morning without clouds, when the tender grass springs up from the earth through bright sunshine after rain.

UST

4 They are like the sun that shines at dawn and causes the grass to sprout after the rain ends.'

2 Samuel 23:5

General Information:

This continues David's last words.

Indeed, is my family not like this before God?

Here David is saying that he agrees with God. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "My family is indeed like this before God!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Has he not made...way?

David acknowledges that God has made a covenant with him. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "He has indeed made...way." (See: Rhetorical Question)

ordered and sure

This means God's covenant is properly organized and will not change so David's family can trust it.

Does he not increase my salvation...desire?

David believes that God will always help him and cause him to prosper. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "He increases my salvation and gives me my every desire." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- house

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- house

ULT

5 Indeed, is my family not like this before God? Has he not made an everlasting covenant with me, ordered and sure in every way? Does he not increase my salvation and fulfill my every desire?

UST

5 And truly, that is how God will surely bless my family because he made a covenant with me that will last forever, a covenant in which he promises that no part of it will ever be changed. He will surely cause me to prosper, and he will always help me, and that is all that I desire.

2 Samuel 23:6

General Information:

This concludes David's last words.

But the worthless will all be like thorns to be thrown away

Here the wicked person is compared to useless thorns. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But the wicked person is worthless and dangerous like thorns we throw away" (See: Simile and Active or Passive)

because they cannot be gathered by one's hands

"because no one can pick them up with his hands without the thorns hurting him"

Translation Words - ULT

- hand

Translation Words - UST

- hand

ULT

⁶ But the worthless will all be like thorns to be thrown away, because they cannot be gathered by one's hands.

UST

⁶ But he will get rid of people who do not honor him, just as people throw away thorns that injure people if they try to pick them up with their hands.

2 Samuel 23:7

They must be burned up where they lie

"Where thorns are found, that is where they must be burned." This means God will destroy wicked people.

ULT

7 The man who touches them must use an iron tool or the shaft of a spear. They must be burned up where they lie.'"

UST

7 Someone who wants to get rid of thornbushes does not grab them, but he uses an iron shovel or a spear to dig them out and then he burns them completely."

2 Samuel 23:8

Jeshbaal

This is the name of a man. Other versions read Josheb Basshebeth, Jashobeam, Ishbaal, or Ishbosheth because various ancient copies have these variations. Translators may choose to say this in a footnote to their translation (See: How to Translate Names)

Hachmonite

This is the name of a people group. Alternate translation: "son of Hachmon" (See: How to Translate Names)

eight hundred

"800" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

Translation Words - UST

- name
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

ULT

8 These are the names of David's mighty men: Jeshbaal the Hachmonite was the leader of the mighty men. He killed eight hundred men on one occasion. [1]

UST

8 These are the names of David's greatest soldiers. The first was Jeshbaal, from the Hachmon clan. He was the leader of the greatest soldiers. Once he fought against eight hundred enemies and killed them all with his spear.

2 Samuel 23:9

General Information:

This continues the list of David's greatest soldiers. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- might, mighty, mighty works
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- might, mighty, mighty works
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

ULT

9 After him was Eleazar son of Dodai the Ahohite, one of the three mighty men. He was with David when they taunted the Philistines who had gathered together to do battle, and when the men of Israel had retreated.

UST

9 The second of the greatest warriors was Eleazar son of Dodo, who was from the clan of Ahoh. One day he was with David when they defied the soldiers of Philistia who had gathered there for the battle. The other Israelite soldiers retreated,

2 Samuel 23:10

The army returned after Eleazar

This means that the army returned after Eleazar returned from battle. Alternate translation: "The Israeli army returned to the battle field after Eleazer had already won the battle" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

only to strip the bodies

"only to take what they wanted from the dead bodies of the enemies"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- hand
- hand
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- hand
- hand
- people, people group,

ULT

10 Eleazar stood and fought the Philistines until his hand became weary and his hand stiffened to the grip of his sword. Yahweh brought about a great victory that day. The army returned after Eleazar, only to strip the bodies.

UST

10 but Eleazar stood there and fought the soldiers of Philistia until his arm became very tired, with the result that his hand cramped and he could not stop gripping his sword. Yahweh won a great victory on that day. And afterwards the other Israelite soldiers returned to where Eleazar was, and stripped off the armor from the men whom he had killed.

2 Samuel 23:11

General Information:

This continues the list of David's greatest soldiers. (See: How to Translate Names)

a field of lentils

"a field where someone had planted lentils"

lentils

a flat seed, eaten like beans (See: Translate Unknowns)

the army fled

"the Israelite army ran away"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Philistines
- Philistines
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Philistines
- Philistines
- people, people group,

ULT

11 After him was Shammah son of Agee, a Hararite. The Philistines gathered together where there was a field of lentils, and the army fled from them.

UST

11 The third of the greatest warriors was Shammah son of Agee from the clan of Harar. One time the Philistine soldiers gathered at the city of Lehi, where there was a field full of lentils that they wanted to steal. The other Israelite soldiers ran away from the Philistine troops,

2 Samuel 23:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Philistines
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Philistines
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

ULT

12 But Shammah stood in the middle of the field and defended it. He killed the Philistines, and Yahweh brought about a great victory.

UST

12 but Shammah stood there in the field and did not let the Philistine soldiers steal the peas, and killed them. Yahweh won a great victory on that day.

2 Samuel 23:13

Three of the thirty

These are not the same three soldiers mentioned in 2 Samuel 23:8-12.

the thirty

"the 30" or "the thirty bravest Israelite soldiers." The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. (See: Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

cave of Adullam

"cave near the town of Adullam." Adullam is near Bethlehem. (See: How to Translate Names)

Valley of Rephaim

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in 2 Samuel 5:18.

Translation Words - ULT

- Philistines
- David
- head
- harvest, reap

Translation Words - UST

- Philistines
- David
- head
- harvest, reap

ULT

[13] Three of the thirty soldiers went down to David at harvest time, to the cave of Adullam. The army of the Philistines was camped in the Valley of Rephaim.

UST

[13] At one time, when it was almost time to harvest the crops, three of those thirty men went down to the Cave of Adullam, where David was staying. A group of men from the Philistine army had set up their tents in the Valley of Rephaim near Jerusalem.

2 Samuel 23:14

in his stronghold

"in his protected place"

the Philistines had established at Bethlehem

"some Philistines soldiers were controlling the village of Bethlehem"

Translation Words - ULT

- Philistines

Translation Words - UST

- Philistines

2 Samuel 23:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- David
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT

15 David was longing for water and said, "If only someone would give me water to drink from the well at Bethlehem, the well that is by the gate!"

UST

15 One day David very much wanted some water to drink, and said, "I wish that someone would bring me some water from the well near the gate at Bethlehem!"

2 Samuel 23:16

broke through the army

"fought their way through the enemy army"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Philistines
- David
- might, mighty, mighty works
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Philistines
- David
- might, mighty, mighty works
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT

16 So these three mighty men broke through the army of the Philistines and drew water out of the well of Bethlehem, the well at the gate. They took the water and brought it to David, but he refused to drink it. Instead, he poured it out to Yahweh.

UST

16 So his three greatest warriors forced through the camp of Philistine soldiers and drew some water from the well, and brought it to David. But he would not drink it. Instead, he poured it out on the ground to be an offering to Yahweh.

2 Samuel 23:17

Should I drink the blood of men who have risked their lives?

David compares the water to blood because the men risked their lives to bring the water to him. He uses a question to emphasize this. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Drinking this water would be like drinking the blood of those men who have risked their lives to bring it to me." (See: Rhetorical Question and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Yahweh
- might, mighty, mighty works

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- Yahweh
- might, mighty, mighty works

ULT

17 Then he said, "Yahweh, far be it from me, that I should do this. Should I drink the blood of men who have risked their lives?" So he refused to drink it. These things were done by the three mighty.

UST

17 He said, "Yahweh, it would certainly not be right for me to drink this water! That would be like drinking the blood of these men who were willing to die for me!" So he refused to drink it. That was one of the things that those three great warriors did.

2 Samuel 23:18

Abishai...Zeruiah

These are the names of men. Translate them as in 2 Samuel 2:18.

captain over the three

This means Abishai was the leader of the three who went and got water for David.

three hundred men

"300 men" (See: Numbers)

He was often mentioned along with the three soldiers

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People often mentioned him when they spoke about the three bravest men" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- name
- head
- raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- name
- head
- raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

ULT

18 Abishai, brother of Joab and son of Zeruiah, was captain over the three. He once fought with his spear against three hundred men and killed them. He was often mentioned along with the three soldiers.

UST

18 Abishai, Joab's younger brother, was the leader of David's greatest soldiers. One day he fought against three hundred men and killed them all with his spear. As a result, he also became famous.

2 Samuel 23:19

Was he not even more famous than the three?

This question is used to emphasize how famous he was. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "He was even more famous than the three." (See: Rhetorical Question)

three most famous soldiers

This refers to Josheb Basshebeth, Eleazar, and Shimeah. Abishai was not as famous as these soldiers.

Translation Words - ULT

- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- chief

Translation Words - UST

- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- chief

ULT

19 Was he not even more famous than the three? He was made their captain. However, his fame did not equal the fame of the three most famous soldiers.

UST

19 He was the most famous of the greatest soldiers, and he became their leader, but even he was not one of the three greatest warriors.

2 Samuel 23:20

Kabzeel

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Jehoiada

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in 2 Samuel 8:18.

Ariel

This is the name of a man.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- work, works, deeds
- Moab, Moabite

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- work, works, deeds
- Moab, Moabite

ULT

20 Benaiah from Kabzeel was the son of Jehoiada; he was a strong man who did mighty feats. He killed the two sons of Ariel of Moab. He also went down into a pit and killed a lion while it was snowing.

UST

20 Jehoiada's son Benaiah, from the city of Kabzeel, also did great deeds. He killed two of the best warriors from the Moab people group. Also, he went down into a pit on a day when snow was falling on the ground, and killed a lion there.

2 Samuel 23:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- hand

ULT

21 Then he killed a very large Egyptian man. The Egyptian had a spear in his hand, but Benaiah fought against him with only a staff. He seized the spear out of the Egyptian's hand and then killed him with his own spear.

UST

21 He also killed a huge soldier from Egypt who carried a spear. Benaiah had only his club, but he attacked the giant with it. Then he snatched the spear from the man's hand and killed him with his own spear.

2 Samuel 23:22

did these feats

"did these mighty deeds"

he was named alongside the three mighty men

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people praise him like they praised the three mighty men" (See: Active or Passive)

three mighty men

This refers to Josheb Basshebeth, Eleazar, and Shimeah.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- might, mighty, mighty works

Translation Words - UST

- son
- name
- might, mighty, mighty works

ULT

22 Benaiah son of Jehoiada did these feats, and he was named alongside the three mighty men.

UST

22 Those are some of the things that Benaiah did. As a result, he became famous, like the three greatest warriors were.

2 Samuel 23:23

He was more highly regarded than the thirty soldiers in general, but he was not regarded quite as highly as the three mighty men

"He was more famous than the other 30 soldiers except for the three best soldiers" (See: Numbers)

his bodyguard

a group of soldiers in charge of guarding David

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- David
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- David
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

ULT

23 He was more highly regarded than the thirty soldiers in general, but he was not regarded quite as highly as the three mighty men. Yet David put him in charge of his bodyguard.

UST

23 He was more honored than the other greatest soldiers, but not as famous as the three greatest. David appointed him to be the commander of his bodyguards.

2 Samuel 23:24

General Information:

This is a list of David's greatest soldiers. (See: How to Translate Names)

The thirty

"The 30 very famous soldiers" (See: Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son

ULT

24 The thirty included the following men: Asahel brother of Joab, Elhanan son of Dodo from Bethlehem,

UST

24 These are the names of the great warriors:

> Asahel, the younger brother of Joab,

> Elhanan son of Dodo, from Bethlehem,

2 Samuel 23:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

25 Shammah the Harodite, Elika the Harodite,

UST

25 Shammah and Elika, from the clan of Harod,

2 Samuel 23:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

26 Helez the Paltite, Ira son of Ikkesh the Tekoite,

UST

26 Helez, from the city of Pelet,

Ira son of Ikkesh, from the city of Tekoa,

2 Samuel 23:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

27 Abiezer the Anathothite, Sibbekai [2] the Hushathite,

UST

27 Abiezer, from the city of Anathoth,

Mebunnai whose other name was Sibbekai, from Hushah's clan,

2 Samuel 23:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

28 Zalmon the Ahohite, Maharai the Netophathite;

UST

28 Zalmon whose other name was Ilai, from Ahoh's clan,

Maharai, from the city of Netophah,

2 Samuel 23:29

General Information:

This continues the list of David's greatest soldiers. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite

ULT

29 Heleb son of Baanah, the Netophathite, Ithai son of Ribai from Gibeah of the Benjamites,

UST

29 Heleb son of Baanah, also from Netophah,

Ithai son of Ribai, from the city of Gibeah in the land that belonged to the tribe of Benjamin,

2 Samuel 23:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

30 Benaiah the Pirathonite, Hiddai of the valleys of Gaash.

UST

30 Benaiah, from the city of Pirathon,

> Hiddai, from the valleys near the valleys of Gaash,

2 Samuel 23:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

31 Abi-Albon the Arbathite, Azmaveth the Barhumite,

UST

31 Abi-Albon, from the clan of Arabah,

Azmaveth, from the city of Bahurim,

2 Samuel 23:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• son

Translation Words - UST

• son

ULT

32 Eliahba the Shaalbonite, the sons of Jashen, Jonathan son of Shammah the Hararite;

UST

32 Eliahba, from the city of Shaalbon—

> The sons of Jashen,
>
> Jonathan son of Shammah from the city of Harar,

2 Samuel 23:33

General Information:

This continues the list of David's greatest soldiers. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

2 Samuel 23:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- son (3)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)
- son (3)

ULT

34 Eliphelet son of Ahasbai the Maakathite, Eliam son of Ahithophel the Gilonite,

UST

34 Eliphelet son of Ahasbai, from the city of Maacah,

> Eliam son of Ahithophel, from the city of Gilo,

2 Samuel 23:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

35 Hezro the Carmelite, Paarai the Arbite,

UST

35 Hezro, from the city of Carmel,

Paarai, from the city of Arba,

2 Samuel 23:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

36 Igal son of Nathan from Zobah, Bani from the tribe of Gad,

36 Igal son of Nathan, from the city of Zobah,

> Bani, from the tribe of Gad;

2 Samuel 23:37

General Information:

This concludes the list of David's greatest soldiers. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Ammon, Ammonite

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Ammon, Ammonite

ULT
37 Zelek the Ammonite, Naharai the Beerothite, armor bearer to Joab son of Zeruiah,

UST
37 Zelek, from the Ammon people group,

Naharai, the man who carried Joab's weapons, from the city of Beeroth,

2 Samuel 23:38

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

38 Ira the Ithrite, Gareb the Ithrite,

UST

38 Ira and Gareb, from the city of Jattir,

2 Samuel 23:39

thirty-seven in all

"there were 37 total" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- Hittite

Translation Words - UST

- Hittite

2 Samuel 24

2 Samuel 24 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Counting soldiers

David ordered the leaders of his army to count how many men of fighting age there were. He was not supposed to do this because it showed he did not trust God. God was displeased and offered David three punishments. (See: trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness)

2 Samuel 24:1

the anger of Yahweh was ignited against Israel

The word "ignite" means start a fire. Here Yahweh's anger is compared to that of a fire. Alternate translation: "the anger of Yahweh started to burn like a fire" (See: Metaphor)

he moved David against them

"he caused David to oppose them"

Go, count Israel and Judah

In the law of Moses, God prohibited the kings of Israel from taking a census of fighting men. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- David
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- David
- walk, walked

ULT

1 Again the anger of Yahweh was ignited against Israel, and he moved David against them saying, "Go, count Israel and Judah."

UST

1 Yahweh was angry with the Israelite people again, so he incited David to cause trouble for them. He said to David, "Send some men to count the people of Israel and Judah."

2 Samuel 24:2

Dan to Beersheba

This phrase uses two place names Dan, in the far north, and Beersheba, in the far south, to represent the entire country. (See: Merism)

count all the people…fit for battle

This means to count all the men except those men who are either too young, too old, or physically unable to fight.

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

2 The king said to Joab the commander of the army, who was with him, "Go throughout all the tribes of Israel, from Dan to Beersheba, and count all the people, so that I may know the total number of men fit for battle."

UST

2 So the king said to Joab, the commander of his army, "Go with your officers through all the tribes of Israel, from Dan in the far north to Beersheba in the far south, and count the people, in order that I may know how many people there are who are able to be soldiers in the army."

2 Samuel 24:3

multiply...hundred times

This means "produce 100 more people for every one person there is now." (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- delight
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- delight
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

3 Joab said to the king, "May Yahweh your God multiply the number of people a hundred times, and may the eyes of my master the king see it take place. But why does my master the king want this?"

UST

3 But Joab replied to the king, "Your Majesty, I wish that Yahweh our God will cause there to be a hundred times as many people in Israel as there are now, and I wish that you would see that happen before you die. But why do you want us to do this?"

2 Samuel 24:4

the king's word was final against Joab

Joab and the other commanders of King David's army were not able to convince David to not take a census.

the king's word

This phrase represents the king's command to them. Alternate translation: "what the king had commanded" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

4 Nevertheless, the king's word was final against Joab and against the commanders of the army. So Joab and the commanders went out from the king's presence to count the people of Israel.

UST

4 But the king commanded Joab and his officers to do it. So they left the king and went out to count the people of Israel.

2 Samuel 24:5

They crossed

"Joab and the commanders of the army crossed"

Aroer

This was a city on the northern edge of the Arnon River. (See: How to Translate Names)

Jazer

This is a town in Gad. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jordan River, Jordan
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Translation Words - UST

- Jordan River, Jordan
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

ULT

5 They crossed over the Jordan and encamped near Aroer, south of the city in the valley. Then they traveled on through Gad to Jazer.

UST

5 They crossed the Jordan River and set up their tents south of Aroer, in the middle of the valley, in the territory that was given to the tribe of Gad. From there they went north to Jazer.

2 Samuel 24:6

Tahtim Hodshi

This may refer to the town of Kadesh in the land of the Hittite people. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Gilead, Gileadite
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Gilead, Gileadite
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

6 They came to Gilead and to the land of Tahtim Hodshi, then on to Dan Jaan and around toward Sidon.

UST

6 Then they went north to Gilead and to Kadesh, in the land where the Heth people group lived. Then they went to Dan in the far north of Israel, and then further west, to Sidon near the Mediterranean Sea.

2 Samuel 24:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Judea
- Tyre, Tyrians
- Hivite

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Judea
- Tyre, Tyrians
- Hivite

ULT

7 They reached the stronghold of Tyre and all the cities of the Hivites and the Canaanites. Then they went out to the Negev in Judah at Beersheba.

UST

7 Then they went south to Tyre, a city with high walls around it, and to all the cities where the Hiv and Canaan people groups lived. Then they went east to Beersheba, in the southern wilderness of Judah.

2 Samuel 24:8

they had gone

"Joab and the commanders had gone"

nine months and twenty days

"9 months and 20 days" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

8 When they had gone throughout all the land, they came back to Jerusalem at the end of nine months and twenty days.

UST

8 After nine months and twenty days, when they had finished going throughout the land and counting the people, they returned to Jerusalem.

2 Samuel 24:9

Then Joab reported the total of the count of the fighting men to the king

"Then Joab told the king the total number of men ready for battle"

in Israel

This refers to the northern tribes of Israel.

800,000...500,000

"eight hundred thousand...five hundred thousand" (See: Numbers)

who drew the sword

This metonym refers to the men who were ready to fight in the army. (See: Metonymy)

of Judah

This refers to the southern tribe of Judah.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- people, people group,
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- people, people group,
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

9 Then Joab reported the total of the count of the fighting men to the king. There were in Israel 800,000 brave men who drew the sword, and the men of Judah were 500,000 men.

UST

9 They reported to the king the number of people that they had counted. There were 800,000 men in Israel and 500,000 men in Judah who were able to become soldiers in the army.

2 Samuel 24:10

David's heart afflicted him

The "heart" here is a metonym for David's emotions and conscience. Alternate translation: "David felt guilty" (See: Metonymy)

Now, Yahweh, take away your servant's guilt

David refers to himself as "your servant." This is a polite way to speak to someone with greater authority.

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- heart
- iniquity
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- heart
- iniquity
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

10 Then David's heart afflicted him after he had counted the men. So he said to Yahweh, "I have greatly sinned by doing this. Now, Yahweh, take away your servant's guilt, for I have acted very foolishly."

UST

10 But after David's men had counted the people, David regretted that he had told them to do that. One night he said to Yahweh, "I have committed a very great sin. Please forgive me, because what I have done is very foolish."

2 Samuel 24:11

the word of Yahweh came to the prophet Gad, David's seer, saying,

The idiom "the word of Yahweh came to" is used to introduce a special message from God. See how you translated this idiom in 2 Samuel 7:4. Alternate translation: "Yahweh gave a message to the prophet Gad, David's seer. He said," or "Yahweh spoke this message to the prophet Gad, David's seer:" (See: Idiom)

David's seer

This means Gad was the official prophet in the royal palace.

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- Gad

Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- Gad

ULT

11 When David rose up in the morning, the word of Yahweh came to the prophet Gad, David's seer, saying,

UST

11 When David got up the next morning, Yahweh gave a message to the prophet Gad. He said to him,

2 Samuel 24:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- David
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- David
- walk, walked

2 Samuel 24:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- David
- Gad
- adversary, enemy
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- famine
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- David
- Gad
- adversary, enemy
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- famine
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

13 So Gad went to David and said to him, "Will three years of famine come to you in your land? Or will you flee three months from your enemies while they pursue you? Or will there be three days of plague in your land? Now decide what answer I should return to him who sent me."

UST

13 So Gad went to David and told him what Yahweh had said. He said to David, "You can choose whether there will be three years of famine in your land, or three months of your army running away from your enemies, or three days when there will be a plague in your land. You must think about it and choose which one you want, and tell me, and I will return to Yahweh and tell him what your answer is."

2 Samuel 24:14

I am in deep trouble

"I am in terrible trouble"

Let us fall into Yahweh's hands rather than into the hand of man

Here "hands" refer to power or control. Alternate translation: "Let Yahweh and not people punish us" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- David
- Gad
- hand
- hand
- adversary, enemy

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- David
- Gad
- hand
- hand
- adversary, enemy

ULT

14 Then David said to Gad, "I am in deep trouble. Let us fall into Yahweh's hands rather than into the hand of man, for his merciful actions are very great."

UST

14 David said to Gad, "All those are very terrible things for me to choose between! But allow Yahweh to punish me, because he is very merciful. Do not allow humans to punish me, because they will not be merciful."

2 Samuel 24:15

a fixed time

This is the time God decided he would stop the plague.

seventy thousand

"70,000" (See: Numbers)

from Dan to Beersheba

Here mentioning the city of Dan in the extreme north and the city Beersheba in the extreme south means the entire nation of Israel. (See: Merism)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- feast, feasting
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- feast, feasting
- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

15 So Yahweh sent a plague on Israel from the morning to a fixed time, and seventy thousand people died from Dan to Beersheba.

UST

15 So Yahweh sent a plague on the Israelite people. It started that morning and did not stop until the time that he had chosen. All over the land, from Dan to Beersheba, there were seventy thousand Israelites who died because of the plague.

2 Samuel 24:16

the angel reached out with his hand toward Jerusalem to destroy it

Here the metonym "hand" stands for the angel's power. Alternate translation: "the angel was about to destroy the people in Jerusalem" (See: Metonymy)

Yahweh changed his mind because of the harm

This means that Yahweh stopped the evil that he was allowing the angel to do. Alternate translation: "Yahweh felt grieved about the harm"

Now draw back your hand

The metonym "hand" stands for the angel's power. Alternate translation: "Do not harm them any longer" (See: Metonymy)

Araunah

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

the threshing floor

A threshing floor was a hard, flat surface where edible grain was separated from chaff.

ULT

16 When the angel reached out with his hand toward Jerusalem to destroy it, Yahweh changed his mind because of the harm it would cause, and he said to the angel who was destroying people, "Enough! Now draw back your hand." At that time the angel of Yahweh was standing at the threshing floor of Araunah the Jebusite.

UST

16 When Yahweh's angel stretched out his hand toward Jerusalem to destroy the people by this plague, Yahweh grieved about punishing any more people. He said to the angel who was killing them with the plague, "Stop what you are doing! That is enough!" When he said that, the angel was standing at the ground where Araunah, from the Jebus people group, threshed grain.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Jerusalem
- Jebus, Jebusite
- hand
- hand
- people, people group,
- thresh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Jerusalem
- Jebus, Jebusite
- hand
- hand
- people, people group,
- thresh

2 Samuel 24:17

I have sinned, and I have acted perversely

These phrases mean the same thing and are combined for emphasis. Alternate translation: "I have sinned terribly" (See: Parallelism)

But these sheep, what have they done?

David uses a question and compares the people to sheep to emphasize that they have done nothing wrong. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "These ordinary people have done nothing wrong." (See: Rhetorical Question and Metaphor)

Please let your hand punish me

Here the metonym "hand" refers to power. Alternate translation: "Please punish me" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- people, people group,
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- people, people group,
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

ULT

17 Then David spoke to Yahweh when he saw the angel who had attacked the people, and said, "I have sinned, and I have acted perversely. But these sheep, what have they done? Please let your hand punish me and my father's family!"

UST

17 When David saw the angel who was causing the people to become sick and die, he said to Yahweh, "Truly, I am the one who has committed the sin. I have done a very wicked thing, but these people are as innocent as sheep. They have certainly not done anything that is wrong. So you should punish me and my family, not these people!"

2 Samuel 24:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- David
- Gad
- Jebus, Jebusite

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- David
- Gad
- Jebus, Jebusite

ULT

18 Then Gad came that day to David and said to him, "Go up and build an altar for Yahweh at the threshing floor of Araunah the Jebusite."

UST

18 That day Gad came to David and said to him, "Go up to the place where Araunah threshes grain, and build an altar to worship Yahweh there."

2 Samuel 24:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- David
- Gad

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- David
- Gad

ULT

19 So David went up as Gad instructed him to do, as Yahweh had commanded.

UST

19 So David did what Gad told him to do, which was what Yahweh had commanded, and he went up there.

2 Samuel 24:20

bowed to the king with his face to the ground

He was showing deep respect and honor to the king. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- prostrate, worship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- prostrate, worship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

20 Araunah looked out and saw the king and his servants approaching. So Araunah went out and bowed to the king with his face to the ground.

UST

20 When Araunah looked down and saw the king and his officials coming toward him, he prostrated himself on the ground in front of the king, with his face touching the ground.

2 Samuel 24:21

so that the plague may be removed from the people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that Yahweh will remove this plague from the people" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- David
- people, people group,
- thresh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- David
- people, people group,
- thresh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

21 Then Araunah said, "Why has my master the king come to me, his servant?" David replied, "To buy your threshing floor, so I can build an altar for Yahweh, so that the plague may be removed from the people."

UST

21 Araunah said, "Your Majesty, why have you come to me?" David replied, "I have come to buy this ground where you thresh grain, in order to build an altar to Yahweh and offer sacrifices on it, so that he will stop the plague."

2 Samuel 24:22

what is good in your sight

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "what you think is good" or "what is good in your judgement" (See: Metaphor)

threshing sledges

heavy boards used to separate grain from the rest of the wheat plant

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

[22] Araunah said to David, "Take it as your own, my master the king. Do with it what is good in your sight. Look, here are oxen for the burnt offering and threshing sledges and ox yokes for the wood.

UST

[22] Araunah replied to David, "Your Majesty, offer to Yahweh whatever you wish. Here, take my oxen to use for the offering that will be completely burned on the altar. And here, take their yokes and the boards that I use for the threshing, and use them for the wood that you will burn.

2 Samuel 24:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

23 All this, my king, I, Araunah, will give to you." Then he said to the king, "May Yahweh your God accept you."

UST

23 I, Araunah, am giving all this to you, my king." Then he said, "I desire that Yahweh our God will accept your offering."

2 Samuel 24:24

I will not offer…anything that costs me nothing

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "I will only offer…something that I have paid for" (See: Double Negatives)

fifty shekels

"50 shekels." A shekel is 11 grams. (See: Numbers and Biblical Money)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- David
- silver
- thresh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- burnt offering, offering by fire

Translation Words - UST

- God
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- David
- silver
- thresh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- burnt offering, offering by fire

ULT

24 The king said to Araunah, "No, I insist on buying it at a price. I will not offer as a burnt offering to Yahweh anything that costs me nothing." So David bought the threshing floor and the oxen for fifty shekels of silver.

UST

24 But the king said to Araunah, "No, I will not take these things as a gift. I will pay you for it. I will not offer sacrifices that have cost me nothing, and offer them to Yahweh to be completely burned on the altar." So he paid fifty pieces of silver to Araunah for the oxen and the ground.

2 Samuel 24:25

on behalf of the land

Here the metonym "land" stands for the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "on behalf of the people of Israel" (See: Metonymy)

the plague on Israel was confined

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "God confined the plague that had been on Israel" or "God took the plague away from Israel" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- burnt offering, offering by fire

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- burnt offering, offering by fire

ULT

25 David built an altar for Yahweh there and offered on it burnt offerings and fellowship offerings. So Yahweh answered the prayer on behalf of the land, and the plague on Israel was confined.

UST

25 Then David built an altar to Yahweh, and he offered the oxen to be completely burned on the altar, and he also offered sacrifices to restore fellowship with Yahweh. Then, Yahweh answered David's prayers, and he caused the plague in Israel to end.

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 12

Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

> This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples from the Bible

> *...from ***childhood*** you have known the sacred writings...* (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

> **...from** childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

> Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

> But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**.
> But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**.
> But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

> Today the people in this house **have been saved**...
> Today God **has saved** the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

> This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

- ACTIVE: ***My father*** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: ***The house*** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE**: ***My father*** built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: ***The house*** was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: ***The house*** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

> And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants ***were killed***, and your servant Uriah the Hittite ***was killed***, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

> In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal **was broken down**… (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

> **A loaf of bread** was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

> **The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

> **It would be better for him if a millstone** were put

around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

> It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.
> It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

> **A loaf of bread** was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

> He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Abstract Nouns
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

Apostrophe

Definition

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him.

Description

He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

Reason this is a translation issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible

> Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

> Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34 ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

> He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: **"Altar**, **altar**! This is what Yahweh says, 'See, …on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> **He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh:** "Altar

, altar! This is what Yahweh says, 'See,…on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

> He said this about the altar: "This is what Yahweh says **about this altar.** 'See,…they will burn people's bones on **it**.'"

Mountains of Gilboa

, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULT)

> **As for these mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **them**

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:21; 1:25)

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever **a speaker assumes his audience knows** before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

> This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

- When **the speaker does give the audience information**, he can do so in two ways:
  - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
  - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in *Tyre and Sidon* which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

> it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the ***day of judgment*** than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For ***they do not wash their hands when they eat***. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

> **Jesus said to him, "Foxes** have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

> Jesus said to him, "Foxes ***have holes to live in***, and the birds of the sky ***have nests to live in***, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

> …it will be more tolerable for ***those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked***, at the day of judgment than for you.
> or:
> …it will be more tolerable for those ***wicked cities Tyre and Sidon*** at the day of judgment than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands

when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

> **Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

>> Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests,
>> but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live**."

> **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

>> At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you**.
>> or:
>> At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called **background information**. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

> This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events]]*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]*

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because ***their village was going to have a feast the next day***. ***Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!*** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope ***they had brought with them***, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that ***it was his own pig***. ***Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig***.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day;" "He once killed three wild pigs in one day;" "that they had brought with them;" and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins' pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter ***was*** the best hunter in the village" and "it ***was*** his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
  - where the story takes place
  - when the story takes place
  - who is present when the story begins
  - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples from the Bible

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.
> Abram **was eighty-six years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

> Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about thirty years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

> Now **it happened on a Sabbath** that Jesus **was going through the grain fields** and his disciples **were picking the heads of grain**, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

> Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

> **With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch** for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

> **Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.**
> Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram

. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

> "**When Abram was eighty-six years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

> "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases]]
Introduction of a New Event

Biblical Money

Description:

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

> **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULT)

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > "The one owed **five hundred denali**, and the other owed **fifty denali**."

(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

> > "The one owed **five hundred silver coins**, and the other owed **fifty silver coins**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

> > "The one owed **five hundred days' wages**, and the other owed **fifty days' wages**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

> > "The one owed **five hundred denarii** [1], and the other owed **fifty denarii**. [2]"

The footnotes would look like:

> > [1] five hundred days's wages
> > [2] fifty day's wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

> > "The one owed **five hundred denarii** [1], and the other owed **fifty denarii**." (Luke 7:41 ULT)
> >
> > [1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]
Translate Unknowns

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 18:11; 18:12; 24:24)

Biblical Weight

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term "shekel" means "weight", and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

> This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as ".57 grams" readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a gram".
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath's spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as "3300 grams" or "3.3 kilograms", it can be translated as "about three and one half kilograms".
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

> **The bronze from the offering weighed** seventy talents and 2,400 shekels

. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > "The bronze from the offering weighed ***seventy talentes and 2,400 sekeles***."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> > "The bronze from the offering weighed ***2,400 kilograms***."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> > "The bronze from the offering weighed ***5,300 pounds*** ."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> > "The bronze from the offering weighed ***seventy talents (2,380 kilograms)*** and ***2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)***."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

> > "The bronze from the offering weighed ***seventy talents and 2,400 shekels***.
> > 1 "

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal]]
Fractions

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 12:30; 14:26; 21:16)

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations]]

reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks:"".

> • John said, "***I*** do not know at what time ***I*** will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would", to replace the future tense indicated by "will".

> • John said that ***he*** did not know at what time ***he*** would arrive.

Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

> He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

• Indirect quote: He instructed him ***to tell no one***,
• Direct quote: but told him, "***Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...*** "

> Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

• Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees ***when the kingdom of God would come,***
• Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "***The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you.*** "
• Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '***Look here!*** ' or, '***Look there!*** '

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

> 1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
> 2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

> **He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "**Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.

" (Luke 5:14 ULT)

> He instructed him to tell no one, but ***to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them***."

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

> **He instructed him,** to tell no one

, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

> He instructed him, "***Tell no one***. Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Quotes within Quotes

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of "not." Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

> This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning "not." Examples in English are "no," "not," "none," "no one," "nothing," "nowhere," "never," "nor," "neither," and "without." Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean "not" such as the underlined parts of these words: "***un***happy," "***im***possible," and "use***less***." Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as "lack" or "reject," or even "fight" or "evil."

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

> It is ***not*** that we do ***not*** have authority… (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)
>
> And this better confidence did ***not*** happen ***without*** the taking of an oath,… (Hebrews 7:20 ULT.)
>
> Be sure of this—wicked people will ***not*** go ***un***punished (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, "I did not see no one". It has both the word 'no' next to the verb and 'nadie,' which means "no one". The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, "I did not see anyone".
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, "He is not unintelligent" means "He is intelligent".
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" means, "He is somewhat intelligent".
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" can mean "He is intelligent" or "He is very intelligent".

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

> …in order ***not*** to be ***unfruitful***. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

This means "so that they will be fruitful".

> All things were made through him and ***without*** him there was ***not*** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as "very" or "surely" or "absolutely."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

> **For we do** not

have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT)

> "For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

...in order not

to be unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

> "...so that they may be fruitful."

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as "very" or "surely" or "absolutely."

> **Be sure of this—wicked people will** not

go un punished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

> "Be sure of this—wicked people will ***certainly*** be punished..."

All things were made through him and without

him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

> "All things were made through him. He made ***absolutely*** everything that has been made."

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]*

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 14:7; 19:7; 24:24)

Doublet

Description

We are using the word "doublet" to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word "and." Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

> King David was **old** and **advanced in years**. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was "very old."

> ...he attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

This means that they were "much more righteous" than he was.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

> ...as of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

> **You have decided to prepare** false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

> "You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

> **King David was** old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

> "King David was ***very old***."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

> **…a lamb** without blemish

and without spot… (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."

> "…a lamb ***without any blemish at all***…"

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:32; 6:21; 7:16; 12:24; 15:3; 17:2; 20:20)

Ellipsis

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

> …the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous**. (Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because "nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous" is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

> > …nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples from the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

> > He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

> But if we are afflicted, **for your comfort and salvation**; if we are comforted, **for your comfort**,… (2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

> But if we are afflicted, ***we are afflicted*** for your comfort and salvation; if
> we are comforted, ***we are comforted*** for your comfort,...

Absolute Ellipsis

> ...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He
> said, "Lord, ***that I might receive my sight***." (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

> "Lord, ***I want you to heal me so*** that I might receive my sight."

> To Titus...***Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior***. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

> To Titus...***May you receive*** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ
> Jesus our savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

> 1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

> ***...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor*** sinners in the assembly

of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

> ...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and ***sinners will not stand in the assembly*** of the
> righteous

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight

." (Luke 18:40-41)

> ...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He
> said, "Lord, ***I want you to heal me*** that I might receive my sight."

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and ***he makes*** Sirion ***skip*** like a young ox.

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 9:5; 10:5; 13:4; 13:12; 13:28; 14:15; 17:9; 19:37; 19:40; 20:19; 20:20)

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

> This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

Definition

> ...they found Saul and his sons ***fallen*** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons "were dead". It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

> ...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself...(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

> Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

> **...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to** relieve himself

. (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

> "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave ***to dig a hole*** "
> "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave ***to have some time alone*** "

Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man

?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)

> Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since ***I do not know a man***?" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

> **they found Saul and his sons** fallen

on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

> "they found Saul and his sons ***dead*** on Mount Gilboa."

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:6; 1:12; 1:19; 1:25; 2:16; 2:21; 2:22; 2:26; 3:7; 3:38; 7:12; 11:4; 11:11; 11:17; 12:11; 13:11; 13:14; 13:20; 13:32; 16:11; 16:21; 16:22; 17:25; 18:11; 18:32; 20:3)

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an **inclusive** form that means "I and you" and an **exclusive** form that means "I and someone else but **not you**". The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us", "our", "ours", and "ourselves". Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

> This page answers the question: *What is exclusive and inclusive "we"?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.

we/us (inclusive)
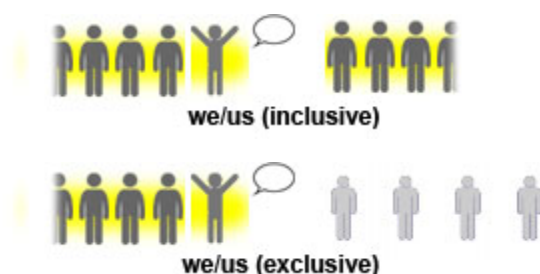
we/us (exclusive)

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we", then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples from the Bible

> They said, "**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this "we" could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that "we" would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

> **we** have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

> ...the shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us", they were ***including*** the people they were speaking to - one another.

> Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us", he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]*

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 7:22)

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as "I" and the person he is speaking to as "you". Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than "I" or "you".

Description

> This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns "I" and "we". (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun "you". (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns "he", "she", "it" and "they". (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like "the man" or "the woman" are also third person.

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant "I" or "you".

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of "I" or "me" to refer to themselves.

> But David said to Saul, "**Your servant** used to keep **his** father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as "your servant" and "his". He was calling himself Saul's servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
> "…Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **him**? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words "God's" and "him". He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of "you" or "your" to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

> Abraham answered and said, "Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to **my Lord**, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as "My Lord" rather than as "you". He did this to show his humility before God.

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying "each of you," Jesus used the third person "his" instead of "your".

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean "I" or "you" would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you".
2. Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you".

> **But David said to Saul, "**Your servant

used to keep his father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34)

> But David said to Saul, "*I, your servant*, used to keep *my* father's sheep."

(2) Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

> **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "... Do you have an arm like** God's

? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "... Do you have an arm like *mine*? Can you thunder with a voice like *me*?"

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you

does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *your* brother from your heart.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *Forms of You*

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for "you" based on how many people the word "you" refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

> This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]*

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of "you" even though he is speaking to a crowd.

> • Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of "you" based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of "you" when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

> • Forms of "You" - Formal or Informal

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 6:21)

Fractions

Description

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to equal parts of a thing or to equal groups within a larger group of people or things. An item or a group of items is divided into two or more parts or groups, and a fraction refers to one or more of those parts or groups.

> This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Numbers*

> For the drink offering, you must offer **a third** of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7 ULT)

A hin is a container used for measuring wine and other liquids. They were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts and fill up only one of those parts, and offer that amount.

> **a third** of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9 ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have "-th" added to the end of the number.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
four	fourth
ten	tenth
one hundred	one hundredth
one thousand	one thousandth

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
two	half
three	third
five	fifth

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

> Now to **one half** of the tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given an inheritance in Bashan, but to the other **half**, Joshua gave an inheritance beside their brothers in the land west of the Jordan. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase "one half of the tribe of Manasseh" refers one of those groups. The phrase "the other half" refers to the other group.

> The four angels who had been prepared for that very hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill **a third** of humanity. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

> You must also prepare **a fourth** of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
2. For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

> A third

of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)

> It was like they **divided** the ocean **into three parts**, and **one part** of the ocean became blood.

then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three tenths

of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

> ...then you must **divide** an ephah of fine flour **into ten parts** and **divide** a hin of oil **into two parts**. Then mix **three of those parts** of the flour with **one of the parts** of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

(2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> two thirds of a shekel

(1 Samuel 13:21 ULT)

> **eight grams** of silver (1 Samuel 13:21 UST)

three tenths of an ephah

of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

> **six and one-half liters** of finely ground flour mixed with **two liters** of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9 UST)

(3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> three tenths of an ephah

of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9, ULT)

> ***six quarts*** of fine flour mixed with ***two quarts*** of oil.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Ordinal Numbers
Biblical Money

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 18:2)

Go and Come

Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words

> This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

"take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples from the Bible

> Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark" (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

> But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

> When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land..."

> Joseph and Mary **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 1:22 ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Joseph and Mary **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

> Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue. Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet and implored him to **come** to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

> Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **go** out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Elizabeth did not **come** out in public.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

1. Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.

2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.

> **But you will be free from my oath if you** come

to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

> But you will be free from my oath if you ***go*** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go

out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

> Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not ***come*** out in public for five months.

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

> **When you have** come

to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

> "When you have ***arrived*** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it..."

Yahweh said to Noah, "Come

, you and all your household, into the ark... (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

> "Yahweh said to Noah, "***Enter***, you and all your household, into the ark..."

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go

out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

> Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not ***appear*** in public for five months.

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 6:2; 6:12; 6:20; 9:6; 10:16)

Hendiadys

Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with "and," it is called "hendiadys." In hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

> This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

> ...his own **kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

Though "kingdom" and "glory" are both nouns, "glory" actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by "and" can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

> while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13 ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadys. "The blessed hope" and "appearing of the glory" refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, "our great God" and "Savior Jesus Christ" refer to one person, not two.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples from the Bible

> ...for I will give you **words and wisdom...** (Luke 21:15 ULT)

"Words" and "wisdom" are nouns, but in this figure of speech "wisdom" describes "words."

> ...if you are willing and obedient...(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

"Willing" and "obedient" are adjectives, but "willing" describes "obedient."

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.
5. If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

> **for I will give you** words and wisdom

(Luke 21:15 ULT)

> for I will give you **wise words**

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory

. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

> that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

> **for I will give you** words and wisdom

. (Luke 21:15 ULT)

> for I will give you **words of wisdom**.

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory

. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

> that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

> **if you are** willing

and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

> if you are **willingly obedient**

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

> **if you are** willing and obedient

(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

> > if you **obey willingly**

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

> **while we look forward to receiving** the blessed hope and appearing of the glory

of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ. (Titus 2:13 ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

> while we look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing** of **Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Doublet

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:38)

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

> This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Translate Unknowns*

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> It was this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name "Melchizedek" primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title "king of Salem" tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name "Melchizedek" means "king of righteousness," and also "king of Salem," that is, "king of peace." (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek's name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

> You went over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the **Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Beerlahairoi**; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beerlahairoi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me".

> She named him **Moses** and said, "Because I drew him from the water." (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out".

> ***Saul*** was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

> It came about in Iconium that ***Paul*** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

> **You went over the** Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

> You went over the ***Jordan River*** and came to the ***city of Jericho***. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with ***the tribe of the Amorites***

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod

wants to kill you." (Luke 13:31 ULT)

> Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because ***King Herod*** wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

> **She named him** Moses

and said, "Because I drew him from the water." (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

> She named him ***Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out'),*** and said, "Because I drew him from the water."

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

> **...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called** Beerlahairoi

; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

> ...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

> **...a young man named** Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

> ...a young man named **Paul** [1]

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> **But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

> **a young man named** Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

> a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> **But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

> **It came about in Iconium that** Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

> It came about in Iconium that **Paul** [1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

> This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

- It rains here every night.

1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

> They will not leave **one stone upon another** (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

> Moses was educated in **all the learning of the Egyptians** (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

> The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame,** but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

> And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarliy mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

> If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed…
> (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

> But as his anointing teaches you about **all things** and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

> They found him, and they said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

> **Can anything good come out of Nazareth?** (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

> One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

> **A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich**. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

> …they saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat… (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

> Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
> and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

> **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops** as numerous as the sand on the seashore

. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases".

> **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame...** (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

> > **In general,** the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

> **And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

> > "And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words."

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

> **The** whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

> > **Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him."
> > or:
> > **Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him."

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

> **The** whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

> The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:35; 5:17; 14:11; 15:20; 15:23; 15:35; 16:22; 17:11; 17:13; 18:3; 19:6; 19:8; 22:30; 22:34)

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: "If the sun stopped shining…;" "What if the sun stopped shining…;" "Suppose the sun stopped shining…;" and "If only the sun had not stopped shining." We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with "if.")

> • If he had lived to be one hundred years old, he would have seen his grandson's grandson. (But he did not.)
> • If he lived to be one hundred years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
> • If he lives to be one hundred years old, he will see his grandson's grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

> • I wish he had come.
> • I wish he were here.
> • I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

> • If only he had come.
> • If only he were here.
> • If only he would come.

Reason this Is a Translation Issue

> • Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
> • Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

Hypothetical situations in the past

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that *if* the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

> Martha then said to Jesus, "Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died**." (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner, so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

Hypothetical situations in the present

> Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed**. (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

> Jesus said to them, "What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out**? (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical situation in the future

> **Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved**; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be––so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

> The Israelites said to them, "**If only we had died by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger." (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

> I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.

- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:27; Notes; 19:6)

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

> This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, "You are telling me a lie.")
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme.")
- This house is under water. (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.")
- We are painting the town red. (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.")

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he resolutely **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided".

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you should **enter under my roof**. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase "enter under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house".

> Let these words **go deeply into your ears**. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means "Listen carefully and remember what I say".

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

> the children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

> the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

> **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your** flesh and bone

." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

> ...Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

he resolutely set his face

to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

> He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof

. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

> I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

> **Let these words** go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

> **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

"My eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

> I am crying my **eyes out**

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:9; 1:15; 2:10; 2:22; 4:8; 4:9; 5:1; 7:3; 7:4; 7:9; 7:11; 7:12; 7:22; 10:5; 11:3; 11:5; 11:6; 11:7; 11:8; 11:13; 11:27; 12:5; 12:14; 12:15; 12:28; 13:5; 13:6; 13:8; 13:9; 13:10; 13:20; 13:33; 13:34; 14:7; 14:11; 14:12; 14:19; 14:22; 15:12; 15:14; 15:16; 15:25; 16:4; 16:11; 16:12; 16:21; 17:3; 17:11; 17:12; 17:14; 17:15; 17:16; 17:21; 17:23; 18:12; 18:31; 19:7; 19:11; 19:13; 19:14; 19:19; 19:22; 19:27; Notes; 20:3; 20:11; 20:20; 20:21; 20:23; 20:24; 21:22; 22:21; 22:24; 22:25; 24:11)

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

> This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events]]

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

Examples from the Bible

> ***In the days of Herod***, king of Judea, ***there was a certain priest named Zechariah***, from the division of Abijah. ***His wife was*** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase "One day" in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

> ***One day*** while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

> ***The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.*** His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

> ***After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king***, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,... (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened ***after*** Jesus was born.

> ***In those days*** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying,... (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

> ***Then*** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word "then" shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

> Now there was a ***Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council***. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

> [6] Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. [7] Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

> **Now there was a** Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council

. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him… (John 3:1,2)

> There was a ***man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council***. One night he came to Jesus and said…

> One night ***a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council***, came to Jesus and said…

As he passed by, he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting

at the tax collecting place, and he said to him… (Mark 2:14 ULT)

> As he passed by, ***Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting*** at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and and said to him…

> As he passed by, ***there was a man sitting*** at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him…

> As he passed by, ***there was a tax collector*** sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him…

(2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.

> **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.** (Genesis 7:6 ULT) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

> ***After that***, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.

> Again he began

to teach beside the lake. (Mark 4:1 ULT) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.

> ***Another time*** Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.

> Jesus went to the lake and ***began to teach people again*** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

> **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.** (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

> > ***Now this is what happened when*** Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

> > ***This part tells about what happened when*** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

> **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.** (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

> > ***Now this is what happened when*** Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because ***God had said that the waters of the flood would come***.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Background Information
Introduction of New and Old Participants

Introduction of New and Old Participants

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

> Now **there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus**…**This man** came to Jesus at night time… Jesus replied to **him** (John 3:1)

This page answers the question: *Why cannot the readers of my translation understand who the author was writing about?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

The first underlined phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. He is then referred to as "This man" and "him" when he is an old participant.

Reason this is a translation issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

Examples from the Bible

New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as "There was a man" in the example below. The phrase "There was" tells us that this man existed. The word "a" in "a man" tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who is family was, and what his name was.

> **There was a man** from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important one is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah's wife is simply referred to as "his wife". This phrase shows her relationship to him.

> There was a man from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. **His wife** was not able to become pregnant and so she had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

> When King David was very old, they covered him with blankets, but he could not keep warm. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun "his", and his wife is referred to with the pronoun "she".

> **His** wife was not able to become pregnant and so **she** had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah's wife is referred to with the noun phrase "the woman".

> The angel of Yahweh appeared to **the woman** and said to her, (Judges 13:3 ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant's name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

> Then **Manoah** prayed to Yahweh…(Judges 13:8 ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

Translation Strategies

1. If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.
2. If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
3. If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.

> **Joseph, a Levite, a man from Cyprus, was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement).** (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) - Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.
>
>> There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement).
>> There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

(2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

> **It happened when** he

finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples." (Luke 11:1 ULT) - Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who "he" refers to.

> It happened when **Jesus** finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.

(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

> Joseph's

master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20 ULT) - Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might find it unnatural or confusing to use his name so much. They might prefer a pronoun.

> Joseph's master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-pronouns]]

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 4:2; 4:4)

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

> This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

> Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples from the Bible

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

> "Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled**." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
> Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
> **Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;** "**the number of your days is so large!** " (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

> Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and
> that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

> How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

> ***You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment*** so you may keep your
> tradition!
> ***You act like it is good to reject God's commandment*** so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call righteous people

to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

> I did not come to call ***people who think that they are righteous*** to repentance, but to call
> sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

> How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

> ***You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God*** so you may keep
> your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen

, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

> 'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of
> Jacob. Your idols ***cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what
> will happen*** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because ***they cannot
> speak*** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know
> how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;

the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not**!

Next we recommend you learn about:

Litotes

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 6 General Notes; 6:20; 6:22)

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are "no", "not", "none", and "never". The opposite of "good" is "bad". Someone could say that something is "not bad" to mean that it is extremely good.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples from the Bible

> For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was ***not useless***, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was ***very*** useful.

> Now when it became day, there was ***no small excitement*** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a ***lot*** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

> And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
> are ***not the least*** among the leaders of Judah,
> for from you will come a ruler
> who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a ***very important city***.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the ***positive*** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the ***positive*** meaning in a strong way.

> **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was** not useless

. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

> "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you ***did much good***."

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

> "Now when it became day, there was ***great excitement*** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
> "Now when it became day, the soldiers were ***very concerned*** because of what had happened to Peter."

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:22; 14:18; 17:12; 17:22)

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

> This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

> "I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

> I am the ***Alpha and the Omega***, ***the First and the Last***, ***the Beginning and the End***. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of ***heaven and earth...***, (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

> ***From the rising of the sun to its setting***, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere".

> He will bless those who honor him, both ***young and old***. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone".

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

> **I praise you, Father, Lord of** heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

> I praise you, Father, Lord of ***everything***...

From the rising of the sun to its setting

, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

> ***In all places***, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

> **I praise you, Father, Lord of** heaven and earth

. (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

> I praise you, Father, Lord of ***everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth***.

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old

. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

> He will bless ***all those*** who honor him, regardless of whether they are ***young or old***.

Metaphor

Description

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

> • The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both *beautiful*. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

> • The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
> • The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
> • The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison** (**Idea**) between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table *leg*", "family *tree*", "book *leaf*" (meaning a page in

a book), or the word "crane" (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word "hand" to represent "power," using the word "face" to represent "presence," and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were "clothing."

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going *up*," "A *highly* intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The temperature is going *down*," and "I am feeling very *low*."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- "Turn the heat *up*." MORE is spoken of as UP.
- "Let us *go ahead* with our debate." DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- "You *defend* your theory well." ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- "A *flow* of words" WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
> (Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> Jesus said, "Go and tell that fox...," (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, "that fox" refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

> Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

> Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you", the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

> And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally ***if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible***. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See Simile.
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

> **Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him,** fell at his feet

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

> Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, ***immediately bowed down in front of him***.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally ***if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible***. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

> **It was because of your** hard hearts

that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

> It was because of your ***hard hearts*** that he wrote you this law,

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

> **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the** clay

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

> And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

> **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick against a pointed stick*.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

> **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the** clay

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

> "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."
> "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

> **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

> Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

> **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

> Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock *under which I can hide from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick*.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

> **I will make you become** fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

> I will make you become *people who gather men*.
> Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

> This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

> and ***the blood*** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> He took ***the cup*** in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

> The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

> Immediately his ***mouth*** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> …who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

> He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

> > "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

> The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

> > "The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David."
> > or:
> > "The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David."

> who warned you to flee from **the wrath** to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

> > "who warned you to flee from God's coming **punishment**?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:12; 1:14; 1:16; 1:19; 1:20; 1:21; 2:26; 2:31; 3:8; 3:10; 3:12; 3:18; 3:19; 3:21; 3:27; 3:28; 3:29; 3:34; 4:11; 5:8; 6:1; 6:5; 6:12; 6:15; 6:16; 6:18; 6:22; 7:3; 7:8; 7:9; 7:11; 7:12; 7:13; 7:23; 7:26; 7:27; 8:7; 8:8; 8:13; 9:3; 9:7; 9:10; 9:12; 9:13; 10:3; 10:17; 11:3; 11:4; 11:8; 11:18; 11:25; 11:27; 12:7; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11; 12:12; 12:25; 12:26; 12:30; 12:31; 13:6; 13:7; 13:30; 14:2; 14:7; 14:9; 14:16; 14:19; 14:22; 14:29; 14:32; 15:3; 15:10; 15:14; 15:25; 15:28; 16:3; 16:4; 16:7; 16:8; 17:3; 17:17; 17:21; 18:1; 18:8; 18:9; 18:18; 18:19; 19:9; 19:14; 19:28; 20:6; 20:19; 21:9; 22:1; 22:7; 22:31; 22:39; 22:50; 23:2; 24:9; 24:10; 24:14; 24:16; 24:17; 24:25)

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word "rich" is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that "rich" is an adjective.

> This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

> ...**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds...(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective "rich" comes before the word "man" and describes "man".

> **He will not be rich**; his wealth will not last... (Job 15:29 ULT)

The adjective "rich" comes after the verb "be" and describes "He".

Here is a sentence that shows that "rich" can also function as a noun.

> ...**the rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word "rich" acts as a noun in the phrase "the rich", and it refers to rich people. The word "poor" also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

"The righteous" here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

> Blessed are **the meek** (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

"The meek" here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

> **The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of** the righteous

. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of ***righteous people***.

Blessed are the meek

... (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

> Blessed are ***people who are meek***...

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:19; 1:25; 5:6; 14:2)

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

> This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Translate Unknowns*

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

> Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

> That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

> When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

> Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

> Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents)**, **ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

> When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

Ordinal Numbers

Fractions

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

> This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Numbers*

> He gave to the church **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have "-th" added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim, ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

> You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row

> must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use "one" with the first item and "another" or "the next" with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use "one" with the first item and "another" or "the next" with the rest.

> **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

>> There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim,...**another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah. There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim,...**the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

> **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became** four

rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

>> A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

> **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

>> They cast **twenty-four** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Fractions

(**Go back to:**)

Parallelism

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

• It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
• It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
• It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term Doublet for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

(1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

> Your word is a lamp to my feet
> and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
> you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

(2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

> The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
> keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

(3) The second completes what is said in the first.

> I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
> and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

> For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
> but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

> A gentle answer turns away wrath,
> but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like "very," "completely" or "all."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

> **Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
>
> > "Until now you have deceived me with your lies."

> **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."
>
> > "Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does."

> **For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
>
> > "For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel."

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."

> **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
>
> > "Yahweh truly sees everything a person does."

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like "very," "completely" or "all."

> **you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULT)

>> "All you have done is lie to me."

> **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

>> "Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does."

Next we recommend you learn about:

Personification

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

> sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

> **...**sin crouches

at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

> ...***sin*** is at your door, ***waiting to attack you***

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

> **...sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word "as."
>
> > ...sin is crouching at the door, ***just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person*** .

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

> **...even the** winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the "wind and the sea" as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

> He even ***controls the winds and the sea***.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of "personification" to include "zoomorphism" (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and "anthropomorphism" (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Apostrophe
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:9; 1:22; 16:12; 18:8; 22:6; 22:7; 22:9; 22:10; 22:14; 22:15; 22:16; 22:28)

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are "layers" of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Reasons this is a translation issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I", the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples from the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

> But Paul said, "I was born a Roman citizen." (Acts 22:28 ULT)

Quotations with two layers

> Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." Matthew 24:4-5 ULT

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

> Jesus answered, "You say that I am a king." (John 18:37 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

> Abraham said, "…I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, **"He is my brother."** ' " (Genesis 20:10-13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham said to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have underlined the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

> They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: **'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'** " ' " (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have underlined the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See Direct and Indirect Quotations.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have underlined the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

> **Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him** if he would go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things

. But when Paul called to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision, I ordered him to be kept until I send him to Caesar." (Acts 25:14-21 ULT)

> Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him under guard until I send him to Caesar.'"**

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is underlined in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also underlined.

> **Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them, 'At twilight you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God.' "** (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

>> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them **that** at twilight **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be filled with bread. Then **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God."

> **They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"'"** (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

>> They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotemarks]]*

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 7:7; 7:8; 7:9; 7:11)

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using **reflexive pronouns**. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: "myself", "yourself", "himself", "herself", "itself", "ourselves", "yourselves", and "themselves". Other languages may have other ways to show this.

> This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples from the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

> If **I** should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

> Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

> **Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULT)

> So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

> When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

> He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place **by itself**. (John 20:6-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone".
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

> **If I should testify about** myself

alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

> "If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true."

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves

. (John 11:55)

> "Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**."

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

> He himself

took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

> "**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases."

Jesus himself

was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

> "**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were."

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

> **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he** himself

knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone".

> **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain** by himself

. (John 6:15)

> "When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again *alone* up the mountain."

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

> **He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place** by itself

. (John 20:6-7 ULT)

> "He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying *in it's own place*."

(**Go back to:**)

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

> Those who stood by said, "**Is this how you insult God's high priest?**" (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43
> ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a
> stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more
> will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> ***What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?*** It is like a mustard seed that a
> man took and threw into his garden...(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

> Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

> Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? ***Of course not!*** Yet my people have forgotten
> me for days without number!

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

> Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? ***None of you would do that!***

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

> What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

> ***This is what the kingdom of God is like.*** It is like a mustard seed..."

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

> ***You should not insult God's high priest!***

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

> ***I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!***

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

> ***How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!***

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

> Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

> You still rule the kingdom of Israel, ***do you not?***

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

> **Or** what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

> If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, ***would you give him a stone***?

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

> ***What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils***? Yet my poeple have forgotten me for days without number

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:14; Notes; 2:22; 2:26; 3:7; 3:8; 3:12; 3:24; 3:25; 3:33; 3:38; Notes; 4:11; 6:9; 7:5; 7:7; 7:18; 7:20; 7:23; Notes; 9:8; 10:3; 11:3; 11:10; 11:11; 11:20; 11:21; 12:9; 12:18; 12:22; 12:23; 13:4; 13:13; 13:28; 14:13; 15:19; 15:20; 15:27; 15:35; 16:9; 16:10; 16:11; 16:17; 16:19; 18:11; Notes; 19:10; 19:11; 19:12; 19:13; 19:21; 19:22; 19:28; 19:29; 19:34; 19:35; 19:36; 19:41; 19:42; 19:43; 20:19; 22:32; 23:5; 23:17; 23:19; 24:17)

Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be "like" the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as", or "than".

> This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as", or "than".

> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were **like sheep without a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as serpents** and harmless **as doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus**. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> for **as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky**, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

> **See, I send you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

> See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword

. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

> For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

> **See, I send you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

> See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**,

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

> How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

> If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

> **See, I send you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

> See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

> How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

Metaphor
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean "Yes" or turn their head from side to side to mean "No". Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Translate Unknowns

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means "I am surprised" or "What did you say?" In others cultures it means "Yes".

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

> Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

> Look, I stand at the door and **knock**. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

> Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

> Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41)

> Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20)

> Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

> Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:2; 1:11; 2:4; 2:7; 3:31; 4:12; 5:3; 13:19; 13:31; 14:4; 14:22; 14:33; 15:1; 15:5; 15:30; 15:32; 18:28; 19:4; 23:1; 24:20)

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> ***My soul*** exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> ***the Pharisees*** said to him, "Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...?" (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

> I looked on all the deeds that ***my hands*** had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

> **"**My soul

exalts the Lord." (Luke 1:46 ULT)

> "***I*** exalt the Lord."

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

> ...***a representative of the Pharisees*** said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands

had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

> I looked on all the deeds that *I* had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

Metonymy
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1 General Notes; 1:12; 1:16; 2:7; 2:28; 3:13; 3:14; 4:1; 4:9; 6:20; 8:1; 8:2; 8:3; 8:5; 8:9; 10:11; 10:14; 10:17; 10:18; 11:11; 11:14; 12:11; 12:18; 12:26; 12:27; 12:28; 12:29; 13:27; 13:39; 14:10; 14:24; 14:28; 14:32; 15:13; 15:14; 15:32; 15:36; 16:21; 16:23; 17:10; 17:11; 17:13; 18:6; 18:14; 18:15; 18:16; 18:17; 19:5; 19:8; 20:6; 20:14; 20:21; 21:1; 22:35; 22:37; 24:4)

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

> This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text]]*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts]]*

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

> [10] See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. [11] [1]
>
> [1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

> [53] [Then every man went to his own house…. [11] She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more."] [2]
>
> [2] The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

> **14 He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand.
> 15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him.
> It is what comes out of the person that defiles him."** 16[1]
>
> **[1] The best ancient copies omit v. 16.** *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear*.

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

> 14 He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15
> There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what
> comes out of the person that defiles him." 16[1]
>
> > [1] The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let
> > him hear*.

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

> 14 He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15
> There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what
> comes out of the person that defiles him. 16 If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original]]

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

> This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> We have here only five loaves of **bread** and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> to him who made **great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> your sins...will be white like **snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

> **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly** ravenous wolves

. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

> Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **are truly hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

> **We have here only five** loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

> We have here only five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

> **your sins...will be white like** snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

> your sins...will be white like **milk** your sins...will be white like **the moon**

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

> **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with** myrrh

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

> We have here only five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

> **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for** jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

> We have here only five **loaves of baked food** and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

> **to him who made** great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

> to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]
How to Translate Names

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 6:5; 23:11)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 14

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:18; 4:8; 5:20; 7:1; 7:9; 7:11; 12:14; 18:19; 18:32; 19:9; 22:1; 22:18; 22:38; 22:49; 24:13; 24:14)

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms "counsel" and "advice" have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise "counselor" or "advisor" is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, "advice" or "counsel" could also be translated as "help in deciding" or "warnings" or "exhortations" or "guidance."
- The action, to "counsel" could be translated as to "advise" or to "make suggestions" or to "exhort."
- Note that "counsel" is a different word than "council," which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G1011, G1012, G1106, G4823, G4825

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 15:12; 16:23; 17:7; 17:11; 17:15; 17:21)

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "afflict" someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G2346, G2347, G3804

(**Go back to:**)

alien, foreign, foreigner

Definition:

The term "foreigner" refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an "alien."

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a "foreigner" there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were "foreigners" to God's covenant.
- Sometimes "foreigner" is translated as "stranger," but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:17
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H312, H628, H776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G526, G915, G1854, G3581, G3927, G3941

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 15:19; 22:45; 22:46)

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 24:18; 24:21; 24:25)

Ammon, Ammonite

Facts:

The "people of Ammon" or the "Ammonites" were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term "Ammonitess" refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as "Ammonite woman."
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, Jordan River, Lot)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:02
- Genesis 19:38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:27
- Zephaniah 02:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 23:37)

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 02:09
- Ezekiel 16:03
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 21:2)

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term "father" refers to a person's male parent.

- The terms "father" and "forefather" are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a "ancestor" or "ancestral father."
- The expression "the father of" can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
- Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader," depending on the context.
- The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term "anoint" means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles "Messiah" (Hebrew) and "Christ" (Greek) mean "the Anointed (One)."
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "anoint" could be translated as "pour oil on" or "put oil on" or "consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on."
- To "be anointed" could be translated as "be consecrated with oil." or "be appointed" or "be consecrated."
- In some contexts the term "anoint" could be translated as "appoint."
- A phrase like "the anointed priest," could be translated as "the priest who was consecrated with oil" or "the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil."

(See also: Christ, consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, priest, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20
- 1 John 02:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G32, G218, G743, G1472, G2025, G3462, G5545, G5548

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 12:20)

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms "appoint" and "appointed" refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To "be appointed" can also refer to being "chosen" to receive something, as in "appointed to eternal life." That people were "appointed to eternal life" means they were chosen to receive eterna life.
- The phrase "appointed time" refers to God's "chosen time" or "planned time" for something to happen.
- The word "appoint" may also mean to "command" or "assign" someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "appoint" could include "choose" or "assign" or "formally choose" or "designate."
- The term "appointed" could be translated as "assigned" or "planned" or "specifically chose."
- The phrase "be appointed" could also be translated as "be chosen."

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4296, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

Arabah

Facts:

The Old Testament term "Arabah" often refers to a very large desert and plains region that includes the valley surrounding the Jordan River and extends south to the northern tip of the Red Sea.

- The Israelites traveled through this desert region on their journey from Egypt to the land of Canaan.
- The "Sea of the Arabah" could also be translated as "sea located in the Arabah desert region." This sea is often referred to as the "Salt Sea" or the "Dead Sea."
- The term "arabah" can also be a general reference to any desert region.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: desert, Sea of Reeds, Jordan River, Canaan, Salt Sea, Egypt)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 23:24-25
- 2 Kings 25:4-5
- 2 Samuel 02:29
- Jeremiah 02:4-6
- Job 24:5-7
- Zechariah 14:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1026, H6160

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 4:7)

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Definition:

The term "assembly" usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a "sacred assembly" in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term "assembly" referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the "Sanhedrin" or the "Council."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "assembly" could also be translated as "special gathering" or "congregation" or "council" or "army" or "large group."
- When the term "assembly" refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as "community" or "people of Israel."
- The phrase, "all the assembly" could be translated as "all the people" or "the whole group of Israelites" or "everyone." (See: hyperbole)
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an "assembly." This could be translated as "army."

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14
- Acts 07:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 12:28; 14:14; 17:11; 17:13; 23:9)

avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To "avenge" or "take revenge" or "execute vengeance" is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is "vengeance."

- Usually "avenge" implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression "take revenge" or "get revenge" usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God "takes vengeance" or "executes vengeance," he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to "avenge" could also be translated as to "right a wrong" or to "get justice for."
- When referring to human beings, to "take revenge" could be translated as "pay back" or "hurt in order to punish" or "get back at."
- Depending on the context, "vengeance" could be translated as "punishment" or "punishment of sin" or "payment for wrongs done." If a word meaning "retaliation" is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, "take my vengeance," this could be translated by "punish them for wrongs done against me" or "cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me."
- When referring to God's vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: punish, just, righteous)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 018:47
- Romans 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G1556, G1557, G1558, G3709

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 4 General Notes)

barley

Definition:

The term "barley" refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as "grain called barley" or "barley grain."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: grain, thresh, wheat)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 07:14
- Numbers 05:15
- Revelation 06:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8184, G2915, G2916

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 14:30; 21:9)

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
- To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term "believer" refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term "believer" literally means "person who believes."
- The term "Christian" eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

Translation Suggestions:

- To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right."
- To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."
- Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ."
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him."
- Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus."
- The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing."
- The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: believe, apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, trust)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus…It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 21 General Notes)

Benjamin, Benjamite

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, "son of my right hand."

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Joseph (OT), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:08
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:04
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:9; 2:15; 2:25; 3:19; 4:2; 16:11; 19:16; 21:14; 23:29)

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term "bind" means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a "bond." The term "bound" is the past tense of this term.

- To be "bound" means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be "bound" to a vow, which means he is "required to fulfill" what he promised to do.
- The term "bonds" refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term "bind" can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be "bound" with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term "bond" is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are "bound" or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "bind" could also be translated as "tie" or "tie up" or "wrap (around)."
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to "restrain" or to "prevent" or to "keep from (something)."
- A special use of "bind" in Matthew 16 and 18 means "forbid" or "not permit."
- The term "bonds" could be translated as "chains" or "ropes" or "shackles."
- Figuratively the term "bond" could be translated as "knot" or "connection" or "close relationship."
- The phrase "bond of peace" means "being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other" or "the tying together that peace brings."
- To "bind up" could be translated as "wrap around" or "put a bandage on."
- To "bind" oneself with a vow could be translated as "promise to fulfill a vow" or "commit to fulfill a vow."
- Depending on the context, the term "bound" could also be translated as "tied" or "tied up" or "chained" or "obligated (to fulfill)" or "required to do."

(See also: fulfill, peace, prison, servant, vow)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 11:26; 21:12)

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "bless" could also be translated as to "provide abundantly for" or to "be very kind and favorable toward."
- "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".
- "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
- "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
- Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, "Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth."
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** "I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you."
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram."
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.

• **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:5; 6:11; 6:12; 6:18; 7:29; 13:25; 14:22; 18:28; 19:39; 21:3; 22:47)

blood

Definition:

The term "blood" refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
- The expression "flesh and blood" refers to human beings.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression "flesh and blood" could be translated as "people" or "human beings."
- Depending on the context, the expression "my own flesh and blood" could be translated as "my own family" or "my own relatives" or "my own people."
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate "flesh and blood."

(See also: flesh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph's brothers returned home, they tore Joseph's robe and dipped it in goat's **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
- The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:2; 2:16; 2:23; 3:29; 4:4; 9:6; 11:17; 14:4; 14:22; 20:8; 21:9; 21:22; 22:39; 22:40)

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called "unleavened bread" in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate "unleavened bread" during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche) Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."
- The phrase "bread of the presence" refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
- The term "bread from heaven" refers to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:29; 3:35; 6:19; 9:7; 9:10; 12:17; 12:20; 12:21; 13:5; 16:1)

bronze

Definition:

The term "bronze" refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers' armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called "casting."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: armor, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 02:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 01:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 8:8; 8:10; 21:16)

brother

Definition:

The term "brother" refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
- If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:26; 2:22; 2:26; 2:27; 3:8; 3:27; 3:30; 4:6; 4:9; 10:10; 13:3; 13:4; 13:7; 13:8; 13:10; 13:12; 13:20; 13:26; 13:32; 14:7; 15:20; 18:2; 19:12; 19:41; 20:9; 20:10; 21:21; 23:18; 23:24)

burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term "burden" also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be "bearing" or "carrying" a "heavy burden."
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person's sin is a burden to him.
- The "burden of the Lord" is a figurative way of referring to a "message from God" that a prophet must deliver to God's people.
- The term "burden" can be translated by "responsibility" or "duty" or "heavy load" or "message," depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A "burnt offering" was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an "offering by fire."

  • Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
  • Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
  • God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: altar, atonement, ox, priest, sacrifice)

Bible References:

  • Exodus 40:5-7
  • Genesis 08:20
  • Genesis 22:1-3
  • Leviticus 03:05
  • Mark 12:33

Word Data:

  • Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 6:17; 24:24; 24:25)

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term "bury" refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term "burial" is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms "burial place" or "burial room" or "burial chamber" or "burial cave" always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase "buried his face" usually means "covered his face with his hands."
- Sometimes the word "hide" can mean "bury" as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also:Jericho, tomb)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:07
- Psalm 079:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:4)

call, call out

Definition:

The terms "call" and "call out" usually mean to speak loudly, but the term "call" can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To "call out" to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
- When God "calls" people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, "His name is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
- To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
- When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
- "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
- "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
- To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
- To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
- To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
- The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
- When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know you and have chosen you."

(See also: pray, cry)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 5:20; 6:2; 15:11; 17:5; 22:4; 22:7)

cedar, cedarwood

Definition:

The term "cedar" refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, pure, sacrifice, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 07:1-2
- Isaiah 02:13
- Zechariah 11:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H730

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 5:11; 7:2; 7:7)

chariot, charioteers

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Egypt, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 08:29
- Acts 08:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G716, G4480

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 15:1)

chief

Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," and "chief tax collector." and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: chief priests, priest, tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:02
- Psalm 004:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 15:32; 18:5; 23:19)

children, child, offspring

Definition:

The term "child" (plural "children") refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
- The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  ◦ children of the light
  ◦ children of obedience
  ◦ children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as "children of God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: descendant, seed, promise, son, spirit, believe, beloved)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:07
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 05:25
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 12:34

Word Data:

• Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1081, G1085, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

clean, wash

Definition:

The term "clean" generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term "wash" refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- • "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- • In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- • A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- • Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be "clean" from sin.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- • God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- • People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- • If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- • Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- • This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- • In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- • This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- • Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- • "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- • Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- • The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- • When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
- • The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, holy, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- • Genesis 07:02
- • Genesis 07:08
- • Deuteronomy 12:15
- • Psalms 051:07
- • Proverbs 20:30
- • Ezekiel 24:13
- • Matthew 23:27
- • Luke 05:13
- • Acts 08:07
- • Acts 10:27-29

- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 11:8; 12:20)

comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

Definition:

The terms "comfort" and "comforter" refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a "comforter."
- In the Old Testament, the term "comfort" is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression "comforter of Israel" referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the "Comforter" who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "comfort" could also be translated as, "ease the pain of" or "help (someone) overcome grief" or "encourage" or "console."
- A phrase such as "our comfort" could be translated as "our encouragement" or "our consoling of (someone)" or "our help in times of grieving."
- The term "comforter" could be translated as "person who comforts" or "someone who helps ease pain" or "person who encourages."
- When the Holy Spirit is called "the Comforter" this could also be translated as "the Encourager" or "the Helper" or "the One who helps and guides."
- The phrase "comforter of Israel" could be translated as, "the Messiah, who comforts Israel."
- An expression like, "they have no comforter" could also be translated as, "No one has comforted them" or "There is no one to encourage or help them."

(See also: encourage, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 01:04
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G302, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 10:3; 13:39)

command, commandment

Definition:

The term "command" means to order someone to do something. The term "commandment" refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term "commandment" sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:12; 2:23; 3:26; 4:12; 5:25; 6:20; 7:7; 7:11; 9:11; 10:8; 10:16; 11:8; 11:13; 11:17; 11:19; 11:23; 13:9; 13:18; 13:28; 13:29; 14:8; 14:19; 15:16; 15:17; 17:14; 17:23; 18:5; 18:6; 18:12; 20:7; 21:14; 22:20; 22:49; 24:4; 24:7; 24:19; 24:20)

condemn, condemned, condemnation

Definition:

The terms "condemn" and "condemnation" refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word "condemn" includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes "condemn" means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term "condemnation" refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "harshly judge" or "criticize falsely."
- The phrase "condemn him" could be translated as,"judge that he is guilty" or "state that he must be punished for his sin."
- The term "condemnation" could be translated as, "harsh judging" or "declaring to be guilty" or "punishment of guilt."

(See also: judge, punish)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:20
- Job 09:29
- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:07
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:22
- Romans 05:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G176, G843, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920, G5272, G6048

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 4 General Notes)

confirm, confirmation, legal

Definition:

The term "confirm" refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is "confirmed" it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The "confirmation" of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath "as confirmation" means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate "confirm" could include, "state as true" or "prove to be trustworthy" or "agree with" or "assure" or "promise," depending on the context.

(See also: covenant, oath, trust)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 01:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 06:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G3315, G4972

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 12:17)

consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to "sanctify" or to "make holy," but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word "consecrate" has a meaning that is similar to "purify," especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God's service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "consecrate" could include, "set apart for God's service" or "purify for service to God."
- Also consider how the terms "holy" and "sanctify" are translated.

(See also: holy, pure, sanctify)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 8:11; 11:4)

consume, devour

Definition:

The term "consume" literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word "consume" often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a "consuming fire," which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, "consume the land" could be translated as "destroy the land."

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as "destroy."
- When fire is referred to, "consume" could be translated as "burn up."
- The burning bush that Moses saw "was not consumed" which could be translated as, "did not get burned up" or "did not burn up."
- When referring to eating, "consume" could be translated as "eat" or "devour."
- If someone's strength is "consumed," it means his strength is "used up" or "gone."
- The expression, "God is a consuming fire" could be translated as, "God is like a fire that burns things up" or "God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire."

(See also: devour, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:09
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G355, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 21:5; 22:38)

court, courtyard

Definition:

The terms "courtyard" and "court" refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term "court" also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase "king's court" can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh's dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "courtyard" could be translated as "enclosed space" or "walled-in land" or "temple grounds" or "temple enclosure."
- Sometimes the term "temple" may need to be translated as "temple courtyards" or "temple complex" so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" could be translated as, "place where Yahweh lives" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped."
- The term used for a king's court could also be used to refer to Yahweh's court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, king, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:09
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 03:26
- Psalms 065:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G833, G4259

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12

- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(**Go back to:** Introduction to 2 Samuel; 2 Samuel 3:12; 3:13; 3:21; 5:3; Notes; 15:24; Notes; 23:5)

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as "covenant faithfulness" was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: "faithful love;" "loyal, committed love;" or "loving dependability."

(See also: covenant, faithful, grace, Israel, people of God, promise)

Bible References:

- Ezra 03:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:6; 3:8; 7:15; 9:1; 9:3; 9:7; 10:2; 15:20; 16:17; 22:51)

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms "cow," "bull," "heifer," "ox," and "cattle" all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a "cow," the male is a "bull," and their offspring is a "calf."
- In the Bible, cattle were among the "clean" animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A "heifer" is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An "ox" is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is "oxen." Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to "be under a yoke" became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 17:29)

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms "cry" or "cry out" usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can "cry out" in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase "cry out" can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- This term could also be translated as "exclaim loudly" or "urgently ask for help," depending on the context.
- An expression such as, "I cry out to you" could be translated as, "I call to you for help" or "I urgently ask you for help."

(See also: call, plead)

Bible References:

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G310, G349, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 13:19; 19:4)

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed**!"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 6:22; 16:5; 16:11; 16:13)

cut off

Definition:

The expression "be cut off" is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God's commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God's people and from his presence.
- God also said he would "cut off" or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression "cut off" is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression "be cut off" could be translated as "be banished" or "be sent away" or "be separated from" or "be killed" or "be destroyed."
- Depending on the context, to "cut off" could be translated as, to "destroy" or to "send away" or to "separate from" or to "destroy."
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as "were stopped" or "were caused to stop flowing" or "were divided."
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:06
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581

(**Go back to:**)

darkness

Definition:

The term "darkness" literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, "darkness" means "impurity" or "evil" or "spiritual blindness."
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression "dominion of darkness" refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term "darkness" can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: Metaphor)
- People who do not know God are said to be "living in darkness," which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as "outer darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, "darkness of night" (as opposed to "light of day") or "not seeing anything, like at night" or "evil, like a dark place".

(See also: corrupt, dominion, kingdom, light, redeem, righteous)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:06
- 1 John 02:08
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 01:13
- Isaiah 05:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 22:10; 22:12; 22:29)

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. … **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:03 David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:06 David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:09 David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

8:18; 9:1; 9:2; 9:5; 9:6; 9:7; 10:2; 10:3; 10:4; 10:7; 10:17; 10:18; 11:1; 11:2; 11:3; 11:4; 11:6; 11:7; 11:8; 11:10; 11:11; 11:12; 11:13; 11:14; 11:17; 11:23; 11:25; 11:27; 12:1; 12:5; 12:7; 12:13; 12:16; 12:18; 12:19; 12:20; 12:24; 12:27; 12:29; 12:30; 12:31; 13:1; 13:3; 13:7; 13:21; 13:30; 13:32; 13:39; 15:12; 15:13; 15:14; 15:22; 15:31; 15:32; 15:33; 15:37; 16:5; 16:6; 16:10; 16:11; 16:13; 16:16; 17:1; 17:17; 17:21; 17:22; 17:27; 18:1; 18:2; 18:7; 18:9; 19:11; 19:16; 19:22; 19:41; 20:2; 20:3; 20:6; 21:1; 21:3; 21:7; 21:12; 21:15; 21:16; 21:17; 21:21; 21:22; 22:1; 23:1; 23:9; 23:13; 23:15; 23:16; 23:23; 24:1; 24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 24:13; 24:14; 24:17; 24:18; 24:19; 24:21; 24:22; 24:24; 24:25)

deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called "deceit" or "deception."

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a "deceiver." For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as "deceptive."
- The terms "deceit" and "deception" have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms "deceitful" and "deceptive" have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "deceive" could include "lie to" or "cause to have a false belief" or "cause someone to think something that is not true."
- The term "deceived" could also be translated as "caused to think something false" or "lied to" or "tricked" or "fooled" or "misled."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:08
- 1 Timothy 02:14
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 06:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 22:45)

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms "declare" and "declaration" refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include "proclaim," "proclamation," "announce," and "announcement."

- A "declaration" not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by "the declaration of Yahweh" or "this is what Yahweh declares." This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "declare" could also be translated as "proclaim" or "publicly state" or "strongly say" or "emphatically state."
- The term "declaration" could also be translated as "statement" or "proclamation."
- The phrase "this is Yahweh's declaration" could be translated as "this is what Yahweh declares" or "this is what Yahweh says."

(See also: preach, decree)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H262, H559, H816, H874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3870, G3955, G4296

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:7; 1:15; 2:16; 2:26; 5:9; 6:8; 9:2; 9:9; 11:13; 12:24; 12:25; 12:28; 13:17; 13:23; 14:33; 15:2; 18:18; 18:25; 18:26; 18:28; 20:16; 21:2)

delight

Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

Bible References:

- Proverbs 08:30
- Psalm 001:02
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Solomon 01:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 15:26; 20:11; 22:20; 24:3)

deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Definition:

To "deliver" someone means to rescue that person. The term "deliverer" refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term "deliverance" refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called "judges" and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a "deliverer." Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term "deliver over to" or "deliver up to" has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term "deliver" can be translated as "rescue" or "liberate" or "save."
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, "deliver over" can be translated as "betray to" or "hand over" or "give over."
- The word "deliverer" can also be translated as "rescuer" or "liberator."
- When the term "deliverer" refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as "governor" or "judge" or "leader."

(See also: judge, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1560, G1659, G1807, G1929, G2673, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:18; 8:6; 8:14; 14:4; 15:14; 20:6; 22:3; 22:4; 22:28; 22:42; 23:12)

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:03
- Matthew 04:01
- Matthew 11:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term "destroy" means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" means, "a person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, Egypt, firstborn, Passover)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2673, G2704, G3089, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

devour

Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:08
- Amos 01:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: believe, faith, life)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

dominion

Definition:

The term "dominion" refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "authority" or "power" or "control."
- The phrase "have dominion over" could be translated as "rule over" or "manage."

(See also: authority, power)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:10-11
- Colossians 01:13
- Jude 01:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G2634, G2904, G2961, G2963

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 23:3)

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:04
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 16:1; 16:2; 17:23; 19:26)

earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- "Earth" can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: metonymy)
- The expressions "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth" are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term "earthly" usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil."
- When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
- Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: spirit, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:2; 2:22; 3:12; 4:11; 5:6; 8:2; 10:2; 12:16; 12:17; 13:31; 14:4; 14:11; 14:14; 14:22; 14:33; 15:23; 17:26; 18:8; 18:9; 18:11; 18:28; 19:9; 20:10; 22:8; 22:43; 24:6; 24:8; 24:20)

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:10
- Exodus 03:07
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 02:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to _Egypt_ to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 7:6; 7:23; 23:21)

elder, older, old

Definition:

The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:17; 5:3; 12:17; 17:4; 17:15; 19:11)

Ephraim, Ephraimite

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: synecdoche)
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to "the hill country of Ephraim" or "the mountains of Ephraim."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:9; 13:23; 18:6; 20:21)

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms "everlasting" and "eternal" have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term "eternity" refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms "eternal life" and "everlasting life" are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term "forever" refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase "forever and ever" has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David's throne would last "forever." This is referred to the fact that David's descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "eternal" or "everlasting" could include"unending" or "never stopping" or "always continuing."
- The terms "eternal life" and "everlasting life" could also be translated as "life that never ends" or "life that continues without stopping" or "the raising up of our bodies to live forever."
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "eternity" could include "existing outside of time" or "unending life" or "life in heaven."
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- "Forever" could also be translated by "always" or "never ending."
- The phrase "will last forever" could also be translated as "always exist" or "will never stop" or "will always continue."
- The emphatic phrase "forever and ever" could also be translated as "for always and always" or "not ever ending" or "which never, ever ends."
- David's throne lasting forever could be translated as "David's descendant will reign forever" or "a descendant of David will always be reigning."

(See also: David, reign, life)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:08
- Genesis 48:04
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:04
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46

- Romans 05:21
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 01:02
- 1 John 05:12
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 7 General Notes; Notes)

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "evil" can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
- Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does."
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A "sheep" is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a "ram." A female sheep is called a "ewe." The plural of "sheep" is also "sheep."

- A baby sheep is called a "lamb."
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, "All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, 'I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 7:8; 24:17)

exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term "exalt" is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "exalt" could include "highly praise" or "honor greatly" or "extol" or "speak highly of."
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means "put in a higher position" or "give more honor to" or "talk about proudly."
- "Do not exalt yourself" could also be translated as "Do not think of yourself too highly" or "Do not brag about yourself."
- "Those that exalt themselves" could also be translated as "Those who think proudly about themselves" or "Those who boast about themselves."

(See also: praise, worship, glory, boast, proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 05:31
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 22:47)

exile, exiled

Definition:

The term "exile" refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The "Babylonian exile" (or "the exile") is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase "the exiles" refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "exile" could also be translated as to "send away" or to "force out" or to "banish."
- The term "the exile" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the sent away time" or "the time of banishment" or "the time of forced absence" or "banishment."
- Ways to translate "the exiles" could include "the exiled people" or "the people who were banished" or "the people exiled to Babylon."

(See also: Babylon, Judah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 6:20; 7:27; 15:19; 22:16)

face, facial

Definition:

The word "face" literally refers to the front part of a person's head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression "your face" is often a figurative way of saying "you." Similarly, the expression "my face" often means "I" or "me."
- In a physical sense, to "face" someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To "face each other" means to "look directly at each other."
- Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus "steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem," it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To "set one's face against" people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression "face of the land" refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a "famine covering the face of the earth" refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression "do not hide your face from your people" means "do not reject your people" or "do not desert your people" or "do not stop taking care of your people."

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to "face" could be translated as to "turn toward" or to "look at directly" or to "look at the face of."
- The expression "face to face" could be translated as "up close" or "right in front of" or "in the presence of."
- Depending on the context, the expression "before his face" could be translated as "ahead of him" or "in front of him" or "before him" or "in his presence."
- The expression "set his face toward" could be translated as "began traveling toward" or "firmly made up his mind to go to."
- The expression "hide his face from" could be translated as "turn away from" or "stop helping or protecting" or "reject."
- To "set his face against" a city or people could be translated as "look at with anger and condemn" or "refuse to accept" or "decide to reject" or "condemn and reject" or "pass judgment on."
- The expression "say it to their face" could be translated as "say it to them directly" or "say it to them in their presence" or "say it to them in person."
- The expression "on the face of the land" could also be translated as "throughout the land" or "over the whole earth" or "living throughout the earth."

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:22; 2:24; 3:13; 9:6; 10:9; 11:11; 11:15; 14:7; 14:20; 14:22; 14:24; 14:28; 14:32; 15:18; 15:23; 17:11; 17:19; 18:8; 19:4; 19:5; 21:1)

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be "faithful" to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him.The state or condition of being faithful is "faithfulness."

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term "unfaithful" describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is "unfaithfulness."

- The people of Israel were called "unfaithful" when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is "unfaithful" to his or her spouse.
- God used the term "unfaithfulness" to describe Israel's disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, "faithful" can be translated as "loyal" or "dedicated" or "dependable."
- In other contexts, "faithful" can be translated by a word or phrase that means "continuing to believe" or "persevering in believing and obeying God."
- Ways that "faithfulness" could be translated could include "persevering in believing" or "loyalty" or "trustworthiness" or "believing and obeying God."
- Depending on the context, "unfaithful" could be translated as "not faithful" or "unbelieving" or "not obedient" or "not loyal."
- The phrase "the unfaithful" could be translated as "people who are not faithful (to God)" or "unfaithful people" or "those who disobey God" or "people who rebel against God."
- The term "unfaithfulness" could be translated as "disobedience" or "disloyalty" or "not believing or obeying."
- In some languages, the term "unfaithful" is related to the word for "unbelief."

(See also: adultery, believe, disobey, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 4:4; 7:28; 20:19)

family, household

Definition:

The term "family" refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as "clan" or "household" that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of "family" to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, ancestor, house)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 01:21
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 16:5)

famine

Definition:

The term "famine" refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who detroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term "famine" is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for "famine" in your language, or with a phrase such as "extreme lack" or "severe deprivation."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 07:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:06
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 04:25
- Matthew 24:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 21:1; 24:13)

fast, fasting

Definition:

The term to "fast" means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to "fast" can also be translated as to "refrain from eating" or to "not eat."
- The noun "fast" could be translated as "time of not eating" or "time of abstaining from food."

(See also: Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:03
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:34
- Mark 02:19
- Matthew 06:18
- Matthew 09:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:08** "'For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.'"
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, "Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:12; 12:16; 12:21; 12:22; 12:23)

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term "favor" generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up "in favor with" God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression "find favor"with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person's request and grants it.
- A "favor" can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term "favoritism" means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term "favor" could include "approval" or "blessing" or "benefit."
- The "favorable year of Yahweh" could be translated as "the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing."
- The term "favoritism" could be translated as "partiality" or "being prejudiced" or "unjust treatment." This word is related to the word "favorite," which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:07
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G1184, G3685, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 14:22; 15:25; 16:4; 18:4)

fear, afraid, dread

Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term "dread" refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect," or "deep respect;" "revere," or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or, "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or, "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: marvel, awe, Lord, power, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:14; 6:9; 7:23; 9:7; 10:19; 12:18; 13:28; 14:15; 23:3)

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term "feast" is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called "feasts."
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to "feast" could also be translated as to "eat lavishly" or to "celebrate by eating lots of food" or to "eat a special, large meal."
- Depending on the context, "feast" could be translated as "celebrating together with a large meal" or "a meal with a lot of food" or "a celebration meal."

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1062, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:20; 24:15)

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term "fire" is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified."

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

firstborn

Definition:

The term "firstborn" refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, "firstborn" usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God's firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God's firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "first-born" occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as "firstborn male" or "firstborn son," since that is what is implied. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- Other ways to translate this term could include "the son who was born first" or "the eldest son" or "the number one son."
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the son who has authority over everything" or "the Son who is first in honor."
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: inherit, sacrifice, son)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:2)

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, "flock" refers to a group of sheep or goats and "herd" refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both sheep and cattle, then you may need to say "groups of sheep" where the Bible says only "flocks," and "groups of cattle" where the Bible says only "herds."

(See also: goat, cow, pig, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 12:2; 17:29)

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term "fulfill" means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "fulfill" could be translated as "accomplish" or "complete" or "cause to happen" or "obey" or "perform."
- The phrase "has been fulfilled" could also be translated as "has come true" or "has happened" or "has taken place."
- Ways to translate "fulfill," as in "fulfill your ministry," could include "complete" or "perform" or "practice" or "serve other people as God has called you to do."

(See also: prophet, Christ, minister, call)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, "See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way."
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus' clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, "They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing."
- **42:07** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in God's word must be **fulfilled**."
- **43:05** "This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 9 General Notes)

Gad

Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Isreal.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:How to Translate Names)

(See also: census, prophet, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:18
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 01:12
- Joshua 21:38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G1045

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 24:11; 24:13; 24:14; 24:18; 24:19)

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

A "gate" is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The "gate bar" refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
- The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:27; 10:8; 11:23; 15:2; 18:4; 18:24; 18:26; 18:33; 19:8; 23:15; 23:16)

Gibeon, Gibeonite

Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

- When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
- So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
- The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: Gilgal, Jericho, Jerusalem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:29
- 1 Kings 03:4-5
- 2 Samuel 02:12-13
- Joshua 09:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the **Gibeonites**, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan.
- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the **Gibeonites** had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked **Gibeon**.
- **15:08** So Joshua gathered the Israelite army and they marched all night to reach the **Gibeonites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1391, H1393

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:12; 2:13; 2:24; 21:1; 21:3; 21:4; 21:9)

Gilead, Gileadite

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the "hill country of Gilead" or "Mount Gilead."
- "Gilead" was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:22
- 1 Samuel 11:01
- Amos 01:03
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:9; 17:26; 17:27; 19:31; 24:6)

gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Definition:

The term "gird" means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, "gird up the loins" refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean "get ready to work" or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression "gird up the loins" could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as "prepare yourself for action" or "get yourself ready."
- The term "girded with" could be translated as "encircled by" or wrapped with" or "belted with."

(See also: loins)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:13
- Job 38:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H640, H247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G328, G1241, G4024

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being" or "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god." NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word "god," it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term "golden" or "gold-covered" or "gold-overlaid" could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as "gold-colored," which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:24; 8:7; 8:10; 8:11; 12:30; 21:4)

good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Definition:

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
- A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
- A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
- In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
- The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
- "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
- The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
- To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: evil, holy, profit, righteous)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted…the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil."
- **01:12** Then God said, "It is not **good** for man to be alone."
- **02:04** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does."
- **08:12** "You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!"
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.

- **28:01** "**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me '**good**?' There is only one who is **good**, and that is God."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word "grace" refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term "gracious" describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to "find grace" is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that "grace" could be translated include "divine kindness" or "God's favor" or "God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners" or "merciful kindness."
- The term "gracious" could be translated as "full of grace" or "kind" or "merciful" or "mercifully kind."
- The expression "he found grace in the eyes of God" could be translated as "he received mercy from God" or "God mercifully helped him" or "God showed his favor to him" or "God was pleased with him and helped him."

Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 21 General Notes)

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: burnt offering, guilt offering , sacrifice, sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 02:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 8:2; 8:6)

grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms "tomb" and "grave" refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A "burial place" is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include "cave" or "hole in the side of a hill."
- The phrase "the grave" is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, death)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:06
- Genesis 50:05
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 03:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:04** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, "Where have you put Lazarus?" They told him, "In the **tomb**. Come and see."
- **37:07** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus' body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:04** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:05** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, "Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see." The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus' body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:32; 19:37)

hand

Definition:

The word "hand" refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term "hand" include the following:

- To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."
- To "save from the hand of" means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."
- The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, the phrase "by the hand of the Lord" means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term "laying on of hands" can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
- To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
- The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
- In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: adversary, bless, captive, honor, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G5495, G5496, G5497

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:14; 2:7; 3:8; 3:12; 3:18; 3:34; 4:1; 4:11; 4:12; 5:19; 8:1; 8:3; 8:10; 10:2; 10:10; 11:14; 12:7; 12:25; 13:5; 13:6; 13:10; 13:19; 14:16; 14:25; 14:30; 15:2; 15:5; 15:18; 15:36; 16:8; 16:21; 17:2; 18:2; 18:4; 18:12; 18:18; 18:19; 18:28; 18:31; 19:9; 19:43; 20:9; 20:10; 20:21; 21:9; 21:20; 21:22; 22:1; 22:21; 22:35; 23:6; 23:10; 23:21; 24:14; 24:16; 24:17)

hang, hung

Definition:

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- In modern times, death by hanging is usually done by tying a rope around a person's neck and suspending him from an elevated object until he dies. This elevated object can be any number of things, such as a tree or a gallows, that is, a platform built specifically for the purpose of hanging a person in order to kill him.
- In biblical times, however, ancient cultures may not have killed people by hanging in precisely the same way. For example, Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross (sometimes called a "tree"), but there was nothing around his neck. The soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- Some ancient cultures "hung" a person by impaling him on a wooden pole in such a way that he was suspended above the ground so that he could not escape. The person would be left there until he died.
- For many references to death by "hanging" in the Bible, the specific means of death is unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 03:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 4:12; 18:10; 21:12)

harp, harpist

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: David, fir, psalm, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- Amos 05:23-24
- Daniel 03:05
- Psalm 033:1-3
- Revelation 05:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5059, H7030, G2788, G2789, G2790

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 6:5)

harvest, reap

Definition:

The term "harvest" refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term "reap" means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a "Festival of Harvest" or "Festival of Ingathering" to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, "time of gathering in" or "crop gathering time" or "fruit picking time."
- The verb to "harvest" could be translated as, to "gather in" or to "pick up" or to "collect."

(See also: firstfruits, festival, good news)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:09
- Matthew 09:38
- Ruth 01:22
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G270, G2325, G2326, G2327

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 21:9; 21:10; 23:13)

head

Definition:

The word "head" refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including "top," "first," "beginning," "source," and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression "head of a mountain" refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term "head" refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase "You have made me the head over nations" means "You have made me the ruler…" or "You have given me authority over…."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "ruler" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include "top" or "beginning" or "source" or "leader."

(See also: grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

heart

Definition:

The term "heart" refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 6:16; 7:27; 13:20; 13:28; 13:33; 14:1; 14:7; 15:6; 15:13; 17:10; 18:3; 18:13; 18:14; 19:7; 19:14; 19:19; 23:17; 24:10)

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

- The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
- The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
- The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
- The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called "manna."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, "Father, thank you for hearing me."
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 18:9; 21:10; 22:8; 22:10; 22:14)

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, Esau, foreigner, Ham, mighty, Solomon, Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 01:4-5
- Nehemiah 09:08
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 11:3; 11:6; 11:17; 11:21; 11:24; 12:9; 12:10; 23:39)

Hivite

Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Hamor, Noah, Shechem)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 34:02
- Joshua 09:1-2
- Judges 03:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2340

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 24:7)

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was oftensed to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."
- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."
- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."
- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38

- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 6 General Notes)

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: Simile, Metaphor)
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 06:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 05:06
- Proverbs 05:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G3192

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 17:29)

horse, warhorse, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: chariot, , donkey, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:04
- 2 Kings 02:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 6:3; 13:29; 15:1; 19:26; 22:11)

house

Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, temple, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:12; 2:3; 2:4; 2:7; 2:10; 2:11; 3:1; 3:6; 3:8; 3:10; 3:19; 3:29; 4:5; 4:6; 4:7; 5:8; 5:9; 5:11; 6:3; 6:4; 6:5; 6:10; 6:11; 6:12; 6:15; 6:19; 6:20; 6:21; 7:5; 7:7; 7:11; 7:13; 7:16; 7:18; 7:19; 7:25; 7:26; 7:27; 7:29; 9:1; 9:3; 9:4; 9:5; 9:9; 9:12; 11:2; 11:4; 11:8; 11:9; 11:10; 11:11; 11:13; 11:27; 12:8; 12:10; 12:11; 12:15; 12:17; 12:20; 13:7; 13:8; 13:20; 14:8; 14:9; 14:24; 14:31; 15:16; 15:35; 16:2; 16:3; 16:5; 16:8; 16:21; 17:18; 17:20; 17:23; 19:5; 19:11; 19:17; 19:18; 19:20; 19:28; 19:30; 19:41; 20:3; 21:1; 21:4; 23:5)

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: people of God, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 05:13
- Genesis 28:17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 02:26
- Matthew 12:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 7 General Notes)

humble, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term "humble" describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one's weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one's own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one's gifts and abilities.
- The phrase "be humble" could be translated as "don't be prideful."
- "Humble yourself before God" could be translated as "Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness."

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- James 01:21
- James 03:13
- James 04:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:04
- Matthew 23:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** "God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 7:10)

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

   • A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
   • God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

   • As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
   • Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
   • Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
   • The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
   • The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

Bible References:

   • 1 Corinthians 06:09
   • 1 Peter 01:04
   • 2 Samuel 21:03
   • Acts 07:4-5
   • Deuteronomy 20:16
   • Galatians 05:21
   • Genesis 15:07
   • Hebrews 09:15
   • Jeremiah 02:07
   • Luke 15:11
   • Matthew 19:29
   • Psalm 079:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

   • **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
   • **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
   • **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

   • Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 20:1; 20:19; 21:3)

iniquity

Definition:

The term "iniquity" is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term "sin," but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word "iniquity" literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include "perversity" and "depravity," which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "iniquity" could be translated as "wickedness" or "perverse actions" or "harmful acts."
- Often, "iniquity" occurs in the same text as the word "sin" and "transgression" so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:8; 14:32; 19:19; 22:24; 24:10)

innocent

Definition:

The term "innocent" means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term "innocent" is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking "innocent people."
- In the Bible, "blood" can represent "killing," so "innocent blood" refers to "killing people who did not deserve to die."

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term "innocent" can be translated as "not guilty" or "not responsible" or "not to blame" for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as "who have done nothing wrong" or "who are not involved in evil."
- "To shed innocent blood" can be translated as "to kill people who did not deserve to die."

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:04
- 1 Samuel 19:05
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:07
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 09:23
- Romans 16:18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**."
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, "Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:28; 14:9)

Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, deceive, Esau, Isaac, Israel, Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07 Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 23:1)

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of _Israel_ complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** _ *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave* _**Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished _Israel_ again for worshiping idols.
- **43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

19:11; 19:22; 19:40; 19:41; 19:42; 19:43; 20:1; 20:2; 20:14; 20:19; 20:23; 21:2; 21:4; 21:5; 21:15; 21:17; 21:21; 23:1; 23:3; 23:9; 24:1; 24:2; 24:4; 24:9; 24:15; 24:25)

Jebus, Jebusite

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Ham, Jerusalem, Melchizedek)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:14
- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Judges 01:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 5:6; 24:16; 24:18)

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, Jordan River, Joshua, miracle, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:78
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:01** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:05** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G2410

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 10:5)

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, Christ, David, Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, temple, Zion)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 5:5; 5:6; 5:13; 5:14; 8:7; 9:13; 10:14; 11:1; 11:12; 12:31; 14:23; 14:28; 15:8; 15:11; 15:14; 15:29; 15:37; 16:3; 16:15; 17:20; 19:19; 19:25; 19:33; 19:34; 20:2; 20:3; 20:7; 20:22; 24:8; 24:16)

Jesse

Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an "Ephrathite," which means he was from the region of Ephrathah. The town of Bethlehem was located in the region of Ephrathah.
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a "shoot" or "branch" that would come from the "root of Jesse" and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Boaz, descendant, Jesus, king, prophet, Ruth, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:12
- 1 Kings 12:16
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- Luke 03:32
- Matthew 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G2421

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 20:1; 23:1)

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as "the Jordan."

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:29; 10:17; 17:22; 17:24; 19:15; 19:17; 19:18; 19:31; 19:36; 19:39; 19:41; 20:2; 24:5)

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Jacob)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 04:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **08:09 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G2500, G2501

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 19:20)

joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah." When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah, which includes the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem.

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Jew, Judah, Judea, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:8; 5:5; 11:11; 12:8; 19:15; 21:2)

Judea

Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
- Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Edom, Judah, Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2453

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:18; 2:1; 2:4; 2:7; 2:10; 2:11; 3:10; 5:5; 19:11; 19:14; 19:16; 19:40; 19:41; 19:42; 19:43; 20:2; 20:4; 20:5; 24:1; 24:7; 24:9)

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The "judgment of God" often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term "judge" can also mean "condemn." God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is "arbitrate between" or "judge between," as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God's "judgments" are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- "Judgment" can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks "judgment" does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to "judge" could include to "decide" or to "condemn" or to "punish" or to "decree."
- The term "judgment" could be translated as "punishment" or "decision" or "verdict" or "decree" or "condemnation."
- In some contexts, the phrase "in the judgment" could also be translated as "on judgment day" or "during the time when God judges people."

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 8:15; 22:23)

just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: abstractnouns)
- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: forgive, guilt, judge, righteous, righteous)

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16

- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:03
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:03
- Luke 18:08
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:04
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:11
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Titus 03:6-7
- Hebrews 06:10
- James 02:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 19:6; Notes)

king, kingdom, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God is as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: "king of the Jews;" "king of Israel;" and "king of kings."
- Depending on the context, the term "king" might also be translated as "supreme chief" or "sovereign ruler."
- The phrase "king of kings" might be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

18:20; 18:21; 18:25; 18:26; 18:27; 18:28; 18:29; 18:30; 18:31; 18:32; 18:33; 19:1; 19:2; 19:4; 19:5; 19:8; 19:9; 19:10; 19:11; 19:12; 19:14; 19:15; 19:16; 19:17; 19:18; 19:19; 19:20; 19:22; 19:23; 19:24; 19:25; 19:26; 19:27; 19:28; 19:29; 19:30; 19:31; 19:32; 19:33; 19:34; 19:35; 19:36; 19:37; 19:38; 19:39; 19:40; 19:41; 19:42; 19:43; 20:2; 20:3; 20:4; 20:21; 20:22; 21:2; 21:5; 21:6; 21:7; 21:8; 21:14; 22:51; 24:2; 24:3; 24:4; 24:9; 24:20; 24:21; 24:22; 24:23; 24:24)

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, king, kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

   • Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 5:12; 7:12; 7:13)

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G4267, G4894

Levi, Levite, Levitical

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term "Levite" refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, priest, sacrifice, temple, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 15:24)

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives' could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were _living_ in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "lord" generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as "master" when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as "sir" in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When "Lord" is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."
- In the ULT and UST, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate "Lord" as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09

  • Daniel 09:17-19
  • Malachi 03:01
  • Matthew 07:21-23
  • Luke 01:30-33
  • Luke 16:13
  • Romans 06:23
  • Ephesians 06:9
  • Philippians 02:9-11
  • Colossians 03:23
  • Hebrews 12:14
  • James 02:01
  • 1 Peter 01:03
  • Jude 01:05
  • Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

  • **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
  • **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
  • **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
  • **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
  • **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
  • **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
  • **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
  • **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

  • Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

    • Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
    • When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
    • In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

    • This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
    • The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

3. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

• Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
• Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
• Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
• In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
• Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
• Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

• 1 Corinthians 13:07
• 1 John 03:02
• 1 Thessalonians 04:10
• Galatians 05:23
• Genesis 29:18
• Isaiah 56:06
• Jeremiah 02:02
• John 03:16

- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:09
- Song of Solomon 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 12:24; 13:1; 13:4; 13:15; 19:6)

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms "mercy" and "merciful" refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term "mercy" can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as "merciful" when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "mercy" could be translated as "kindness" or "compassion" or "pity."
- The term "merciful" could be translated as "showing pity" or "being kind to" or "forgiving."
- To "show mercy to" or "have mercy on" could be translated as "treat kindly" or "be compassionate toward."

(See also: compassion, forgive)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:13
- Daniel 09:17
- Exodus 34:06
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, "What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?" He replied, "The one who was **merciful** to him."
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, "No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you."
- **34:09** "But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, 'God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G3741, G4698

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 18 General Notes)

messenger

Facts:

The term "messenger" refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate "angel" as "messenger."
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah's coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus' apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms "mighty" and "might" refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word "might" is another word for "strength." When talking about God, it can mean "power."
- The phrase "mighty men" often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David's band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called "mighty men."
- God is also referred to as the "mighty one."
- The phrase "mighty works" usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term "almighty," which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "mighty" could be translated as "powerful" or "amazing" or "very strong."
- The phrase "his might" could be translated as "his strength" or "his power."
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was "mighty in word and deed." This could be translated as "Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things" or "Moses spoke God's word powerfully and did many amazing things."
- Depending on the context, "mighty works" could be translated as "amazing things that God does" or "miracles" or "God doing things with power."
- The term "might" could also be translated as "power" or "great strength."
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in "It might rain."

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H46, H47, H117, H202, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:19; 1:21; 1:22; 1:25; 1:27; 10:7; 11:15; 16:6; 17:8; 17:10; 20:7; 22:18; 22:26; 23:8; 23:9; 23:16; 23:17; 23:22)

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A "miracle" is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called "wonders" because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term "wonder" can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God's power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God's acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God's acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah's time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God's miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God's power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God's power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of "miracles" or "wonders" could include "impossible things that God does" or "powerful works of God" or "amazing acts of God."
- The frequent expression "signs and wonders" could be translated as "proofs and miracles" or "miraculous works that prove God's power" or "amazing miracles that show how great God is."
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, prophet, apostle, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:26)

Moab, Moabite

Facts:

The term "Moab" refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named "Moab," who was the son of Lot's elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a "Moabite woman" because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 8:2; 23:20)

mourn, mourner, weeping

Facts:

The terms "mourn" and "mourning" refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about "mourning" because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11
- Genesis 23:02
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G2354, G2875, G3602, G3996, G3997

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 13:37; 14:2; 19:1)

name

Definition:

The term "name" refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: metonymy)

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: call)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 4:2; 5:14; 5:20; 6:2; 6:18; 7:9; 7:23; 7:26; 8:13; 12:24; 12:25; 12:28; 14:7; 18:18; 20:21; 23:8; 23:18; 23:22)

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
- The word translated as "nation" was also sometimes used to refer to "Gentiles" or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
- If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "nonJews."

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, vow)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:9; 3:35; 19:7; 19:23; 21:2; 21:7; 21:17)

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:11
- James 03:12
- Luke 16:06
- Psalms 052:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 14:2)

oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor

Definition:

The terms "oppress" and "oppression" refer to treating people harshly. An "oppressor" is a person who oppresses people.

- The term "oppression" especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term "oppressed" describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "oppress" could be translated as, "severely mistreat" or "cause to be heavily burdened" or "put under miserable bondage" or "rule harshly."
- Ways to translate "oppression" could include "heavy suppression and bondage" or "burdensome control."
- The phrase "the oppressed" could be translated as "oppressed people" or "people in terrible bondage" or "those who are treated harshly."
- The term "oppressor" could be translated as "person who oppresses" or "nation who controls and rules harshly" or "persecutor."

(See also: bind, enslave, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:07
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:03
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G2616, G2669

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 13:2)

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
- To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
- The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 17:3; 18:28; 18:29)

people, people group,

Definition:

The terms "people" and "people group" refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term "the people" often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term "people" can can refer to a "people group" or "family" or "relatives" or "army."
- In plural form, the term "peoples" often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term "nations" is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "people group" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "large family group" or "clan" or "ethnic group."
- A phrase such as "my people" could be translated as "my relatives" or "my fellow Israelites" or "my family" or "my people group," depending on the context.
- The expression "scatter you among the peoples" could also be translated as "cause you to go live with many different people groups" or "cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world."
- The term "the peoples" or "the people" could also be translated as "the people in the world" or "people groups," depending on the context.
- The phrase "the people of" could be translated as "the people living in" or "the people descended from" or "the family of," depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- "All the peoples of the earth" could be translated as "everyone living on earth" or "every person in the world" or "all people."
- The phrase "a people" could also be translated as "a group of people" or "certain people" or "a community of people" or "a family of people."

(See also: descendant, nation, tribe, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."

- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:4; 1:12; 2:26; 2:27; 2:28; 2:30; 3:18; 3:31; 3:32; 3:34; 3:35; 3:36; 3:37; 5:2; 5:12; 6:2; 6:18; 6:19; 6:21; 7:7; 7:8; 7:10; 7:11; 7:23; 7:24; 8:15; 10:10; 10:12; 10:13; 11:7; 11:17; 12:28; 12:29; 12:31; 13:34; 14:13; 14:15; 15:12; 15:17; 15:23; 15:24; 15:30; 16:6; 16:14; 16:15; 16:18; 17:2; 17:3; 17:8; 17:9; 17:16; 17:22; 17:29; 18:1; 18:2; 18:3; 18:4; 18:5; 18:6; 18:7; 18:8; 18:16; 19:2; 19:3; 19:8; 19:9; 19:39; 19:40; 20:12; 20:15; 20:22; 22:28; 22:44; 22:48; 23:10; 23:11; 24:2; 24:3; 24:4; 24:9; 24:10; 24:15; 24:16; 24:17; 24:21)

persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue

Definition:

The terms "persecute" and "persecution" refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term "persecute" could also be translated as "keep oppressing" or "treat harshly" or "continually mistreat."
- Ways to translate "persecution" could include, "harsh mistreatment" or "oppression" or "persistent hurtful treatment"

(See also: Christian, church, oppress, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 05:10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away."
- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, "Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?" Saul asked, "Who are you, Master?" Jesus replied to him, "I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!"
- **46:04** But Ananias said, "Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:28; 20:10; 22:38; 24:13)

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means "people of the sea."

  • There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
  • The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
  • The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
  • The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
  • King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, David, Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

  • 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
  • 1 Samuel 13:04
  • 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
  • Genesis 10:11-14
  • Psalm 056:1-2

Word Data:

  • Strong's: H6429, H6430

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:20; 3:14; 3:18; 5:17; 5:19; 5:22; 5:24; 5:25; 8:1; 19:9; 21:12; 21:15; 21:18; 21:19; 23:11; 23:12; 23:13; 23:14; 23:16)

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to "praise" could also be translated as to "speak well of" or to "highly honor with words" or to "say good things about."
- The noun "praise" could be translated as "spoken honor" or "speech that honors" or "speaking good things about."

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 02:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:07** Zechariah said, "**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, G2980, G3853

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 14:25)

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, "Hear us, O Baal!"
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To "preach" means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To "proclaim" means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- "Preaching" and "teaching" are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- "Preaching" mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. "Teaching" is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term "preach" is usually used with the word "gospel."
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his "teachings."
- Often in the Bible, "proclaim" means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term "proclaim" can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate "proclaim" could include "announce" or "openly preach" or "publicly declare."
- The term "proclamation" could also be translated as "announcement" or "public preaching."

(See also: good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, "Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!"
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's:
    - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
    - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:8; 2:15; 2:29; 10:17; 11:27; 12:31; 15:22; 17:21; 17:22; 18:23; 19:18; 19:31; 19:39; 19:40; 19:41; 20:14; 24:5)

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was

sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, lord, power, ruler, Satan, Savior, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:8; 3:38; 4:2; 10:3; 10:16; 10:18; 18:1; 19:6; 19:13; 24:2; 24:4)

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

   • The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
   • Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:

   • The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
   • To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

Bible References:

   • Galatians 03:15-16
   • Genesis 25:31-34
   • Hebrews 11:09
   • James 01:12
   • Numbers 30:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

   • **03:15** God said, "I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children."Â�
   • **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
   • **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's **promise**.
   • **05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**."
   • **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
   • **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
   • **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

   • Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 7 General Notes; Notes)

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
- For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
- An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
- Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
- A "seer" could be translated as, "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
- The term "prophetess" could be translated as, "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
- Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
- The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
- The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as, "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached." (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.

- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 7:2; Notes; 12:25; 24:11)

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term "prosper" generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are "prosperous," it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing "prosperity."

- The term "prosperous" often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term "prosperous" also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A "prosperous" city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God's teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term "prosper" could also be translated as "succeed spiritually" or "be blessed by God" or "experience good things" or "live well."
- The term "prosperous" could also be translated as "successful" or "wealthy" or "spiritually fruitful."
- "Prosperity" could also be translated as "well-being" or "wealth" or "success" or "abundant blessings."

(See also: bless, fruit, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:06
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 001:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

prostrate, worship

Definition:

To "prostrate" oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to "worship," referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally "bow down" or "prostrate oneself" to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "worship" could be translated as "bow down to" or "honor and serve" or "honor and obey."
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as "humbly praise" or "give honor and praise."

(See also: sacrifice, praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods."
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, '**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:2; 9:6; 9:8; 12:20; 14:4; 14:22; 14:33; 15:32; 16:4; 18:21; 18:28; 24:20)

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms "proud" and "prideful" refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms "proud" and "pride" can also be used in a positive sense, such as being "proud of" what someone else has achieved and being "proud of" your children. The expression "take pride in your work" means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of "pride."
- The term "prideful" is always negative, with the meaning of being "arrogant" or "conceited" or "self-important."

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun "pride" could be translated as "arrogance" or "conceit" or "self-importance."
- In other contexts, "pride" could be translated as "joy" or "satisfaction" or "pleasure."
- To be "proud of" could also be translated as "happy with" or "satisfied with" or "joyful about (the accomplishments of)."
- The phrase "take pride in your work" could be translated as, "find satisfaction in doing your work well."
- The expression "take pride in Yahweh" could also be translated as "be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done" or "be happy about how amazing Yahweh is."

(See also: arrogant, humble, joy)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, "I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector's prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 7:22; 22:51)

punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term "punish" means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term "punishment" refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions "go unpunished" and "leave unpunished" mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: just, repent, righteous, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:09
- Acts 04:21
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G3811, G5097

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 18:16)

raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

- The phrase "raise up" sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to "restore" or "rebuild."
- "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to "exalt" someone or something.

rise, arise

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
- If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
- Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
- To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."
- To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
- The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
- Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
- The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
- Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: resurrection, appoint, exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.

- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 23:8; 23:18)

reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation

Definition:

To "reconcile" and "reconciliation" refer to "make peace" between people who were formerly enemies of each other. "Reconciliation" is that act of making peace

- In the Bible, this term usually refer to Gods reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
- Because of sin, all human beings are God's enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
- Through trusting in Jesus' sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "reconcile" could be translated as "make peace" or "restore good relations" or "cause to be friends."
- The term "reconciliation" could be translated as "restoring good relations" or "making peace" or "causing peaceful relating."

(See also: peace, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 05:19
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Matthew 05:24
- Proverbs 13:17-18
- Romans 05:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2398 , H3722 , G604 , G1259 , G2433 , G2643, G2644

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 14 General Notes)

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term "redeem" refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A "redeemer" is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word "ransom" also refers to this practice.
- If someone's land had been sold, a relative of that person could "redeem" or "buy back" that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people's sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "redeem" could also be translated as "buy back" or "pay to free (someone)" or "ransom."
- The term "redemption" could be translated as "ransom" or "freedom payment" or "buying back."
- The words "ransom" and "redeem" have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word "ransom," however, can also mean the payment necessary to "redeem" something or someone. The term "redeem" never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:16
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:05
- Luke 02:38
- Ruth 02:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to "reign" means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term "reign" is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as "absolute rule" or "rule as king."

(See also: kingdom)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 02:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:9; 3:21; 8:15; 10:1)

rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term "rest" generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be "resting" somewhere, which means it is "standing" or "sitting" there.
- A boat that "comes to rest" somewhere has "stopped" or "landed" there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the "Sabbath" day.
- To rest an object on something means to "place" or "put" it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to "rest (oneself)" could also be translated as to "stop working" or to "refresh himself" or to "stop carrying burdens."
- To "rest" an object on something could be translated as to "place" or "put" or "set" that object on something.
- When Jesus said, "I will give you rest," this could also be translated as " I will cause you to stop carrying your burden" or "I will help you be at peace" or "I will empower you to relax and trust in me."
- God said, "they will not enter my rest," and this statement could be translated as "they will not experience my blessings of rest" or "they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me."
- The term "the rest" could be translated as "those that remain" or "all the other people" or "everything that is left."

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 7:1; 7:11; 17:12)

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms "restore" and "restoration" refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been "healed."
- A broken relationship that is restored has been "reconciled." God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been "brought back" or "returned" to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "restore" could include "renew" or "repay" or "return" or "heal" or "bring back."
- Other expressions for this term could be "make new" or "make like new again."
- When property is "restored," it has been "repaired" or "replaced" or "given back" to its owner.
- Depending on the context, "restoration" could be translated as "renewal" or "healing" or "reconciliation."

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:10
- Acts 03:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- Luke 19:08
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 080:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:1; 1:22; 2:26; 2:30; 3:11; 3:16; 8:3; Notes; 12:23; 14:13; 14:21; 15:8; 15:19; 15:20; 15:25; 15:27; 15:34; 16:3; 16:8; 19:10; 19:11; 19:12; 19:14; 19:37; 19:43; 20:22; 22:21; 22:38; 23:10; 24:13)

return

Definition:

The term "return" means to go back or to give something back.

- To "return to" something means to start doing that activity again. To "return to" a place or person means to bo back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:16; 3:26; 3:27; 6:20; 9:7; 10:5; 10:14; 11:4; 11:15; 12:31; 15:20; 15:25; 15:29; 16:12; 17:3; 17:20; 18:16; 19:15; 19:39; 22:25)

reward, prize, deserve,

Definition:

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of "wages," which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement "the reward of the wicked." In this context "reward" refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
- To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:06
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 06:35
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 4 General Notes)

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness." (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
- The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good
- The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
- The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
- The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."
- Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."
- The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."
- The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

(**Go back to:**)

robe, robed

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G1746, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:24; 20:8)

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase "sackcloth and ashes" was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as "coarse cloth from animal hair" or "clothes made of goat hair" or "rough, scratchy clothing."
- Another way to translate this term could be "rough, scratchy mourning clothes."
- The phrase "sit in sackcloth and ashes" could be translated as "show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: ash, camel, goat, humble, mourn, repent, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 01:8-10
- Jonah 03:05
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G4526

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:31)

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "sacrifice" and "offering" refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word "offering" generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term "sacrifice" refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as "burnt offering" and "peace offering," indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "offering" could also be translated as "a gift to God" or "something given to God" or "something valuable that is presented to God."
- Depending on the context, the term "sacrifice" could also be translated as "something valuable given in worship" or "a special animal killed and presented to God."
- The action to "sacrifice" could be translated as to "give up something valuable" or to "kill an animal and give it to God."
- Another way to translate "present yourself as a living sacrifice" could be "as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar."

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, priest, sin offering, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.

- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:21)

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."
- In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."
- The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."
- The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God's rescuing his people (from their enemies)."
- "God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."
- "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:3; 4:6; 19:9)

scribe

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was "expert in Jewish law."

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated "scribes" was also translated as "teachers of the Law."
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the "Pharisees," and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: law, Pharisee)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:05
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 01:22
- Mark 02:16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 8:17; 20:25)

seed, semen

Definition:

A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: euphemism)

(See also: descendant, offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 7:12)

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is "sought." This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to "attempt" or "make an effort" to do something or to ask for something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "seek favor" means to "urgently ask for favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."

(See also: just, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:17; 4:8; 4:11; 5:17; 12:16; 16:11; 17:3; 17:20; 20:19; 21:1; 21:2)

servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:

The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: commit, enslave, household, lord, obey, righteous, covenant, law,)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God.
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term "shame" refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is "shameful" is "improper" or "dishonorable."
- The term "ashamed" describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term "humiliate" means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called "humiliation."
- To "reproach" someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person's character or behavior.
- The phrase "put to shame" means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term "disgraceful" can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is "above reproach" or "beyond reproach" or "without reproach" means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate "disgrace" could include "shame" or "dishonor."
- Ways to translate "disgraceful" could include "shameful" or dishonoring."
- To "humiliate" could also be translated as to "shame" or to "cause to feel shame" or to "embarrass."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "humiliation" could include "shame" or "degrading" or "disgrace."
- The word "reproach" could also be translated as "accusation" or "shame" or "disgrace."
- To "reproach" could also be translated as to "rebuke" or to "accuse" or to "criticize," depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8

  • Psalms 006:8-10
  • Psalms 123:03
  • 1 Timothy 05:7-8
  • 1 Timothy 06:13-14
  • Jeremiah 15:15-16
  • Job 16:9-10
  • Proverbs 18:03

Word Data:

  • Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G149, G152, G153, G410, G422, G423, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3059, G3679, G3680, G3681, G3856, G5014, G5195, G5196, G5484

(**Go back to:**)

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple.The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 8:10; 8:11; 18:11; 18:12; 21:4; 24:24)

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23

- Romans 08:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**.
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 11 General Notes; 12:13; Notes; Notes; 19:20; 24:10; 24:17)

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bathsheba, David, Israel, Judah, kingdom of Israel, temple)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 06:29
- Matthew 12:42

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:03** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:04** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G4672

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 12:24)

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase "son of" can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
- Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, descendant, ancestor, firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?â€š" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 22:11; 22:16; 23:2)

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term "statute" is similar in meaning to "ordinance" and " command" and "law" and "decree." All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh's statutes.
- The term "statute" could also be translated as "specific command" or "special decree."

(See also: command, decree, law, ordinance, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H2708, H7010, G1345

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 15:4)

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term "strength" refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To "strengthen" someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- "Strength" can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has "strength of will" if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his "strength" because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being "strengthened," people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term "strengthen" can be translated as "cause to be strong" or "make more powerful."
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase "strengthen your brothers" could also be translated as "encourage your brothers" or "help your brothers to persevere."
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
    - "puts strength on me like a belt" means "causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist."
    - "in quietness and trust will be your strength" means "acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong."
    - "will renew their strength" means "will become stronger again."
    - "by my strength and by my wisdom I acted" means "I have done all this because I am so strong and wise."
    - "strengthen the wall" means "reinforce the wall" or "rebuild the wall."
    - "I will strengthen you" means "I will cause you to be strong"
    - "in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength" means "Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us."
    - "the rock of your strength" means "the faithful one who makes you strong"
    - "with the saving strength of his right hand" means "he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand."
    - "of little strength" means "not very strong" or "weak."
    - "with all my strength" means "using my best efforts" or "strongly and completely."

(See also: faithful, persevere, right hand, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:7; 3:6; 10:11; 10:12; 11:25; 13:28)

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:12; 1:22; 2:16; 2:26; 3:29; 12:9; 12:10; 15:14; 20:8; 20:10; 24:9)

Tamar

Facts:

Tamar is the name of several different women in the Old Testament. There are several cities or other places that are named Tamar in the Old Testament.

- Tamar was the daughter-in-law of Judah. She gave birth to Perez who was an ancestor of Jesus Christ.
- One of King David's daughters was named Tamar; she was the sister of Absalom. Her half-brother Amnon raped her and left her desolate.
- Absalom also had a daughter named Tamar.
- A city called "Hazezon Tamar" was the same as the city of Engedi on the western shore of the Salt Sea. There is also a "Baal Tamar," and general references to a place called "Tamar" which may have been different from the cities.

(See also: Absalom, ancestor, Amnon, David, ancestor, Judah, Salt Sea)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:04
- 2 Samuel 13:02
- 2 Samuel 14:25-27
- Genesis 38:6-7
- Genesis 38:24
- Matthew 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1193, H2688, H8412, H8559

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 13:1; 13:2; 13:4; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:8; 13:10; 13:19; 13:20; 13:22; 13:32; 14:27)

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term "temple of the Holy Spirit" is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: sacrifice, Solomon, Babylon, Holy Spirit, tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, house)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, "If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.'"
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:6; 4:11; Notes; 7:1; 7:2; 7:6)

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

Definition:

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

- Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To "witness" something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
- The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as, "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "give evidence" or "tell what happened."
- Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "evidence" or "what has been said" or "prophecy."
- The phrase, "as a testimony to them" could be translated as, to "show them what is true" or to "prove to them what is true."
- The phrase, "as a testimony against them" could be translated as, "which will show them their sin" or "exposing their hypocrisy" or "which will prove that they are wrong."
- To "give false testimony" could be translated as "say false things about" or "state things that are not true."
- The term "witness" or "eyewitness" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person seeing it" or "the one who saw it happen" or "those who saw and heard (those things)."
- Something that is "a witness" could be translated as "guarantee" or "sign of our promise" or "something that testifies that this is true."
- The phrase "you will be my witnesses" could also be translated as "you will tell other people about me" or "you will teach people the truth that I taught you" or "you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach."
- To "witness to" could be translated as to "tell what was seen" or to "testify" or to "state what happened."
- To "witness" something could be translated as to "see something" or to "experience something happen."

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, testimony, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07

• John 03:33
• Acts 04:32-33
• Acts 07:44
• Acts 13:31
• Romans 01:09
• 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
• 1 Timothy 05:19-20
• 2 Timothy 01:08
• 2 Peter 01:16-18
• 1 John 05:6-8
• 3 John 01:12
• Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

• **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
• **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
• **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
• **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

• Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:16; 22:42)

thresh

Definition:

The terms "thresh" and "threshing" refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is "winnowed" to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a "threshing floor" was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A "threshing cart" or "threshing wheel" was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A "threshing sledge" or "threshing board" was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, grain, winnow)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:07
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 02:35
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Ruth 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G248

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 6:6; 24:16; 24:21; 24:24)

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word "throne" can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God's throne. One way to translate this could be, "where God reigns as king."

(See also: authority, power, king, reign)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 01:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 05:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 3:10; 7:13; 7:16)

tongue, language

Definition:

The term "tongue" refers to the organ inside a person's mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean "language" or "speaking." There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
- Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
- In the book of Acts, the expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated as "language" or "supernatural language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
- The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
- The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
- Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, joy, praise, rejoice, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 03:18
- 2 Samuel 23:02
- Acts 02:26
- Ezekiel 36:03
- Philippians 02:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 13:20; 19:10)

tremble, stagger

Definition:

The term "tremble" means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning "to be very afraid."

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: earth, fear, Lord)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G1790, G5141, G5156, G5425

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 7:10; 22:8)

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

> • People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
> • In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
> • A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, nation, people group, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

> • 1 Samuel 10:19
> • 2 Kings 17:16-18
> • Genesis 25:16
> • Genesis 49:17
> • Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

> • Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

Definition:

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress.To be "troubled" means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."
- The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
- "Don't trouble her" could also be translated as "don't bother her" or "don't criticize her."
- The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or " when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
- Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: afflict, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 4:9)

true, truth

Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: believe, faithful, fulfill, obey, prophet, understand)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20

• Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is _true_ that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the _true_ God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:6; 15:20)

trumpet, trumpeters

Definition:

The term "trumpet" refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, assembly, earth, horn, Israel, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 06:02
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 2:28; 6:15; 15:10; 18:16; 20:1; 20:22)

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To "trust" something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called "trust." A "trustworthy" person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of "trustworthiness."

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To "trust in" Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A "trustworthy saying" refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "trust" could include "believe" or "have faith" or "have confidence" or "depend on."
- The phrase "put your trust in" is very similar in meaning to "trust in."
- The term "trustworthy" could be translated as "dependable" or "reliable" or "can always be trusted."

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, faithful, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 22 General Notes; Notes)

Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, cedar, Israel, the sea, Phoenicia, Sidon)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 5:11; 24:7)

virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: Euphemism)

(See also: Christ, Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 01:27
- Luke 01:35
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 25:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:04** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:05** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:01** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 13:2; 13:18)

voice

Definition:

The term "voice" refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can ber used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression "to hear someone's voice" can mean either "to hear someone speaking" or "to heed what someone says."
- The Bible describes God as "speaking" and having a "voice," even though God doesn't have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term "voice" sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...." (See: synecdoche)
- However, sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a "voice" that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: metaphor)

(See also: call, proclaim, splendor.)

Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 12:18; 13:14; 19:35)

VOW

Definition:

A "vow" is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.
- Depending on the context, the term "vow" can be translated as "solemn promise" or "solemn oath" or "promise made to God."

(See also: promise, oath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 07:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 01:14-16
- Jonah 02:9-10
- Proverbs 07:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 9 General Notes; Notes)

walk, walked

Definition:

The term "walk" is often used in a figurative sense to mean "live."

- "Enoch walked with God" means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To "walk by the Spirit" means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To "walk in" God's commands or God's ways means to "live in obedience to" his commands, that is, to "obey his commands" or "do his will."
- When God says he will "walk among" his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To "walk contrary to" means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To "walk after" means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate "walk" literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of"walk" could also be translated by "live" or "act" or "behave."
- The phrase "walk by the Spirit" could be translated by, "live in obedience to the Holy Spirit" or "behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit" or "do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you."
- To "walk in God's commands" could be translated by "live by God's commands" or "obey God's commands."
- The phrase "walked with God" could be translated as, "lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him."

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4198, G4748

watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Definition:

The term "watch" means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A "watchman" was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to "watch your life and doctrine closely" means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To "watch out" is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To "watch" or "keep watch" means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to "be ready."
- To "keep watch over" or "keep close watch" can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating "watch" could include "pay close attention to" or "be diligent" or "be very careful" or "be on guard."
- Other words for "watchman" are "sentry" or "guard."

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 18:12; 20:10; 22:22; 22:44)

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions "grain" or "seeds," it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called "straw" and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, grain, seed, thresh, winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 4:6)

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "wine" refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in "wineskins," which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term "new wine" referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term "wine" also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as "fermented grape juice" or "fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes" or "fermented fruit juice." (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate "wineskin" could include "bag for wine" or "animal skin wine bag" or "animal skin container for wine."

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 13:28; 16:1)

wise men, advisor

Definition:

The term "wise men" simply means people who are wise. In the Bible, however, the term "wise men" often refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king's royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

Old Testament

- Sometimes the term "wise men" is explained in the text as "prudent men" or "men with understanding." This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
- The "wise men" who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes "wise men" also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

New Testament

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called "magi," which is often translated as "wise men," since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "wise men" could be translated using the term "wise" or with a phrase such as "gifted men" or "educated men" or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
- When the term "wise men" simply means people who are wise, the word "wise" should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, divination, magic, Nebuchadnezzar, ruler, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 02:1-2
- Daniel 02:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G4680

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 13:3; 14:2; 14:20; 20:16)

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term "wise" describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. "Wisdom" is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "wise" could include "obedient to God" or "sensible and obedient" or "God-fearing."
- "Wisdom" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "wise living" or "sensible and obedient living" or "good judgment."
- It is best to translate "wise" and "wisdom" in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 21 General Notes)

work, works, deeds

Definition:

The term "work" refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term "works" refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term "work" in the Bible often refers to God's action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God's works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "works" could be "deeds" or "actions" or "things that are done."
- God's "works" or "deeds" or the "work of his hands" could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "things that God does."
- The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "everything that God has accomplished."
- The term "work" can just be the singular of "works" as in "every good work" or "every good deed."
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as "service" or "ministry."

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, miracle)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 23 General Notes; 23:20)

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 03:07
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 11:20)

wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

Definition:

To "wrong" someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term "mistreat" means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term "hurt" is more general and means to "cause someone harm in some way." It often has the meaning of "physically injure."
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as "do wrong to" or, "treat unjustly" or "cause harm to" or treat in a harmful way" or "injure."

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:05
- Luke 06:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 071:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G91, G92, G93, G95, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1626, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2558, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G5195, G5196

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 19:19; 24:17)

Yahweh

Facts:

The term "Yahweh" is God's personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, "to be."

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term "LORD" or "the LORD" to represent "Yahweh." This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh's name and started saying "Lord" every time the term "Yahweh" appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write "LORD" with all capital letters to show respect for God's personal name and to distinguish it from "Lord" which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, "Yahweh," in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term "Yahweh" never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for "Lord" is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

- "Yahweh" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "I am" or "living one" or "the one who is" or "he who is alive."
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how "Yahweh" is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term "Yahweh" and instead use the traditional rendering, "LORD." An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title "Lord." Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish "LORD" as a name (Yahweh) from "Lord" as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, "This is what Yahweh says."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, Lord, Moses, reveal)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:07
- Daniel 09:03
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:04
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:04
- Isaiah 38:08
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 01:09
- Lamentations 01:05
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 03:04
- Micah 02:05
- Micah 06:05
- Numbers 08:11

  • Psalm 124:03
  • Ruth 01:21
  • Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

  • **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
  • **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
  • **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
  • **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
  • **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

  • Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 1:12; 1:14; 1:16; 2:1; 2:5; 2:6; 3:9; 3:18; 3:28; 3:39; 4:8; 4:9; 5:2; 5:3; 5:10; 5:12; 5:19; 5:20; 5:23; 5:24; 5:25; 6:2; 6:5; 6:7; 6:8; 6:9; 6:10; 6:11; 6:12; 6:13; 6:14; 6:15; 6:16; 6:17; 6:18; 6:21; 7:1; 7:3; 7:4; 7:5; 7:8; 7:11; 7:18; 7:24; 7:25; 7:26; 7:27; 8:6; 8:11; 8:14; 10:12; 11:27; 12:1; 12:5; 12:7; 12:9; 12:11; 12:13; 12:14; 12:15; 12:20; 12:22; 12:24; 12:25; 14:11; 14:17; 15:7; 15:8; 15:21; 15:25; 15:31; 16:8; 16:10; 16:11; 16:12; 16:18; 17:14; 18:19; 18:28; 18:31; 19:7; 19:21; 20:19; 21:1; 21:3; 21:6; 21:7; 21:9; 22:1; 22:2; 22:4; 22:7; 22:14; 22:16; 22:19; 22:21; 22:22; 22:25; 22:29; 22:31; 22:32; 22:42; 22:47; 22:50; 23:2; 23:10; 23:12; 23:16; 23:17; 24:1; 24:3; 24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 24:14; 24:15; 24:16; 24:17; 24:18; 24:19; 24:21; 24:23; 24:24; 24:25)

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term "Zion" or "Mount Zion" referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, "Zion" and "Mount Zion" became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: metonymy)
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the "City of David." This is different from David's hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term "Zion" is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God's spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: Abraham, David, Jerusalem, Bethlehem, Jebusites)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:05
- Amos 01:02
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 076:1-3
- Romans 11:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6726

(**Go back to:** 2 Samuel 5:7)

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Aaron Fenlason
Abner Bauman
Adam Van Goor
Alan Bird
Alan Borkenhagen
Alfred Van Dellen
Alice Wright
Allen Bair
Allyson Presswood Nance
Amanda Adams
Andrew Belcher
Andrew Johnson
Andrew Rice
Angelo Palo
Anita Moreau
April Linton
Aurora Lee
Barbara Summers
Barbara White
Becky Hancock
Beryl Carpenter
Bethany Fenlason
Betty Forbes
Bianca Elliott
Bill Cleveland
Bill Pruett
Bob Britting
Bram van den Heuvel
Brian Metzger
Bruce Bridges
Bruce Collier
Bruce Smith
Caleb Worgess
Carlyle Kilmore
Carol Pace
Carol Heim
Caroline Crawford
Caroline Fleming
Caroline S Wong
Carol Lee
Carol Moyer
Carolyn Lafferty
Catherine C Newton
Charese Jackson
Charlotte Gibson
Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannahi Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community